

MINISTRY OF AGRICULTURE AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT



REGIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT REPORT

ON

**MEKONG DELTA INTEGRATED CLIMATE RESILIENCE
AND SUSTAINABLE LIVELIHOODS PROJECT (MD-ICRSL)**

Ha Noi – March 2016

**Mekong Delta Integrated Climate Resilience and
Sustainable Livelihoods Project**

**REGIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT
REPORT**

ABBREVIATIONS

ADB	Asian Development Bank
BDP	Basin Development Plan
CBA	Cost-Benefit Analysis
CC	Climate Change
CCVA	Climate Change Vulnerability Assessment
CEA	Cost-Effectiveness Analysis
CIEM	Central Institute for Economic Management
CMIP	Coupled Model Intercomparison Project
CSIRO	Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization
CTA	Chief Technical Advisor
CTL	Co-Team Leader
CTU	Can Tho University
DARD	Department of Agriculture and Rural Development
DEM	Digital Elevation Model
DONRE	Department of Natural Resources and Environment
DSF	Decision Support Framework
DSS	Decision Support System
EOC	Environment Operations Centre (ADB)
ESA	European Space Agency
GCM	General Circulation Model
GIS	Geographical Information Systems
GIZ	German Development Corporation
GMS-SCC	Greater Mekong Subregion Southern Coastal Corridor
GOV	Government of Viet Nam
HCMC	Ho Chi Minh City
ICEM	International Centre for Environmental Management
ICMP	Integrated Coastal Management Program
IFAD	International Fund for Agricultural Development
IMHEN	Institute of Meteorology, Hydrology and Environment
IPCC	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
IUCN	International Union for the Conservation of Nature
IWRM	Integrated Water Resource Management
KPI	Key Performance Indicators
LMB	Lower Mekong Basin
LXQ	Long Xuyen Quadrangle
MARD	Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Development
MD-ICRSL	Mekong Delta Integrated Climate Resilience and Sustainable Livelihoods
MDI	Mekong Delta Development Research Institute
MDP	Mekong Delta Plan
MOC	Ministry of Construction
MODIS	Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer
MONRE	Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment

MOT	Ministry of Transport
MPI	Ministry of Planning and Investment
MRC	Mekong River Commission
RIF	Regional Investment Framework
SCC	Southern Coastal Corridor
SEA START	Southeast Asia System for Analysis Research and Training
SIWRP	Southern Institute for Water Resources Planning
SIWRR	Southern Institute for Water Resources Research
SLR	Sea Level Rise
SMCA	Spatial Multi-criteria Analysis
Sub-NIAPP	Sub-National Institute for Agricultural Planning and Protection in the South
SWAT	Soil and Water Assessment Tool
SWSC	Southwest Steering Committee
TA	Technical Assistance
TWG	Technical Working Group
UNDP	United Nations Development Programme
USAID	United States Agency for International Development
VCCI	Vietnam Chamber of Commerce and Industry
VNMC	Vietnam National Mekong Committee
WB	World Bank
WISDOM	Water Information System for Sustainable Development of Mekong Delta

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABBREVIATIONS.....	III
LIST OF TABLES.....	9
LIST OF FIGURES.....	10
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	13
1 THE MEKONG RIVER BASIN AND DELTA.....	1
1.1 Introduction.....	1
1.2 REA objectives	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1.3 Mekong Delta Plan.....	1
1.4 REA Methodology	2
1.5 Overview of the Mekong Basin	3
1.5.1 Connectivity between the Mekong River Basin and the Delta	7
1.5.2 Hydrological processes and sediment transport.....	9
1.6 Bio-physical description of the Mekong Delta.....	10
1.6.1 Soil and geology.....	10
1.6.2 Climate	12
1.6.3 Water resources.....	13
1.6.3.1 Flooding	13
1.6.3.2 Sediment transport	13
1.6.3.3 Groundwater.....	14
1.6.3.4 Salinity intrusion	14
1.6.3.5 Water quality.....	15
1.6.4 Biodiversity and ecosystems	15
1.6.4.1 Wetlands.....	15
1.6.4.2 National Parks and Nature Reserves	16
1.6.4.3 Flora	18
1.6.4.4 Fauna	19
1.6.4.5 The coastal plume	19
1.6.4.6 Physical cultural resources.....	19
1.7 Socio-economic description of the Mekong Delta.....	20
1.7.1 Demographics	21
1.7.1.1 Population	21
1.7.1.2 Ethnic minorities	24
1.7.2 Livelihoods.....	24
1.7.2.1 Natural capital	25
1.7.2.2 Physical capital.....	25
1.7.2.3 Human capital	26
1.7.2.4 Financial capital	27
1.7.2.5 Social capital	28
1.7.3 Agricultural Sector	28
1.7.3.1 Agriculture	28
1.7.3.2 Livestock.....	30
1.7.3.3 Aquaculture	30
1.7.4 Water resources management.....	31
1.7.4.1 Flood management and irrigation in the freshwater zone	31
1.7.4.2 Managing salinity in the coastal zone and estuaries	33
1.7.4.3 Safe water supply for domestic and industrial uses	35
1.7.4.4 Water resource management plans by the government.....	36
1.7.4.5 Water supply plan for focal economic zones	38

2	CURRENT TRENDS AND CHALLENGES IN THE MEKONG DELTA	40
2.1	Environmental and Social Baseline trends for Upper delta floodplain (Component 2)	43
2.1.1	<i>Shrinking floodplains and exacerbated flood damages</i>	<i>44</i>
2.1.2	<i>Acidification and surface water quality</i>	<i>48</i>
2.1.3	<i>Higher inputs of agro-chemicals, reducing agricultural productivity.....</i>	<i>50</i>
2.1.4	<i>Rapid economic growth with a persistent poverty gap</i>	<i>54</i>
2.1.5	<i>River bank erosion.....</i>	<i>55</i>
2.2	Environmental and Social Baseline trends for Delta Estuary (Component 3)	56
2.2.1	<i>Salinization of the estuary</i>	<i>58</i>
2.2.2	<i>Estuary balance between saline and freshwater farming.....</i>	<i>59</i>
2.2.3	<i>Dry season freshwater shortages and droughts</i>	<i>64</i>
2.2.4	<i>Land use changes from industrialization and urbanization</i>	<i>65</i>
2.2.5	<i>Ethnic minorities and reduced farm-based income</i>	<i>66</i>
2.3	Environmental and Social Baseline trends for Peninsula (Component 4)	67
2.3.1	<i>Delta shrinking and land subsidence</i>	<i>68</i>
2.3.2	<i>Deterioration of mangroves.....</i>	<i>74</i>
2.3.3	<i>Intensive shrimp farming.....</i>	<i>77</i>
2.3.4	<i>Natural resource dependency of the poor and landless.....</i>	<i>81</i>
2.3.5	<i>Loss of peat soil environments</i>	<i>81</i>
3	PROJECTED CHANGES IN THE MEKONG DELTA	84
3.1	External drivers of change	84
3.1.1	<i>Hydropower development.....</i>	<i>85</i>
3.1.2	<i>Land use change and deforestation</i>	<i>87</i>
3.1.3	<i>Climate change.....</i>	<i>88</i>
3.1.4	<i>Sea level rise and land subsidence</i>	<i>89</i>
3.2	Future Scenarios for 2050	89
3.2.1	<i>Baseline scenarios.....</i>	<i>89</i>
3.2.2	<i>Future scenarios.....</i>	<i>90</i>
3.3	Regional threats to the Mekong Delta	91
3.3.1	<i>Temperature and rainfall</i>	<i>91</i>
3.3.2	<i>Flooding</i>	<i>92</i>
3.3.3	<i>Saline intrusion</i>	<i>96</i>
3.3.4	<i>Coastal erosion</i>	<i>98</i>
3.4	Regional threats in the hydro-ecological zones	100
3.4.1	<i>Component 2: Upper delta floodplain</i>	<i>101</i>
3.4.1.1	<i>Temperature and rainfall</i>	<i>101</i>
3.4.1.2	<i>Flooding</i>	<i>103</i>
3.4.1.3	<i>Saline intrusion.....</i>	<i>104</i>
3.4.2	<i>Component 3: Delta estuary.....</i>	<i>105</i>
3.4.2.1	<i>Temperature and rainfall</i>	<i>105</i>
3.4.2.2	<i>Flooding</i>	<i>108</i>
3.4.2.3	<i>Saline intrusion.....</i>	<i>110</i>
3.4.2.4	<i>Coastal erosion.....</i>	<i>110</i>
3.4.3	<i>Component 4: Delta peninsula.....</i>	<i>112</i>
3.4.3.1	<i>Temperature and rainfall</i>	<i>112</i>
3.4.3.2	<i>Flooding</i>	<i>115</i>
3.4.3.3	<i>Saline intrusion.....</i>	<i>117</i>
3.4.3.4	<i>Coastal erosion.....</i>	<i>118</i>
4	LEGAL AND INSTITUTIONAL ASSESSMENT	121
4.1	Projected climate change impacts in Vietnam.....	121
4.1.1	<i>Social aspects of climate change.....</i>	<i>121</i>
4.2	Governance arrangements for responding to climate change.....	122

4.2.1	<i>National Target Programme to Respond To Climate Change (NTPRCC)</i>	122
4.2.2	<i>Climate change adaptation</i>	123
4.2.3	<i>Implementation of climate change program</i>	123
4.2.4	<i>Regional coordination of LMB countries</i>	124
4.3	Results of CC adaptation action plan in Vietnam	124
4.3.1	<i>Natural resources and environment</i>	124
4.3.2	<i>Agricultural sector</i>	124
4.3.3	<i>Land use planning</i>	125
4.3.4	<i>Agricultural Restructuring Plan</i>	125
4.3.5	<i>Forestry sector</i>	125
4.3.6	<i>Carbon market</i>	126
4.3.7	<i>Construction sector</i>	126
4.3.8	<i>Transport and energy sectors</i>	126
4.4	Disaster risk management	126
4.4.1	<i>Integrated Water Resources Management (IWRM) in the LMB</i>	128
4.5	International support	128
4.5.1	<i>Program SP-RCC</i>	128
4.6	Legal and institutional policy on environmental management	129
4.6.1	<i>Vietnam's Environmental and Social Safeguards Policies and Legislations</i>	129
4.6.2	<i>Application of World Bank Safeguard Policies</i>	130
4.6.2.1	<i>IFC Environmental, Health and Safety Guidelines</i>	130
4.6.2.2	<i>World Bank Policy on Access to Information</i>	131
4.6.3	<i>Capacity in government environmental organizations</i>	131
4.6.4	<i>Improving environmental management in the Mekong Delta</i>	131
5	STRATEGIES FOR BUILDING RESILIENCE IN THE MEKONG DELTA	133
5.1	Component 1: Investments Enhancing Monitoring, Analytics and Information Systems	133
5.1.1	<i>Integrating with on-going assessments in the Mekong Delta</i>	136
5.1.2	<i>Summary of trends, challenges and regional changes for Components 2, 3 and 4</i>	137
5.2	Component 2: Upper delta floodplain	140
5.3	Component 3: Delta estuary	142
5.4	Component 4: Delta peninsula	144
6	ASSESSING PROJECT-FINANCED REGIONAL IMPACTS	147
6.1	Environmental assessment	147
6.1.1	<i>Sub projects under Component 2, 3 and 4</i>	147
6.1.1.1	<i>Component 2 (Upper Delta)</i>	147
6.1.1.2	<i>Subprojects in Component 3 (Delta Estuary)</i>	147
6.1.1.3	<i>Subprojects in Component 4 (Delta Peninsula)</i>	148
6.2	Assessing the regional impacts	148
6.3	Regional impact evaluation methodology	149
6.3.1	<i>Regional impacts of Components 2, 3 and 4</i>	150
6.3.1.1	<i>Impacts of upgrading and constructing new infrastructure</i>	150
6.3.1.2	<i>Impacts of dredging</i>	151
6.3.1.3	<i>Impacts of installing water/flood control structures in the upper delta</i>	151
6.3.1.4	<i>Impacts of new livelihood models in the upper delta</i>	152
6.3.1.5	<i>Impacts of installing water/salinity control structures in the estuary and peninsula</i>	153
6.3.1.6	<i>Impacts of new livelihood models in the estuary and peninsula</i>	153
6.3.1.7	<i>Expanding aquaculture and shrimp farming</i>	154
6.3.1.8	<i>Impacts of protecting mangrove forests in coastal areas</i>	155
6.3.1.9	<i>Impacts of building reservoir for freshwater storage</i>	155
6.3.1.10	<i>Utilizing enhanced information systems to monitor regional impacts</i>	156
6.4	Summary of regional impacts	161
6.5	Public consultation on REA	162

6.5.1	<i>Upper Delta</i>	162
6.5.2	<i>Delta Estuary</i>	162
6.5.3	<i>Peninsula</i>	162
6.6	Linkages with other World Bank projects in the Mekong Delta	163
6.7	Recommendations:	164
7	BUILDING ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT CAPACITY IN THE MEKONG DELTA	166
7.1	Introduction	166
7.2	Sub-component 1.1. Upgrading Monitoring Infrastructure to Enhance Mekong Delta Knowledge Base (US\$ 33.7 Million)	166
7.2.1	<i>Upgrading MONRE's Surface Water Quality Monitoring Network (US\$ 9.5 million)</i>	<i>167</i>
7.2.2	<i>Upgrading MONRE's Groundwater Monitoring Network (US\$ 10.0 million).....</i>	<i>167</i>
7.2.3	<i>Upgrading of MONRE's Remote Sensing Infrastructure and Associated Studies (US\$ 11.0 million) 167</i>	
7.2.4	<i>Upgrading MARD's Water Resource Monitoring Systems (US\$ 3.2 million).....</i>	<i>167</i>
7.3	Subcomponent 1.2. Infrastructure and Information Systems for Enhanced Decisions (US\$ 13.8 million).....	168
7.3.1	<i>Mekong Delta Center for Climate Resilience (US\$ 12.0 million).....</i>	<i>168</i>
7.3.2	<i>Constructing and Equipping the Mekong Delta Center (US\$ 5 million).....</i>	<i>168</i>
7.3.3	<i>Formulation of Mekong Delta Climate Resiliency Assessment (US\$ 3.5 million)</i>	<i>168</i>
7.3.4	<i>Development of Databases and Models for the Mekong Delta Center (US\$ 3.5 million) 169</i>	
7.3.5	<i>Vietnam National Mekong Committee (VNMC) Mekong Basin Databases and Models (US\$ 1.8 million)169</i>	
7.4	Alternatives Considered under Component 1	170
7.5	Assessing Environmental Impacts of Component 1	170
7.6	Mekong Delta Climate Resiliency Assessment	171
8	REFERENCES	172
	ANNEX 1- PROPOSED SUBPROJECTS FOR COMPONENTS 2, 3 & 4.....	176
	ANNEX 2- VIETNAMESE ENVIRONMENTAL STANDARDS	177

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: Summary of MDP priority and "no regret" measures.....	1
Table 2: National parks and nature reserves in the Mekong Delta.....	17
Table 3: Species and Landscape Reserves and Landscape Protected Areas in the Mekong Delta	17
Table 4: Physical cultural resources in the Mekong Delta	20
Table 5: Summary of national plans, benefits and impacts	37
Table 6: Hydro-ecological zones and focal provinces	41
Table 7: Water-related problems and solutions in Soc Trang province Source: Nhan et al. 2013.....	66
Table 8: Key actors in the Mekong Delta.....	134
Table 9: Vietnamese Strategies and Master Plan for the Mekong Delta.....	135
Table 10: Agriculture and water management investments in An Giang, Ca Mau, Ben Tre & Soc Trang	135
Table 11: Challenges, solution and key trade-offs for upper delta floodplain.....	142
Table 12: Challenges, solutions and key-trade-offs for the delta estuary	143
Table 13: Challenges, solutions and key trade-offs for the delta peninsula	145
Table 14: Regional impact evaluation criteria	149
Table 15: Summary of regional impacts for Components 2, 3 & 4.....	157
Table 16: Ongoing World Bank projects relevant to the MD-ICRSL project	163
Table 17: New institutions, planning and analytics and enhanced monitoring in the Mekong Delta	166
Table 18: Summary of costs and activities for Component 1	170
Table 19: Summary of potential environmental impacts of general interventions under Component 1.	171

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1: Upper and Lower Basin	4
Figure 2: Eco-regions in the Mekong River Basin	5
Figure 3: Hydropower development in the Upper and Lower Mekong Basin.....	6
Figure 4: Changes in forest cover 1975-2010.....	7
Figure 5: Tonle Sap and Mekong Delta	8
Figure 6: Tonle Sap lake in the wet and dry season	10
Figure 7: Elevation in the Mekong Delta	11
Figure 8: Soil types in the Mekong Delta.....	12
Figure 9: Wetland types in the Mekong Delta	16
Figure 10: Mekong Delta protected areas	18
Figure 11: Urban and rural population in the Mekong Delta.....	21
Figure 12: Population density in the Mekong Delta 2000.....	22
Figure 13: Poverty rates in the Mekong Delta compared to National average	23
Figure 14: Poverty rates in the Mekong Delta in 1999 and 2009.....	23
Figure 15: Ethnic groups in the Mekong Delta	24
Figure 16: Farming areas in the Mekong Delta	25
Figure 17: Labor force structure in the Mekong Delta	26
Figure 18: Labor force qualification in the Mekong Delta a) Overall b) Agricultural sector.....	27
Figure 19: Trends of agriculture (rice, fruit, vegetables) from 1990-2012.	29
Figure 20: Rice area by crop in the Mekong Delta from 2000-2013.....	29
Figure 21: Rice production by crop in the Mekong Delta from 2000-2013	30
Figure 22: Trends of livestock (pig, poultry, cattle) from 1990-2012.	30
Figure 23: Trends of aquaculture from 1990-2013	31
Figure 24: Mekong Delta Flood Control and Irrigation Infrastructure	32
Figure 25: Predicted safe water requirement of domestic and industrial uses of the focal economic zones of the Mekong Delta	36
Figure 26: Location of proposed water treatment plants in the Mekong Delta.....	38
Figure 27: Hydro-ecological zones and focal provinces	42
Figure 28: Agricultural land use in An Giang and Dong Thap.....	43
Figure 29: Land use types in the upper delta floodplain	44
Figure 30: Flood control and water infrastructure in the upper delta floodplain	45
Figure 31: Flooded areas in the October 2000 and 2011	47
Figure 32: Area of acid sulfate and alluvial soil in the upper delta floodplain.....	49
Figure 33: Trends of rice growing areas in An Giang	51
Figure 34: Trends of the autumn-winter crop areas by district in An Giang.....	51
Figure 35: Trends of paddy yields by crop in An Giang.....	51
Figure 36: Trends of rice growing areas by crop in Dong Thap.....	52
Figure 37: Trends of paddy yields by crop in Dong Thap.....	52
Figure 38: Trends of fertilizer application rates (N, P & K), total yield and BCR	53
Figure 39: Trends of vegetable production area in An Giang and Dong Thap.....	54
Figure 40: Trends of aquaculture production in An Giang and Dong Thap	54
Figure 41: Trends of poverty rates of An Giang, Dong Thap and Mekong Delta from 2006-2013.....	55
Figure 42: Agricultural land use in Ben Tre & Tra Vinh.....	57
Figure 43: Agricultural land use in the delta estuary.....	57
Figure 44: Duration of salinity intrusion (>4g/L) in delta estuary	58
Figure 45: Existing water infrastructure in the delta estuary	59
Figure 46: Areas of brackish and freshwater farming in delta estuary	60
Figure 47: Paddy yields by crop in Ben Tre, Tra Vinh & Soc Trang provinces	61
Figure 48: Aquaculture area and production in Ben Tre, Tra Vinh & Song Trang.....	62

Figure 49: Trends of farming area of high-value fruit crops in Ben Tre, Tra Vinh & Soc Trang.....	63
Figure 50: Increasing trends of coconut growing area in Ben Tre province 2005-12	64
Figure 51: Maximum rate of aquifer drawdown (cm/year) in delta estuary.....	65
Figure 52: Agricultural land use in Ca Mau & Bac Lieu provinces	68
Figure 53: Land use types in delta peninsula.....	68
Figure 54: Net erosion and accretion rates in the East Sea	69
Figure 55: Coastal erosion and deposition in Ca Mau - Bac Lieu.....	70
Figure 56: Coastal erosion and deposition in the Ca Mau peninsula.....	71
Figure 57: Coastal erosion and deposition in delta peninsula.....	72
Figure 58: Maximum rate of aquifer drawdown (cm/year) in delta peninsula	73
Figure 59: Subsidence rate (cm/year) in the delta peninsula	74
Figure 60: Wetland types in delta peninsula.....	75
Figure 61: Mangroves and coastline change in Ca Mau peninsula	76
Figure 62: Aquaculture area and production in Bac Lieu and Ca Mau provinces	78
Figure 63: Areas of brackish and freshwater farming in delta peninsula.....	78
Figure 64: Shrimp farming areas in Ca Mau & Bac Lieu	79
Figure 65: Existing water infrastructure in the delta peninsula	80
Figure 66: The proportion of in -migration and out-migration in Bac Lieu & Ca Mau provinces	81
Figure 67: U Minh Ha & U Minh Thuong National Parks.....	82
Figure 68: Upstream hydropower development in the Mekong Basin	85
Figure 69: Forest cover change in the Mekong Basin from 1975-2010.....	88
Figure 70: Changes in precipitation in Wet Season (%)	92
Figure 71: Change in percentage of provincial area flooded (%)	93
Figure 72: Increase in maximum flood depth (m).....	94
Figure 73: Flood depth in meters	95
Figure 74: Day of flooding per year in the Mekong 2050.....	96
Figure 75: Increase in provincial area experiencing salinity intrusion	97
Figure 76: Increase in number of days with salinity at higher than 4g/L.....	98
Figure 77: Rates of coastal erosion in the East Sea.....	99
Figure 78: Increasing erosion rate/year.....	100
Figure 79: Changes in average maximum temperature in the dry season in upper delta floodplain..	101
Figure 80: Changes in dry season rainfall in the upper delta floodplain.....	102
Figure 81: Changes in wet season rainfall in the upper delta floodplain	102
Figure 82: Changes in maximum flood depth under extreme high condition in upper delta floodplain	103
Figure 83: Flood duration (>1m)- Extreme High Condition in the Upper Delta Floodplains	104
Figure 84: Changing maximum salinity concentration under future worst case in the Upper Delta Floodplain.....	105
Figure 85: Changes in average maximum temperature in the dry season.....	106
Figure 86: Changes in average maximum temperate in wet season for delta estuary	106
Figure 87: Changes in dry season rainfall in the delta estuary	107
Figure 88: Changes in wet season rainfall in the delta estuary	108
Figure 89: Changes in maximum flood depth under extreme high conditions in delta estuary.....	109
Figure 90: Changes in flood duration (<1m) under extreme high conditions in delta estuary	109
Figure 91: Changes in salinity duration (>4g/L) under future worst-case scenario in the delta estuary	110
Figure 92: Changes in coastal erosion and deposition in Ben Tre province.....	111
Figure 93: Changes in coastal erosion and deposition in Tra Vinh province	111
Figure 94: Changes in dry season average maximum temperatures	112
Figure 95: Changes in wet season average maximum temperatures for delta peninsula	113
Figure 96: Changes in dry season rainfall in the delta peninsula	114
Figure 97: Changes in wet season rainfall in the delta peninsula.....	115

Figure 98: Changes in maximum flood depth under extreme high conditions for delta peninsula	116
Figure 99: Changes in flood duration (>1m) under extreme high conditions for delta peninsula	116
Figure 100: Changes in maximum salinity concentration under future worst-case scenario for the delta peninsula.....	117
Figure 101: Changes under salinity duration (4g/L) under future worst-case scenario in the delta peninsula.....	118
Figure 102: Changes in coastal erosion in Bac Lieu and Soc Trang	119
Figure 103: Changes in coastal erosion in Ca Mau and Bac Lieu.....	120
Figure 104: DRM structure in Vietnam	127
Figure 105: Summary of trends and challenges in the hydro-ecological zones.....	138
Figure 106: External drives of change in the Mekong Delta	139
Figure 107: External drives and regional changes in the Mekong Delta	140
Figure 108: Key components for building resilience in the upper delta floodplain	141
Figure 109: Inundated rice paddies in the wet season offer controlled retention of river floods after two crops.....	141
Figure 110: Controlled flooding in the upper delta floodplain, using the inundate paddies for fish farming in wet season of "floating vegetables" offering an attractive economic proposition	142
Figure 111: Key components for building resilience in the delta estuary.....	143
Figure 112: Key components for building resilience in the delta peninsula	145
Figure 113: Mangrove restoration and three step shrimp farming	146

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

1. This Regional Environmental Assessment (REA) supports the development of the ‘*Mekong Delta Integrated Climate Resilience and Sustainable Livelihood (MD-ICRSL)*’ project. The PDO is to enhance tools for climate-smart planning, and improve climate resilience of land and water management practices in selected provinces of the Mekong Delta in Vietnam. The objective would be achieved through the provision of capital investments, technical assistance and capacity building for farmers in the selected provinces of the Mekong Delta in Vietnam and government institutions at national and sub-national levels.

The Project activities will be implemented through five components:

- **Component 1:** Enhancing Monitoring, Analytics, and Information Systems
- **Component 2:** Managing Floods in the Upper Delta
- **Component 3:** Adapting to Salinity Transitions in the Delta Estuary
- **Component 4:** Protecting Coastal Areas in the Delta Peninsula
- **Component 5:** Project Management and Implementation Support

The Mekong Delta Plan (MDP) 2013 presents a long- term vision on the safe, prosperous and sustainable development of the Delta region and is the foundation for the MD-ICRSL project. This REA builds upon and expands the analysis in the MDP by providing a more comprehensive presentation of existing information, utilizes climate scenario modelling, and describes in more detail the strategies in the three hydro-ecological zones included in this project. The key objectives of this REA are to:

- provide a comprehensive environmental and socio-economic baseline of the Mekong Delta;
- present the existing trends and challenges in the upper delta, delta estuary and delta peninsula;
- analyze the regional changes from hydropower development, land use change, sea level rise and climate change and recommend strategies for building resilience; and
- assess the regional project-financed impacts and recommend investments for building adaptive capacity in the Mekong Delta.

The existing trend and challenges and future scenarios used in this REA were developed from the “no-regret” and priority measures set out in the MDP and comprises the following sections:

1. The Mekong River Basin and Delta;
2. Current challenges in the Mekong Delta;
3. Regional changes in the Mekong Delta;
4. Legal and Institutional assessment;
5. Strategies for Building Resilience in the Mekong Delta;
6. Assessing Regional Project-Financed Impacts; and
7. Building Adaptive Management Capacity in the Mekong Delta

The Mekong River Basin and Delta

The development success of the delta can be attributed to two important factors. First the natural supply of freshwater and nutrient-laden sediments by the Mekong River annually transforms the delta providing the vital ingredients for productivity. On average some 50-160 million tons of sediment are transported downstream with the floods into the Mekong Delta of Vietnam with approximately 15-20% deposited on the delta's floodplains and the remainder transported into the marine environment contributing to important delta building processes (ICEM 2012). The large range in variability of sediment transport reflects the uncertainty regarding the amount of sediment trapped behind existing dams in the Upper Mekong and tributaries (Koehnken et al. 2012; Lu et al. 2014). Second the Government of Vietnam has since the late 1960s supported ambitious master planning efforts with the guiding mandate being the control of the delta's freshwater hydrology to enable multiple rice crops each year (Kakkonen et al, 2008).

Rapid population growth and intensive agricultural and aquaculture development over the past decades have significantly reduced the natural values in the delta. Progressive land and water reclamation, agricultural intensification, as well negative ecological impacts of warfare, have significantly reduced the natural forests, wetlands and other natural habitats of the delta. Many wetlands such as mangroves, ponds, lakes, lagoons and wet grasslands are threatened by extinction through the concessions for irrigation, forest plantations, salt ponds, and industrial development zones and shrimp farms (MDP 2013).

After decades, multi-cropping farming systems are dropping in productivity, flood plains are shrinking exacerbating flood risks elsewhere, wetland habitats are being degraded causing water quality issues while water over-exploitation is shifting the balance between land and sea, subsiding the delta surface and causing salinization of remaining sources (ICEM 2015). Five key lessons from the Mekong Delta are:

1. **Highly controlled multi-crop farming systems have depleted soil fertility and cut off agricultural areas from natural fertilization processes of the Mekong River:** The widespread isolation of the Mekong's freshwater flood plain from fluvial processes to open up opportunities for triple and double crop rice farming has resulted in reduced fertility and reduced productivity of triple cropped areas. In An Giang province total yield from some triple cropped areas are actually lower than yield from neighboring double- crop areas which are still partially connected to the annual flood cycles (Kakkonen et al, 2008);
2. **The Shrinking Mekong Floodplain area has exacerbated flooding in unprotected areas:** the loss of floodplain has increased flood levels in the remaining unprotected areas and concentrated flood discharge in the Mekong River channels and distributaries. Worsened flood conditions have also lead to transboundary issues between Viet Nam and Cambodia, and channelized flood flows have led to increasing issues of river bank and coastal erosion (ICEM, 2012);
3. **Draining of wetland depressions in the delta for agricultural expansion** have led to increasing acidification of surface water environments with knock-on effects for ecosystems (especially fisheries) and water supply. Lack of wastewater treatment and use of agro-chemicals has also reduced surface water quality. Deterioration of these provisioning services have disproportionately impacted poor communities of the Delta who rely on these services for their livelihood;

4. **Dry season agriculture is shifting the delta's balance between fresh and marine environments:** The MDP highlighted that increased water demand to support dry season agriculture has depleted groundwater sources, strengthened the penetration of saline intrusion, increasing the salinity of water sources and accelerating rates of land subsidence in the Delta; and
5. **Centralized water control initiatives such as the saline control structures in the coastal areas of the delta often limit the livelihood and economic opportunities for farmers seeking to take advantage of market driven opportunities:** the market driven conflict between shrimp and rice farming in the early 2000s revealed the inflexibility and low levels of adaptive capacity of a infrastructure-driven approach to controlling the delta environment and conflict between government targets for rice production and individual farmers wanting to optimize the economic returns for their farming effort.

Many of the lessons above are Delta-wide, cut across provincial and administrative boundaries and require both structural and non-structural measures to meet these challenges; however, these trends and challenges vary according to the hydro-ecological zones.

Current challenges in the Mekong Delta

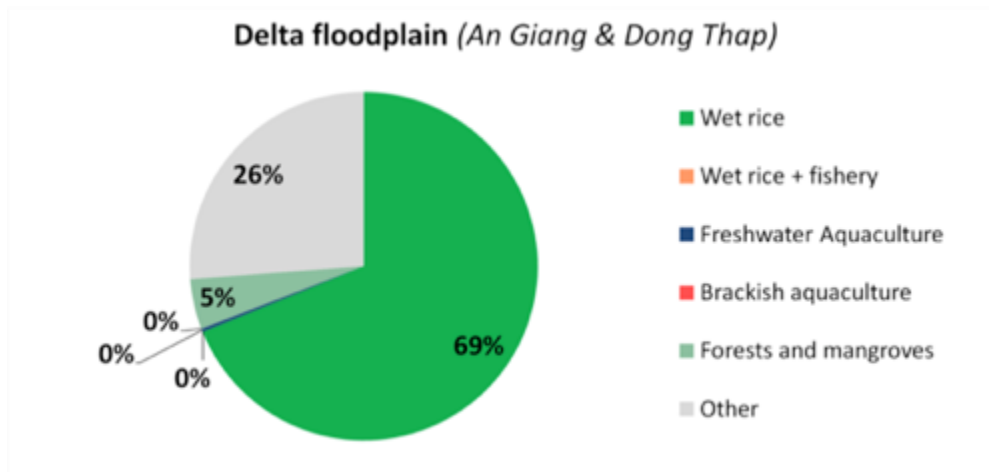
For further analysis the delta is divided into four hydro-ecological zones based on the balance between coastal and upstream hydrological influences:

1. **Upper Delta floodplain (Component 2):** Northern, upper delta floodplain comprising the alluvial terraces, riverine levies and wetland depressions of Kien Giang, An Giang, Dong Thap, and Long An provinces. The upper delta floodplain is dominated by freshwater inputs from the Mekong basin and overbank flooding of the Tien and Hau river channels. During the wet season, flood water levels regularly exceed 2.0 meters;
2. **Middle delta:** includes the alluvial floodplains and urban areas of Can Tho, Hau Giang, Vinh Long and Tien Giang provinces and is characterized by industrialization, land use changes and limited urban water supply and wastewater services;
3. **Delta estuary (Component 3):** comprising the estuary areas of Vinh Long, Tra Vinh, Soc Trang and Ben Tre. The inter-tidal zone is under the mixed influence of upstream hydrology as well as coastal processes such as tidally-induced saline intrusion and channel-flow reversal. In the delta estuary under mixed coastal and freshwater influence, rice is still an important crop accounting for 30% of provincial area, with brackish aquaculture accounting for a further 11%; and
4. **Delta peninsula (Component 4):** Eastern and southern regions of the Delta, where coastal processes dominate local hydrology and local rainfall is the main freshwater input. On the delta peninsula dominated by coastal influences and limited freshwater inputs, brackish aquaculture is the dominant land use accounting for 41% of the provincial area.

The MD-ICRSL focuses on investments in the delta estuary provinces of Soc Trang, Ben Tre and Tra Vinh and does not include the middle delta. However, the subprojects to be implemented in the upper delta (Component 2) are expected to reduce flood risks in the middle delta and the enhanced monitoring, analytics and information systems developed under Component 1 will support sustainable management and planning at the regional level. A summary of the hydro-ecological zones used in the MD-ICRSL project is provided below.

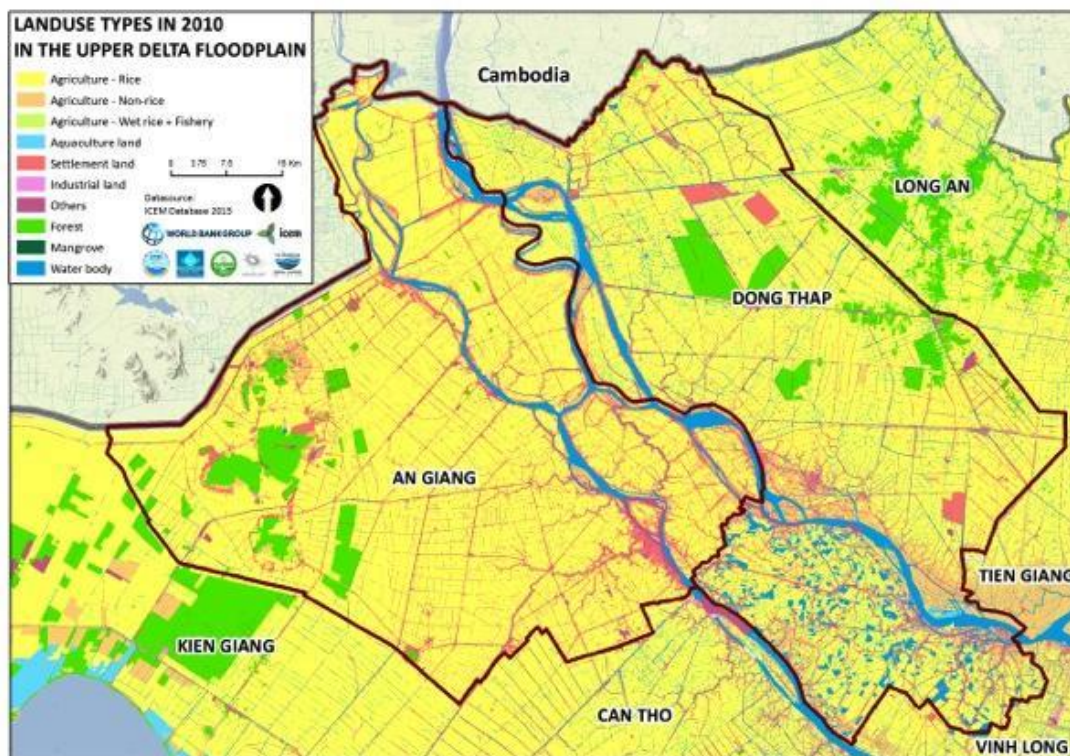
Upper Delta floodplain (Component 2)

The upper delta floodplains are dominated by freshwater inputs from the Mekong basin and the annual overbank flooding of the Tien and Hau river channels and include the focal provinces An Giang and Dong Thap. During the wet season, flood water levels regularly exceed 2.0m. Flooding in the delta is a natural process that maintains productivity and drives the dynamic evolution of the Mekong Delta. The annual flood event is responsible for replenishing the fertile sediments that is vital to agricultural productivity. Rice is the dominant crop accounting for nearly 70% of the agricultural production in An Giang and Dong Thap:



Agricultural land use in An Giang and Dong Thap

Most of the area has been converted to agricultural land for rice intensification. The land use types for the upper delta floodplain are shown below.

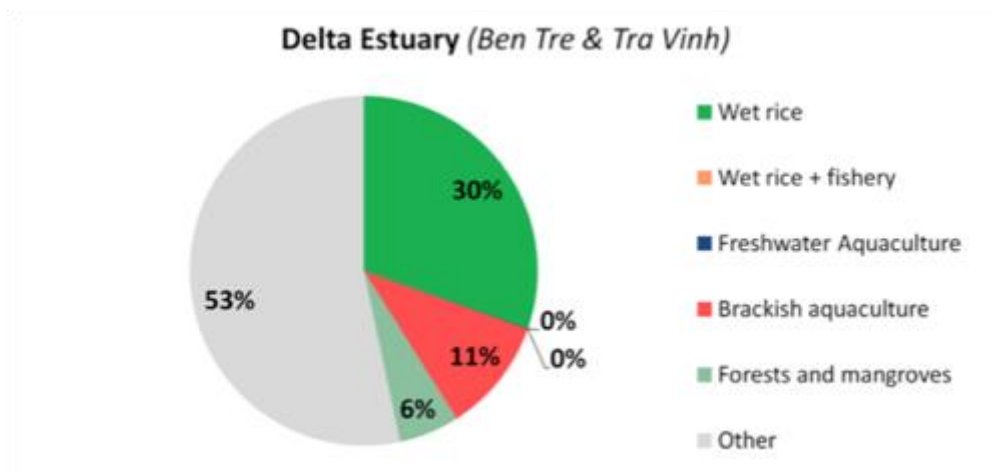


Land use types in the upper delta floodplain

Climate change is expected to bring higher and more pronounced season flood regimes, the key challenges are to retain the natural flood based agriculture and protect downstream provinces from flooding.

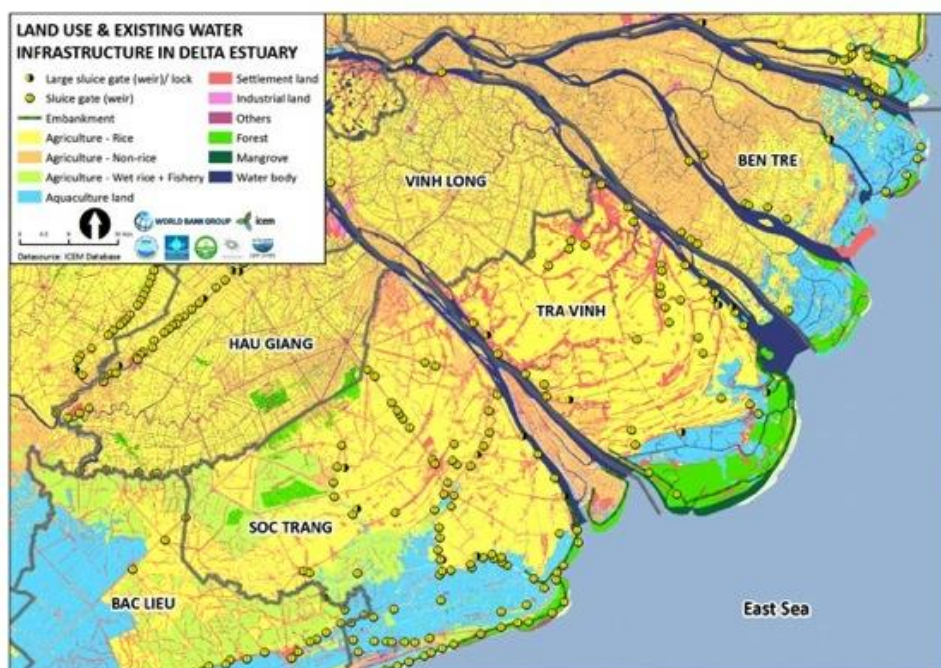
Delta estuary (Component 3)

The delta estuary is under the mixed influence of upstream hydrology as well as coastal processes such as tidally-induced saline intrusion and channel-flow reversal. In the delta estuary under mixed coastal and freshwater influence, rice is still an important crop accounting for 30% of provincial area, with brackish aquaculture accounting for a further 11%.



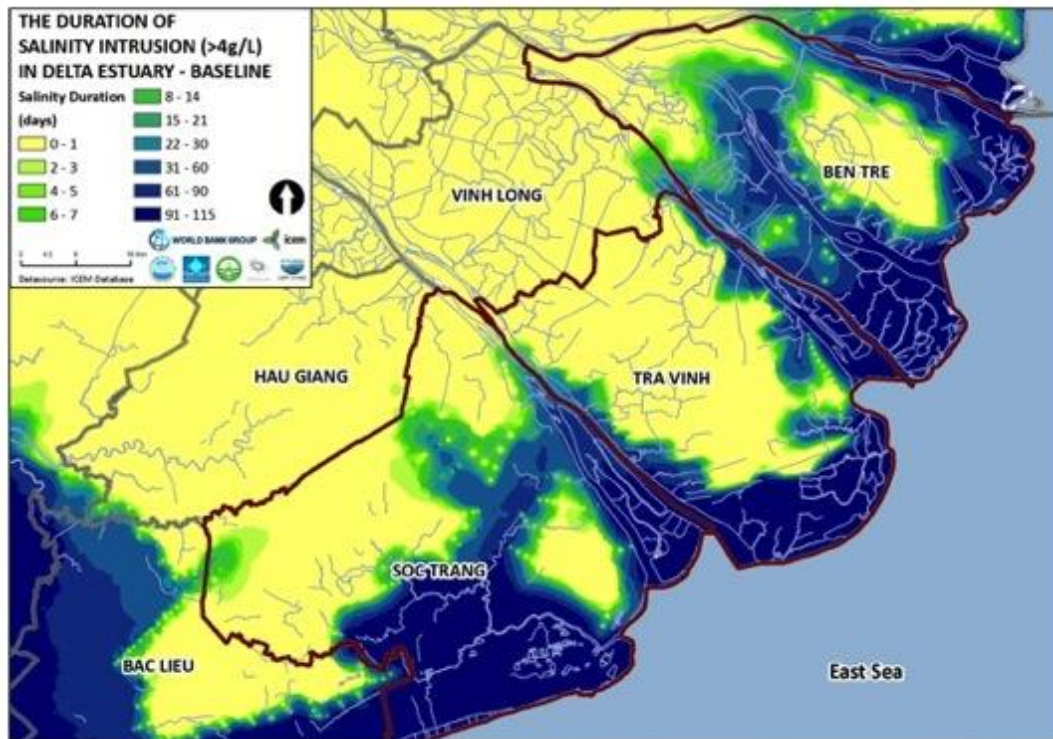
Agricultural land use in Ben Tre & Tra Vinh

As indicated in the Mekong Delta Plan, rapid population growth and intensive agricultural and aquaculture development over the past decades have significantly reduced the natural values in the delta estuary. The land use and existing water infrastructure in the delta estuary are shown below.



Agricultural land use in the delta estuary

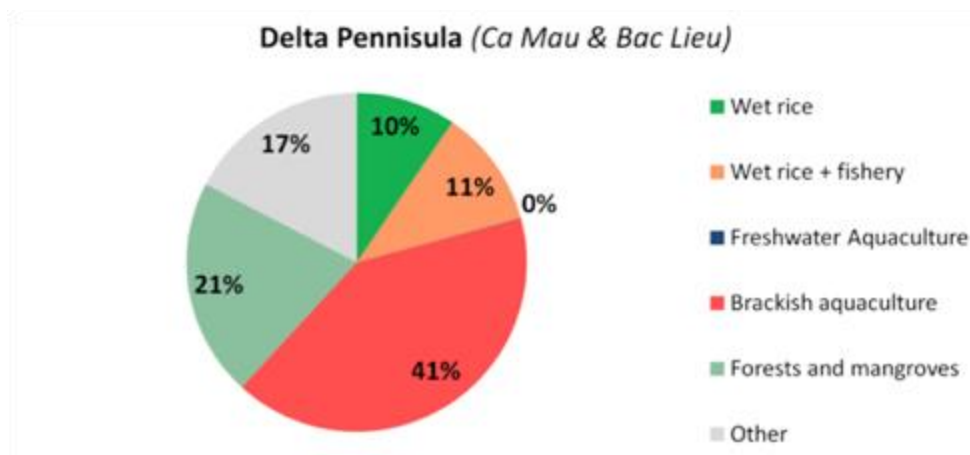
Salinity intrusion into the delta estuary is reducing agricultural productivity and leading to dry season freshwater shortages. Tidal fluctuations drive saline intrusion more than 80km inland, affecting 40% of the Mekong Delta (SIWRR, 2010). Seven provinces are highly prone to saline intrusion, including: Kien Giang, Tra Vinh, Ben Tre, Soc Trang, Ca Mau, Bac Lieu and Long An, with more than 1 million hectares experiencing salinity concentrations above 4g/L is shown below.



Duration of salinity intrusion in the Delta Estuary

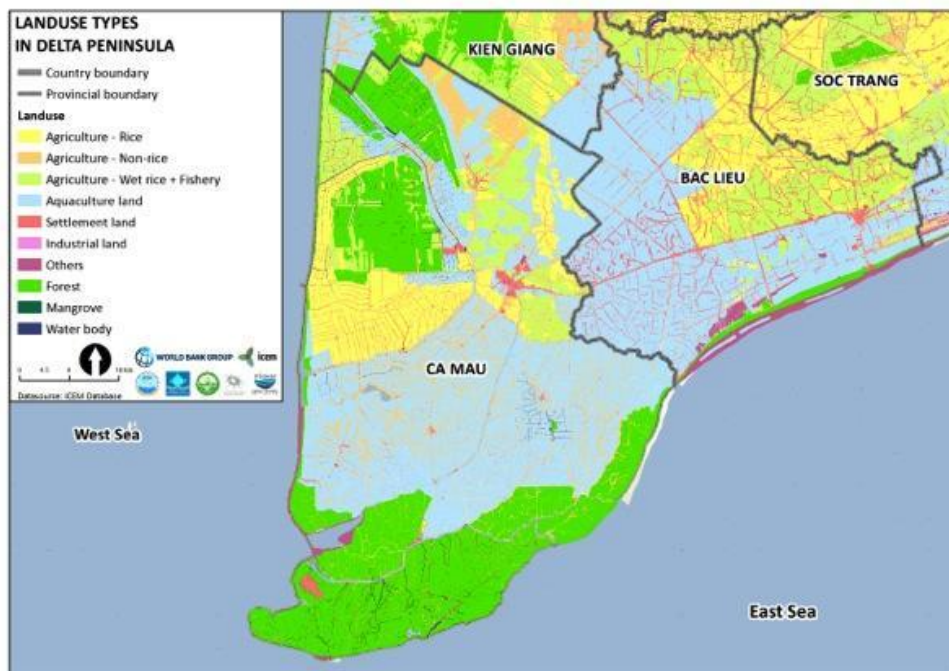
Delta Peninsula (Component 4)

On the delta peninsula dominated by coastal influences and limited freshwater inputs, brackish aquaculture is the dominant land use accounting for 41% of the provincial area.



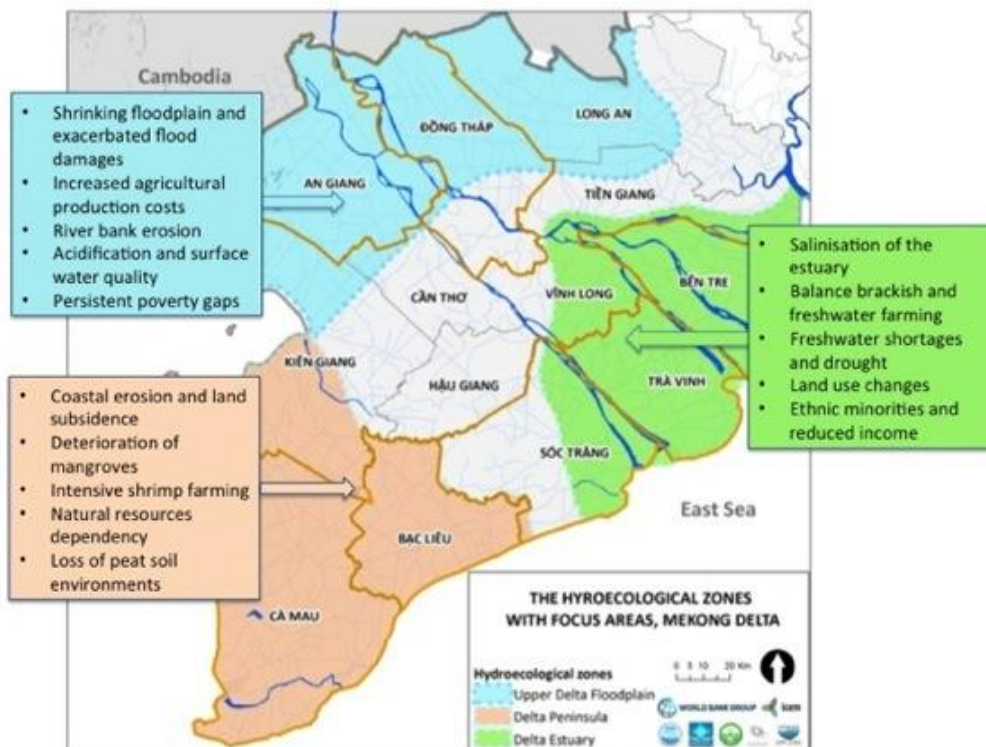
Agricultural land use in Ca Mau & Bac Lieu provinces

The land use types for the delta peninsula are shown below. As highlighted in the Mekong Delta Plan, the mangroves and forest areas remaining in the delta are critical for the natural resource base and coastal protection from storm surges and salinity intrusion.



Land use types in delta peninsula

The existing trends and challenges and regional changes for the upper delta, delta estuary and peninsula are further analyzed in Section 2, a summary of the trends and challenges for the three zones in the MD-ICRSL project is shown below.



Summary of trends and challenges in the hydro-ecological zones

Regional changes in the Mekong Delta

The future scenarios developed under the MDP and supplementary climate modelling were used to determine the regional changes in the Delta and the three hydrological zones based on the following four key basin-wide drivers of change:

1. **Rainfall and Temperature Changes:** Climate change will increase the variability in seasonal rainfall, making the wet seasons wetter and the dry season drier and polarizing the seasonal conditions of the Basin with more severe and frequent flood and drought incidence;
2. **Hydropower development in the Mekong Basin:** Rapid expansion of hydropower in the Mekong Basin will alter timing of downstream hydrology during regular operations and could lead to large emergency releases during storm events. Hydropower reservoirs will also sever sediment transport processes, trapping sediments and reducing rates of natural fertilization in the floodplain and offshore environments as well;
3. **Land use change:** Rapid trends of deforestation, urbanization and agricultural expansion will continue to alter the hydrological balance between surface run off and infiltration; and
4. **Sea level rise (SLR):** Rising sea levels will alter the delicate balance between freshwater and estuarine conditions in the delta, pumping salinization issues further into the delta interior affecting groundwater and permanently inundating large areas of the Mekong Delta.

Upstream hydropower development has two main impacts on the Mekong system with the scale of impact dependent on the type of hydropower project. First the reservoirs have a regulating affect on flow, which allow the projects to store water from the wet season for release during the dry season. This regulation of flow dampens the flood-pulse signature of the Mekong that has been identified as the main driver behind the productivity of the Mekong's floodplain and delta environment (Kummu et al, 2006).

Second, the reservoirs have a barrier effect on the transport of sediment, nutrients and biological organisms. In addition to the flow of water, the Mekong also transports vast quantities of sediments, nutrients, fish and other aquatic productions. Sediments and nutrients are transported from the hillsides of the Mekong uplands to the floodplains, delta and coastal environment of the Mekong.

Analysis of daily data for historical and future climate data at six mainstream stations in the LMB indicates that the nature of change is consistent along the Mekong and can be summarized by four key changes:

- **Increase in flood magnitude and volume:** The dominant feature of the Mekong flood pulse is a single flood peak during August and September. Climate change will increase the flow during the flood season and the size of the flood peak. In terms of the percentage change in volume, a 25% increase in flow at Chiang Saen, approximately 20% between Vientiane and Pakse, and 15% from Pakse to Kratie (ADB 2014; MRC 2011);
- **Increase in flood duration:** Across all stations, climate change will increase the duration of the flood season;

- **Shortening of transition seasons and onset of flooding:** Climate change will shorten the transition seasons at all stations and increase the rate of increase of discharge. This will accelerate the rate of transition from dry to flood and vice-versa (ADB 2014); and
- **Increase in dry season water levels:** Climate change will increase dry season flows in response to increases in dry season rainfall for most areas of the Mekong catchment. All the simulated flood pulse characteristics indicate that the average and dry hydrological years are likely to be wetter in the future (Keskinen et al. 2014).

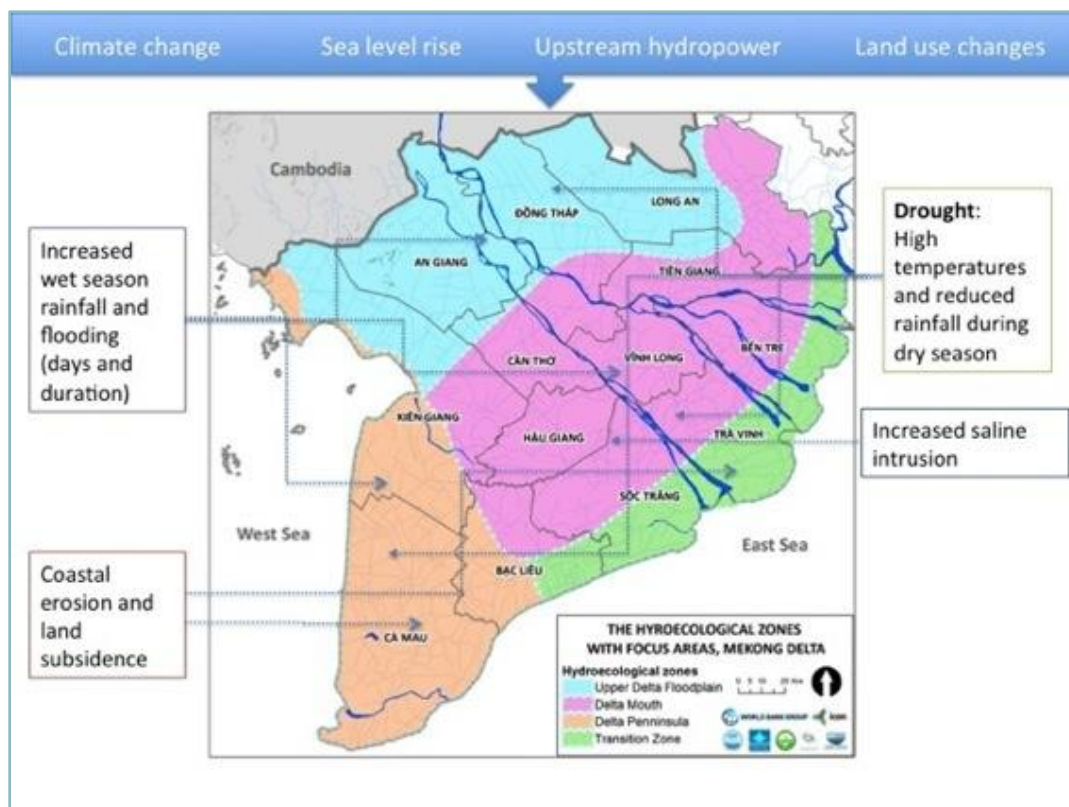
The Mekong Delta is particularly vulnerable to the impacts of climate change due to the impacts of increased flooding and sea level rise. The population of more than 17 million people in the Mekong is directly impacted by changes in upstream flow and water quality conditions. In the worst case scenario, by 2050:

- Sediment inflows to the delta will be reduced by 94%;
- Dry season flow volumes will reduce by 18%;
- Average annual flood flow volumes will decrease by 22%; and
- Peak daily flood flows will increase dramatically with the historic 1 in 100 year flood event becoming a 1 in 20 year event and the 1 in 10 year flood event becoming a 1 in 5 year event.

Rising sea levels compounded by a shrinking delta land mass will alter the delicate balance between freshwater and estuarine conditions in the delta. Groundwater abstraction coupled with the area's unique geology and natural land consolidation processes of a young delta like the Mekong have resulted in rates of land subsidence in the order of 0.5 – 3.3cm/year (Erban et al, 2014), with hotspots centered on the Cau Mau peninsula and the central floodplain areas of Can Tho, Vinh Long, and Tien Giang.

Flood management in the upper delta floodplain, saline intrusion in the delta estuary and coastal protection in the peninsula will become more critical with the projected regional changes for the delta. Strategies will need to carefully consider the existing trends and challenges, external and internal drivers of change and regional changes for the hydro-ecological zones. An integrated approach is required that assesses the regional impacts and shared benefits of the proposed investments, aligns with policy drivers and identifies areas for improved inter-provincial cooperation. For each of the hydrological zones these include:

- **Upper delta floodplain:** Flood management is required to deal with the issues of increasing flood damage and riverbank erosion;
- **Delta estuary:** Adapting to salinity intrusion requires saline tolerant farming systems to be adopted i.e. embracing brackish aquaculture; and
- **Delta peninsula:** Coastal zone protection should consist of a combination of sea dykes, mangroves and sustainable shrimp farming practices

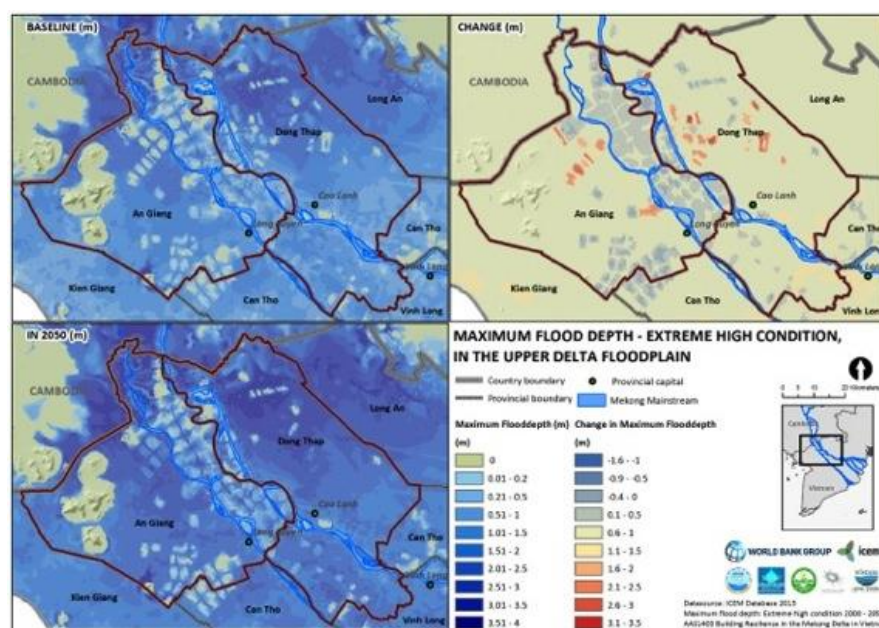


External drivers and regional changes in the Mekong Delta

Below are examples of the analysis used to project future changes in the upper delta, delta estuary and peninsula on 2050 under future worst-case scenarios.

Managing floods in the upper delta

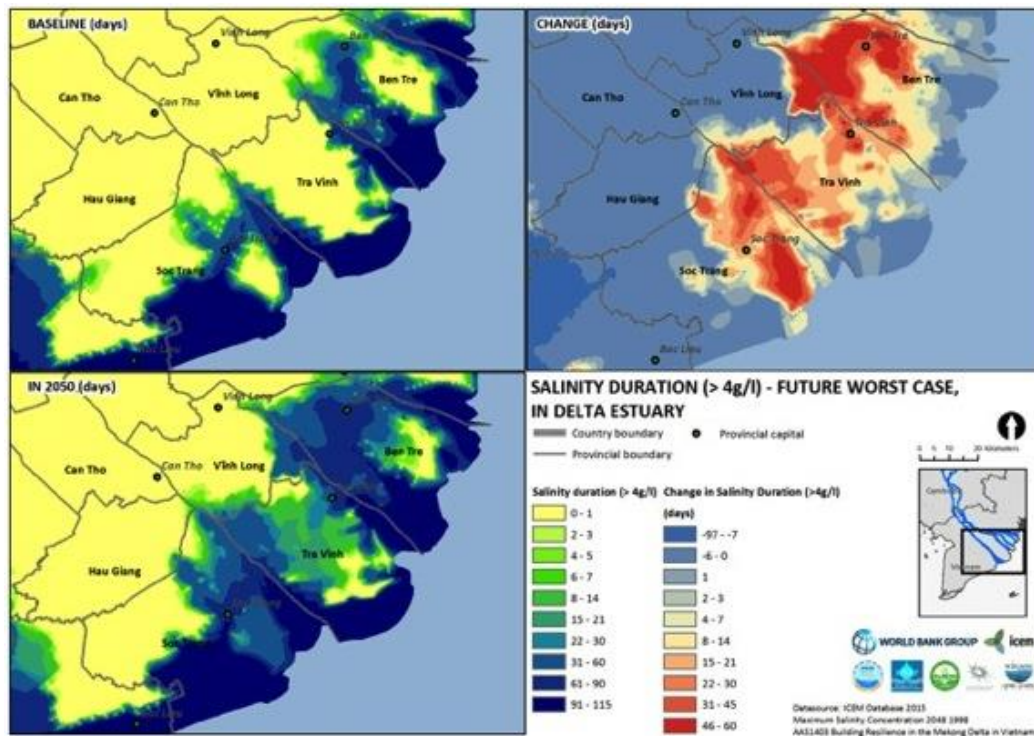
The flood inundation (days) will increase by up to 1-10 and 11-20 days in areas of An Giang and Dong Thap. Map below also highlights the impacts of increased flooding on Can Tho province downstream of the upper delta floodplain that will experience increases of 31-40 and 41-50 days of flood inundation (days).



Changes in maximum flood depth under extreme high condition in the upper delta floodplain

Salinity intrusion in the Delta Estuary

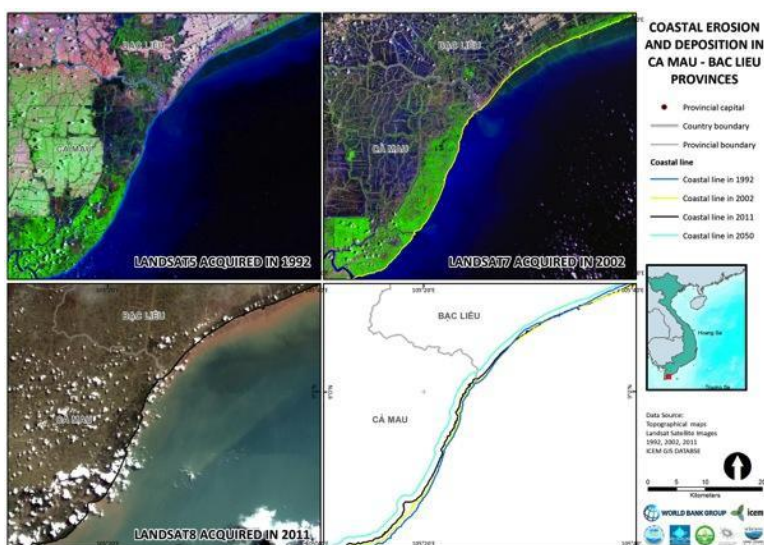
In 2050 under future worse case scenarios salinity duration ($>4\text{g/L}$) will increase by up to 45-60 days in Soc Trang, Tra Ben Tre and Tra Vinh. Increased saline intrusion put further pressures on land use, balancing brackish and freshwater aquaculture and dry season water shortages.



Changes in salinity duration ($>4\text{g/L}$) under future worst-case scenario in the delta estuary

Coastal erosion in the Delta Peninsula

The coastal lines for Soc Trang and Bac Lieu and Ca Mau show increasing rates of erosion from 1992-2011. In 2050 under a worst-case scenario the increasing erosion rates (m/year) will lead to further coastal erosion in the delta peninsula, especially in Ca Mau, which is influenced by both the East and West Sea.



Changes in coastal erosion in Ca Mau and Bac Lieu

Strategies for building resilience in the Mekong Delta

This section outlines the strategic options for the MD-ICRSL project for Components 1-4.

Component 1: Investments Enhancing Monitoring, Analytics, and Information Systems

Adaptation to climate change in the Mekong Delta requires an integrated, multidisciplinary approach and the coordinated participation of all disciplines, sectors, and stakeholders. Effective adaptation also requires strengthening the evidence base. Component 1 provides the framework for updating and sharing information, knowledge, and data among stakeholders—researchers, policy makers and decision makers, planners—and between different levels and places are critical for resilient decisions. Component 1 comprised two subcomponents:

- *Sub-component 1.1: Investing in Monitoring Systems and Related Products to Enhance Mekong Delta Knowledge Base:*
- *Subcomponent 1.2: Infrastructure and Integrated Information Systems for Enhanced Decision-Making*

Upgrading monitoring programs will include remote sensing, land use, water quantity and quality, groundwater, coastal and river morphology, coastal zone protection, etc. to provide better information. Establishing the Mekong Delta Center will be for data, information, education, knowledge and advocacy for adapting to climate change and promoting sustainability. The operations system for hydraulic infrastructure will provide real-time information on salinity, floods and droughts to allow for better operation of infrastructure. A comprehensive assessment of Delta sustainability issues, including status, trends and recommendations on how to adaptively manage the Delta in the context of rapidly changing environmental conditions will also be prepared. This strategy aligns with the overall priority and “no-regret” measures outlined in the MDP for integrated development of the Mekong Delta.

Component 2: Managing floods in the Upper Delta

The key strategies for the upper delta flood plains are to increase (or as a minimum maintain the existing) water retention capacity by moving away from the advocated system of high dykes that facilitates triple crop rice production towards a more climate resilient flood based production system that adapts to and optimizes wet and dry-season water conditions.

Flood Management in the upper delta floodplain is critical to protect and/or reclaim the benefits of flood retention and flood diversion measures while increasing rural incomes and protecting high value assets. Over the last decades, the region has seen substantial changes to the landscape through the intensification of agriculture and aquaculture. High dykes have been constructed around rice fields to control flooding and enable a third rice crop to be grown per year. The key strategy for building resilience is embracing flood-based agriculture and flood management. Achieving the balance between flood control, adaptive land and water use and restoring flood retention and ecosystem connectivity.

Component 3: Adapting to salinity transitions in the delta estuary

The strategies outlined in the MDP for the delta estuary address flood protection, freshwater supply for the horticultural/agricultural areas of Ben Tre and Tra Vinh, the limitation of groundwater aquifer exploitation to sustainable levels and livelihoods improvements

Adapting to salinity intrusion is required to address the challenges related to salinity intrusion, flooding through transitions to sustainable aquaculture and improved livelihoods for communities living in the coastal areas. The key components in the strategy for the delta estuary and other coastal areas is to strengthen coastal protection through a mix of 'building with nature' type (where possible) and infrastructural measures (where needed) and facilitate a gradual transition from existing fresh water based rice production towards a brackish and diversified aquaculture system that adapts to increasingly saline conditions. An additional priority is the protection of groundwater aquifers, due to increasing evidence that excessive groundwater extraction accelerates land subsidence.

Component 4: Protecting coastal areas in the Delta Peninsula

The strategy as outlined in the MDP for the delta peninsula aims to strengthen coastal protection through a mix of 'building with nature' type (where possible) and infrastructural measures (where needed) and facilitate a gradual transition from existing fresh water based rice production towards a brackish and diversified aquaculture system that adapts to increasingly saline conditions

Protecting coastal areas is required to address the challenges related to coastal erosion, groundwater over abstraction, through appropriate coastal protection measures and sustainable livelihoods for communities living in the delta peninsula area. The key components of the strategy for the delta peninsula is to address the increasing vulnerability of the brackish economy resulting from sea level rise (flood risk and salinization), coastal erosion, fresh water supply for agriculture and shrimp farming systems and livelihoods improvement.

Assessing Regional Project-Financed Impacts

This section of the REA assesses the regional impacts (positive and negative) of the proposed subprojects in Components 2, 3 and 4 to:

- a) Determine the regional project-financed impacts of the MD-ICRSL; and
- b) Provide general guidance for subproject ESIA's to appropriately mitigate regional impacts.

A three-pronged format was used to assess regional project-financed impact: 1) Intensity (high, medium, weak), 2) Spatial extent (regional, sub-regional, local), 3) Duration (long, medium or short-term). The method was used to assess the regional impacts of the following activities planned under the subprojects:

- Upgrading and constructing new infrastructure;
- Dredging;
- Installing water/flood control structures in the upper delta;
- New livelihood models in the upper delta;
- Installing water/salinity control structures in the estuary and peninsula;
- New livelihood models in the estuary and peninsula;
- Expanding aquaculture and shrimp farming;
- Protecting mangrove forests in coastal area; and
- Below ground reservoir in the delta peninsula.

Summary of regional project-financed impacts

The impacts of upgrading and constructing new infrastructure and dredging are likely to only have local or sub-regional impacts and can be managed through subproject safeguard instruments and environmental management plan (EMP). Further information will be provided in the ESMF and the subproject ESIA's, where required.

Installing water/flood control structures in the upper delta will change the hydrological flow and is likely to have major positive regional impacts by increasing flood retention and restoring floodplain ecosystems and agriculture. Hydrological and hydraulic modelling is needed to determine the extent of flood protection in wet and average years. Flooding will provide nutrients and sediment in the wet season reducing the use of fertilizers and pesticides. Under the new livelihood models farmers will be transitioning from triple rice cropping to double rice plus crops and aquaculture. This will be a step-by-step process that includes agricultural extension, access to markets and sustainable agricultural practices. Surface water monitoring will be important to detect whether the use of agro-chemicals, fertilizers and pesticides has increased or reduced in the project areas. Water quality monitoring will be developed at the regional level under Component 1 of the MD-ICRSL.

Installing water/salinity control structures in the estuary and peninsula will have major positive impacts by increasing protection from coastal erosion, and major negative regional impacts by blocking the movement and migration of coastal and estuarine fisheries in the Delta. The loss in capture fisheries may be offset by increasing the area of mangrove forests, that in combination with improved coastal management are likely to increase biodiversity. The combination of mangroves and sea dykes will also provide positive benefits by reducing the damages caused by storm surges and sea level rise.

The operation of the sluice gates will need to be flexible, and incorporate hydrological modelling and surface water monitoring of salinity to determine zones for freshwater, brackish and saline farming. The operations and zones may need to be altered depending on wet, average or dry years. For example, the provinces of Vinh Long are impacted by salinity in dry years only.

The development of livelihood programs in the delta estuary will help farmers to transition to adapt to salinity intrusion and improve climate resilience. A step-by-step process is needed as some high value aquaculture (i.e. sugar cane) in the estuary earns higher income and provides more employment opportunities than aquaculture and shrimp farming. The livelihood models will need to provide support to Khmer and other ethnic groups. Promoting sustainable aquaculture, extensive shrimp and mangrove-shrimp should lead to reduced groundwater abstraction and surface water pollution associated with intensive shrimp farming. Groundwater use studies and surface water monitoring will be developed at the regional level under Component 1.

Constructing the reservoir in Ca Mau to increase freshwater storage in the delta peninsula is likely to have major positive regional impacts. Dry season freshwater shortages and access to water and sanitation are critical challenges in coastal areas. The reservoir, if operated effectively, and complemented by climate smart agriculture should decrease the exploitation of groundwater. Dam safety measures and further hydrological and hydraulic modelling is required to enhance the benefits and reduce any negative impacts during construction and operation of the reservoir.

Overall the subprojects are designed to have positive environmental and social impacts and monitoring changes during construction and operation of water control infrastructure and livelihood models is required. The additional surface and groundwater monitoring and assessing changes in coastal and riverbank erosion under Component 1 will be important for measuring and managing the regional impacts of the subprojects 2, 3 and 4. The investments under Component 1 are outlined in Chapter 7 of the REA.

Linkages with other World Bank Projects in the Mekong Delta

The investments in the MD-ICRSL align with other World Bank projects implemented in the Mekong Delta in water resources, flood protection, coastal management, flood protection and climate change adaptation, including:

- Vietnam Sustainable Agriculture Transformation (VNSAT) Project (P145055)
- Coastal Resources for Sustainable Development Project (CRDSP) (P11879)
- Mekong Delta Water Management for Rural Development (Mekong Water) (P113949)
- Mekong Integrated Water Resources Management (Mekong IWRM) - Phase II (P124942)
- Mekong Delta Region Urban Upgrading Project (UUP) (P113904)
- Mekong Transport Infrastructure Development

Building Adaptive Management Capacity in the Mekong Delta

Component 1 of the project takes a much more comprehensive and regional approach to building resiliency in the Delta by investing in improved monitoring, analytics, and information systems to help guide planning and policy making. Putting the Mekong Delta on a more sustainable and resilient trajectory in the face of climate change, upstream Mekong basin development, and environmentally unsustainable practices within the Delta itself, will require investments in both infrastructure and the enhanced capacity to monitor, plan, and manage the Delta's land and water resources. Component 1 comprises two sub components:

- **Sub-component 1.1.** Upgrading Monitoring Infrastructure to Enhance Mekong Delta Knowledge Base (US\$ 33.7 Million)
- **Subcomponent 1.2.** Infrastructure and Information Systems for Enhanced Decisions (US\$ 13.8 million)

The proposed activities/investments under Component 1 are shown below:

New Institutions	Planning and Analytics	Enhanced Monitoring
Mekong Delta Center for Climate Resiliency	Mekong Delta Climate Resiliency Assessment Report	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Surface water - Groundwater - Remote Sensing - Sea dykes and mangrove belts - Real-time hydraulic operations

The activities above will provide the tools and knowledge to support adaptive management, promoting changes in policies, planning, and practices that are more climate resilient. Component 1 provides the framework for ensuring that Vietnam has the capacity to undertake “*smart investments*” and cope with anticipated wide-scale environmental changes in the future from hydropower development, land use changes, sea level rise and climate change.

1 THE MEKONG RIVER BASIN AND DELTA

1.1 Introduction

This Regional Environmental Assessment (REA) supports the development of the ‘*Mekong Delta Integrated Climate Resilience and Sustainable Livelihood (MD-ICRSL)*’ project. The PDO is to enhance tools for climate-smart planning, and improve climate resilience of land and water management practices in selected provinces of the Mekong Delta in Vietnam.. The objective would be achieved through the provision of capital investments, technical assistance and capacity building for farmers in the selected provinces of the Mekong Delta in Vietnam and government institutions at national and sub-national levels.

The Project activities will be implemented through the following five components:

- **Component 1:** Enhancing Monitoring, Analytics, and Information Systems
- **Component 2:** Managing Floods in the Upper Delta
- **Component 3:** Adapting to Salinity Transitions in the Delta Estuary
- **Component 4:** Protecting Coastal Areas in the Delta Peninsula
- **Component 5:** Project Management and Implementation Support

1.2 Mekong Delta Plan

The MDP presents a long-term vision on the safe, prosperous and sustainable development of the Delta region and contains strategic development principles for the upper delta, middle delta and peninsula zone. The key recommendations in the MDP is to move from the existing diversified socio-economic planning towards a development direction for the Mekong Delta region that focuses on economic growth through modernizing present agriculture and aquaculture systems by utilizing the unique demographic features (low-lying lands, the waterways network and fertile soils).

The MDP includes “no-regret” and priority measures, as well as measures that can be deferred towards the longer-term that Vietnam could adopt to ensure a safe, prosperous and both economically and environmentally sustainable future for the delta region. The MDP is a regional wide assessment of the current trends and long-term sustainability issues for the Delta and forms the foundations for this project. The overall objectives of this project is to operationalize the priority and “no-regret” strategies for the upper delta, coastal zones and overall measures developed under the MDP to enhance integrated development of the Delta (Table 1). The coastal zone described in the MDP includes areas of the delta estuary and peninsula.

Table 1: Summary of MDP priority and “no regret” measures

Upper delta	
2050 “no-regret”	Controlled Flooding: agricultural land-use planning in upper delta and modernization of flood-based “no-regret” agricultural production systems (flood water retention, diversification of fish and vegetables).
2050 priority and “no-regret”	Flood protection: local urban and rural in combination with room for river and reinforcement and upgrading of flood (reversed drainage) protection system and spatial urban planning.
Coastal zones	

2050 “no-regret”	Dual Zone Coastal Management: Brackish economy and dynamic shorelines. Modernization and “no-regret” increased sustainability of aquaculture by adopting poly-culture based systems aligned with mangrove regeneration in the outer coastline. Mangrove regeneration and sedimentation along outer coast line as reinforcement of sea-shore.
2050 priority and “no-regret”	Fresh water management along the coast: Preservation of the ancient phreatic groundwater table “priority” along the coast is a priority by halting its use in agriculture and aquaculture. Limited use for rural water and supply only.
Overall	
2050 “no-regret”	Research and investigation programme: Coherent data collection, joint fact finding and “no-regret” open sources, coherent research to develop programmes and plans for decision within the framework of an integrated development of the delta.
2050 priority and “no-regret”	Integrated Governance and Planning: Mechanisms, financial and political, are put in place to come to an effective coordination and integration of planning across sectors, and across governance domains, at national and provincial level, to come to a congruent planning process and implementation in the future.

Source: MDP 2013

The 2050 “no-regret” and priority measures for the middle delta are to shift from groundwater supply to supply from surface water to prevent land subsidence. The middle delta is not included in the MD-ICRSL, however investments in the delta estuary and peninsula will focus on reducing groundwater use. Groundwater monitoring and water use studies will also be carried out at the regional level under Component 1, which will enhance monitoring, analytics, and information systems.

For the upper delta floodplains dominated by a fluvial process the key recommendations from the MDP is to renew the existing agricultural policies by targeting seasonal flood- based agriculture with higher value agricultural intensification and innovation based on combined double rice and flood based aquaculture and/or horticulture. For the delta peninsula and estuaries dominated by marine processes the key recommendations of the MDP are to full-heartedly embrace the brackish coastal zone in the southern delta, and invest in a sustainable, high-value brackish aquaculture specialization.

1.3 REA Methodology

The MDP, was prepared with support from the Netherlands government and endorsed by the Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Development (MARD) and Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment (MONRE), and is the strategic foundation for this project. The MDP presents a long- term vision on the safe, prosperous and sustainable development of the Delta region and includes a set of priority and “no-regret” recommendations, many of which will be implemented under the MD-ICRSL project.

This REA builds upon and expands the analysis in the MDP by providing a more comprehensive presentation of existing information, utilizes climate scenario modelling, and describes in more detail the strategies in the three hydro-ecological zones: upper delta floodplains, delta estuary and delta peninsula. The analysis in the REA uses the eight main classes of land use identified and assessed in the MDP: (i) triple crop rice, (ii) rice, (iii) fruit,

(iv) brackish water culture, (v) shrimp, (vi) forest/wetlands, (vii) mangroves, and (viii) urban. (vii) mangroves, and (viii) urban.

The existing trends/challenges projected future changes (2050) and strategies for the Mekong Delta were developed using the baseline information, GIS tools, maps, images and modelling developed under the '*Building Resilience in the Mekong Delta*' (TA) (P149017). The information from this TA is available online at: <http://icem.com.au/DELTA/>.

1.4 REA objectives

The key objectives of this REA are to:

- provide a comprehensive environmental and socio-economic baseline of the Mekong Delta;
- present the existing trends and challenges in the upper delta, delta estuary and delta peninsula;
- analyze the regional changes from hydropower development, land use change, sea level rise and climate change and recommend strategies for building resilience; and
- assess the regional project-financed impacts and recommend investments for building adaptive capacity in the Mekong Delta.

A number of environmental safeguard instruments and assessment will be conducted for this project, including the Environmental and Social Management Framework (ESMF), three Environmental Management Plans (EMPs) and three Environmental and Social Impact Assessments (ESIAs). The ESMF will establish the requirements for subproject safeguard screening, impact assessment and development of mitigation measures, an Environmental Codes of Practice (ECOP) for construction activities, safeguard documentation preparation and clearance, safeguard implementation, supervision, monitoring, and reporting. The REA will provide general guidance to subproject ESIAs to ensure that regional project-financed impacts are effectively mitigated.

1.5 Overview of the Mekong Basin

The Mekong River is the twelfth longest river in the world and sixth largest in terms of mean annual discharge. The Mekong River flows for 4,750km from its source in Tibet at 4,500m above sea level through China, Myanmar, Laos, Thailand, Cambodia and Vietnam via a Delta into the East Sea, draining a basin area of 795,000 km² and with a mean annual discharge of approximately 475 km³. The Mekong Basin can be divided into two parts: 1) the Upper Mekong Basin (UMB) in China accounting for 24% of drainage and contributing 16% percent of flows into the Mekong annually (up to 30% in the dry season)(MRC 2009), and 2) the Lower Mekong Basin (LMB) accounting for 76% of the drainage area (Lu & Siew 2006).

The Mekong plays a crucial socio-economic role in the lives of the 90 million people living in the Basin. Maintaining and improving the natural productivity of the river basin is essential to both the local populations and the national economies of the countries within the basin. The Mekong is the second most bio-diverse aquatic system in the world after the Amazon, and supports the world's largest fresh water capture fishery of about 2.3 million tons per year (MRC 2011). The people of the Mekong have the highest per capita consumption of fish in the world—up to 50 kg/head/year in some parts of the basin (ICEM 2013). The freshwater fish catch per capita in the LMB is nearly four times the world average (Baran 2010). Of the fish species nearly 200 species are migratory “white” fish, some of them travelling long distances from the Tonle Sap or the Mekong Delta in Vietnam up the Khone Phapheng Falls and further up the Mekong in Laos and Thailand.

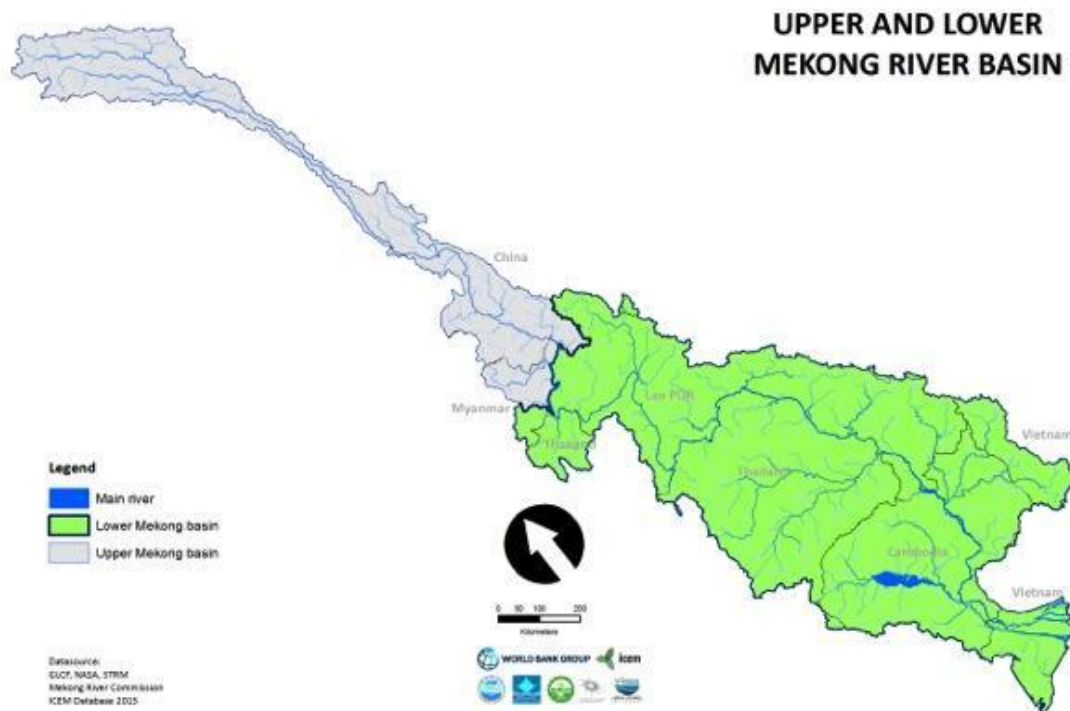


Figure 1: Upper and Lower Basin

Mekong communities depend on the products and services of the river. The rural poor are also heavily dependent upon ecosystem services, as livelihoods are derived from activities relating to agriculture, fisheries, livestock and non-timber forest products (NTFPs). Threats to the provision of these ecosystem services, such as climate change and major infrastructure projects have large development impacts. Aquatic resources play an important role as a food source and contribute between 40-80 per cent of animal protein intake of the local people in the LMB (MRC 2010).

Agriculture is the dominant water-related sector, particularly in Thailand and Vietnam whereas agriculture in Cambodia and Laos is currently less intensively developed. Overall, the dry-season irrigated area of about 1.2 million hectares is less than 10% of the total agricultural area in the LMB (15 million hectares). Expansion of the present levels of irrigation is limited by the availability of dry season flows. Most people in the basin are rural farmers and fishers and, while they may in some case be money-poor, they are resource-rich (FAO, 2011). Total catches and production from Mekong fisheries (including aquaculture) amounted to about 3.9 million tons in 2008, of which about 2 million tons was from capture fisheries. Fisheries account for nearly 12% of Cambodia's GDP and contributes more to the country's economy than rice production. Although proportionally less significant to the national economy, the Mekong fishery sectors in Thailand and Viet Nam add well over US\$750 million to their GDP each year and ensure food security for rural households (MRC 2010).

The wetlands of the Mekong river basin play a vital role in sustaining livelihoods and the socio-economic development of the region. The river and its tributaries, backwaters, lakes and swamps support many unique ecosystems, such as the river's deep pools, plains of reeds and mangrove forests. Recent studies show that rural people use a large number of species

caught or collected in wetlands. These species are collected from a wide variety of both permanent and seasonally flooded habitats, including perennial rivers, ponds, marshes and flooded forests (MRC 2011). Aquatic resources play an important role as food source and contribute between 40-80 per cent of animal protein intake of the local people in the LMB (MRC 2010). The rural poor are also heavily dependent upon ecosystem services, as livelihoods are derived from activities relating to agriculture, fisheries, livestock and non-timber forest products (NTFPs).

The WWF Indo-Burma Biodiversity hotspots identified 12 eco-regions in the Mekong Basin (Figure 2). Each of the eco-regions represents a unique combination of hydrologic conditions, nutrient profiles and temperature regimes, producing unique environmental conditions and habitats (WWF 2013). There are more than 114 officially designated protected areas and also more than 100 important wetland sites including fish conservation zones, community managed forests and biosphere reserves in the basin (ICEM 2013).

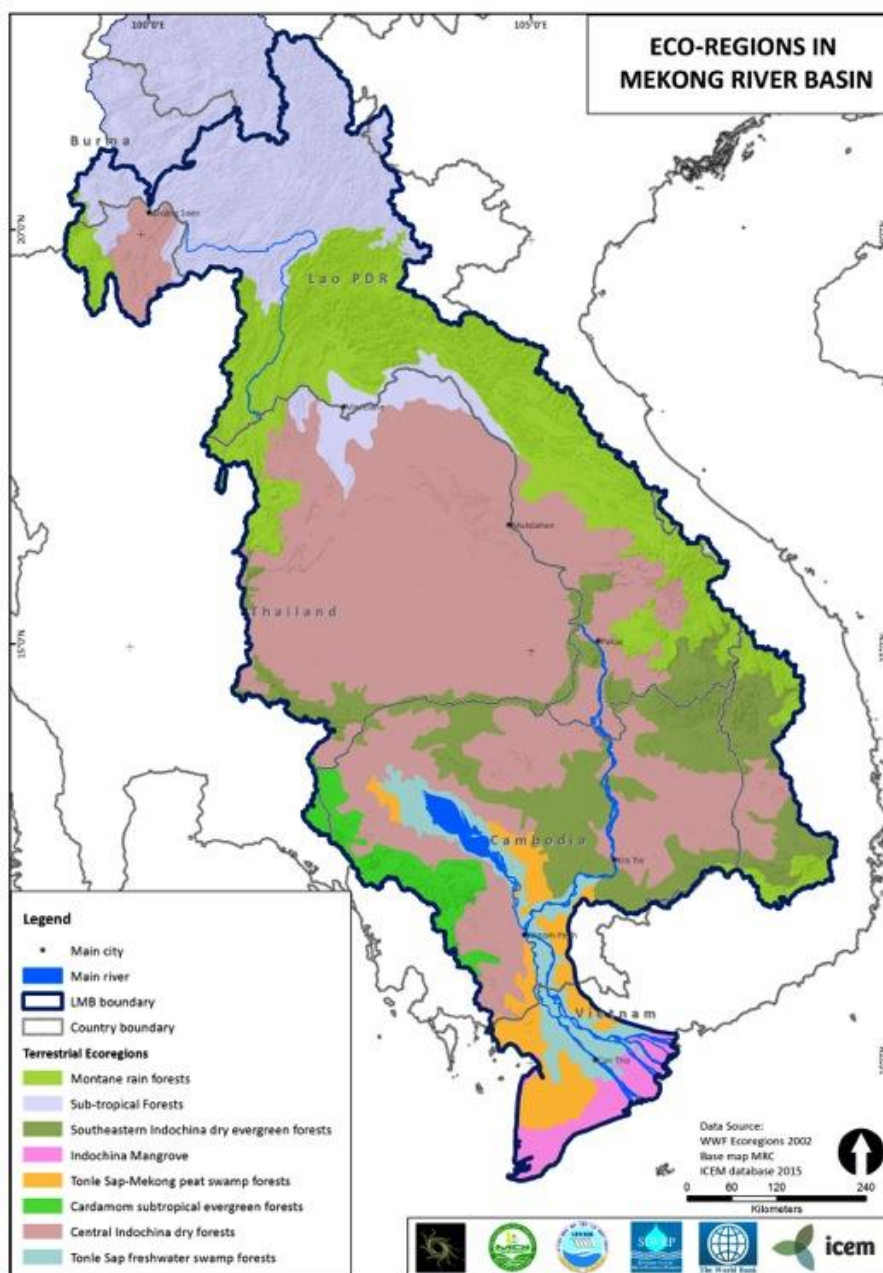


Figure 2: Eco-regions in the Mekong River Basin

The Mekong Basin is characterized by rapid expansion of hydropower to increase energy security. Rapid hydropower development in the Mekong has been promoted for economic development, storing water for expansion of agriculture and annual flood control. More than 134 tributary and mainstream projects are projected, under construction or operating in the LMB (MRC 2010) (Figure 3). Increasing energy security through hydropower development is expected to radically reduce food security (Varis et al. 2012). Many studies have outlined the importance of fisheries and the impacts of hydropower dams on livelihoods (ICEM 2010; Hurtle et al. 2007). Further, specific mitigation measures will need to be designed for the Mekong and integrated into dam operation to minimize these impacts (Dugan et al 2010). The negative impacts from mainstream and tributary projects have the potential to create conflict between competing water uses (Sneddon & Fox).

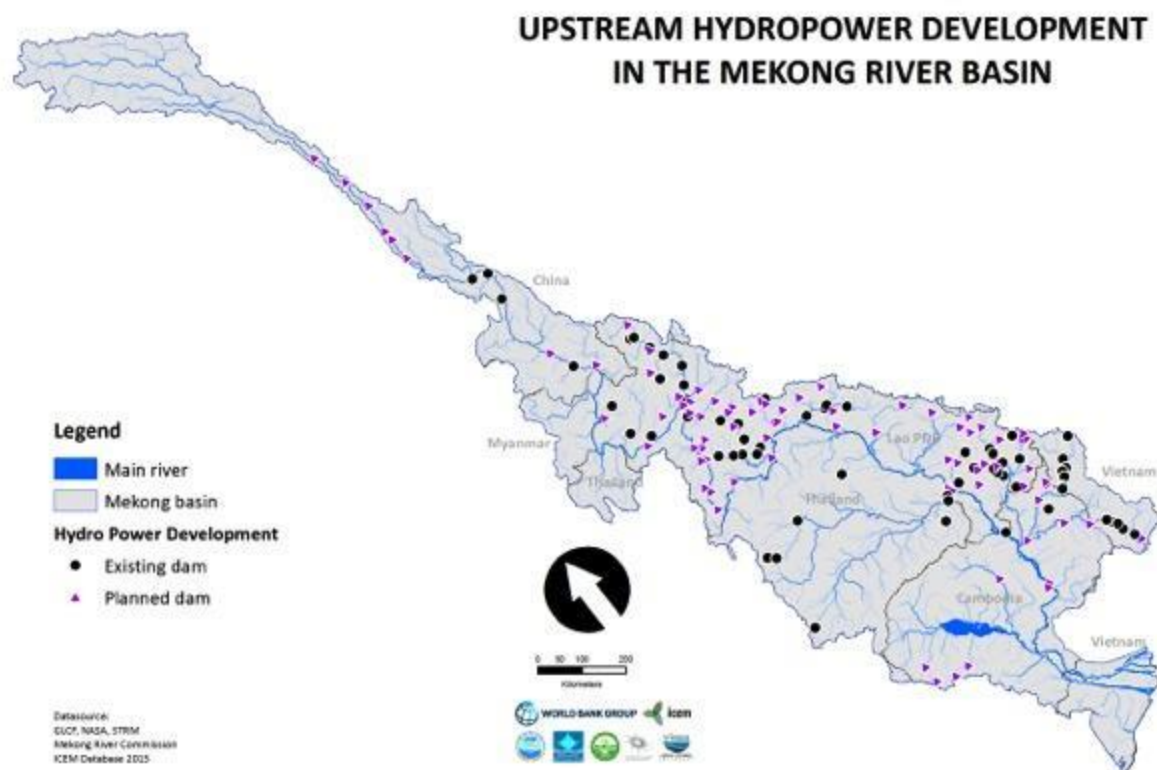


Figure 3: Hydropower development in the Upper and Lower Mekong Basin

Large-scale irrigation, urbanization and land use changes from deforestation will put further pressure on the natural resources of the Mekong Basin. The alteration of river morphology and hydrology caused by the combination of hydropower projects, the excavation of channels for inland navigation, and water extraction for irrigation are the greatest threats to capture fisheries in the LMB (WWF 2013; ICEM 2013). Major land-use changes from deforestation, expansion of urban areas and agriculture are likely to further exacerbate these impacts (Takamatsu et al. 2013). The average annual withdrawals for agricultural, industrial and other consumptive uses in the LMB are about 60 billion m³, or 12% of the Mekong's average annual discharge (MRC 2011). There are currently only minor diversions from the mainstream upstream of the Delta although large-scale diversions are being considered (MRC 2011). The Mekong has some of the highest rates of deforestation in Asia with more than one quarter of the total forest cover lost between 1973 and 2009 and rates of deforestation increasing over the past 10 years (Figure 4).

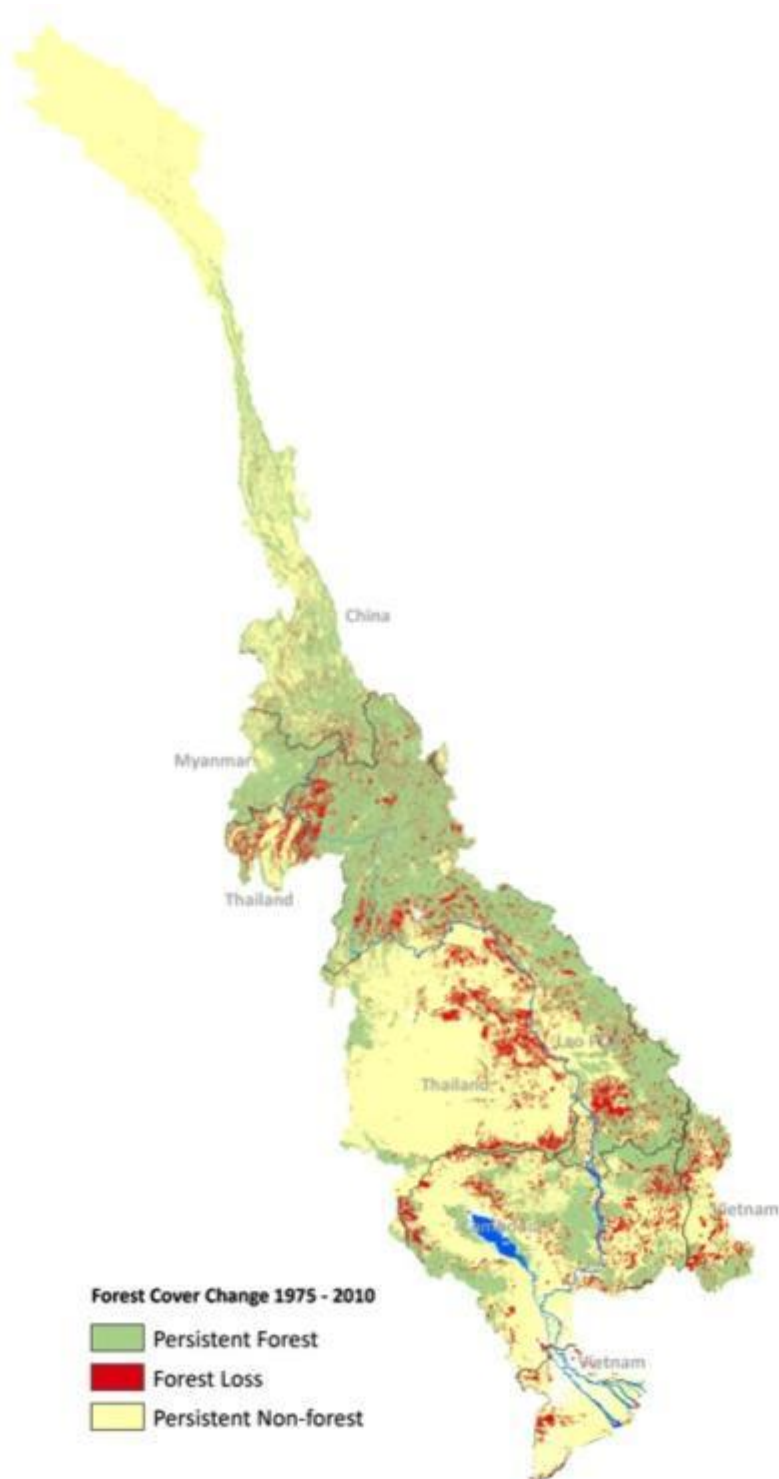


Figure 4: Changes in forest cover 1975-2010

1.5.1 Connectivity between the Mekong River Basin and the Delta

Kratie in Cambodia is regarded as the point in the Mekong Basin where the hydrology and hydrodynamics of the river change significantly. Upstream from Kratie, the river generally flows within a clearly identifiable mainstream channel. In all but the most extreme flood years, this channel contains the full discharge with only local over-bank flooding. Downstream from Kratie, seasonal floodplain storage dominates the annual regime and there is significant movement of water between channels over flooded areas and the seasonal refilling

and flow reversal of the Tonle Sap (Great Lake) (MRC 2006). Flooding in the Mekong Basin is a natural process that maintains productivity and drives the dynamic evolution of the Mekong Delta.

The annual flood event is responsible for replenishing the fertile sediments that is vital to agricultural productivity, builds the delta coastline and river bank and also plays an important role in flushing the acidic waters that leach from much of the delta. Flood amplitudes of 3.50-4.0m are common near the Cambodian border with rates of water level change reaching 20- 30cm/day and channel flow speeds in the order of 0.5m/s. There are generally two peaks during the year, the main peak in September/October preceded by a smaller peak in August. Floodwaters arrive in the delta via the two Mekong River channels (~80%) as well as overland flow from the Cambodian floodplain (~20%). Downstream of Phnom Penh, Cambodia the channel of the Mekong divides into two major distributaries: 1) the Mekong (Tien River in Vietnam) and the Bassac (Hau River in Vietnam). The Tien branches off into six smaller distributaries and the Hau into three before reaching the East Sea in Vietnam (Figure 5).

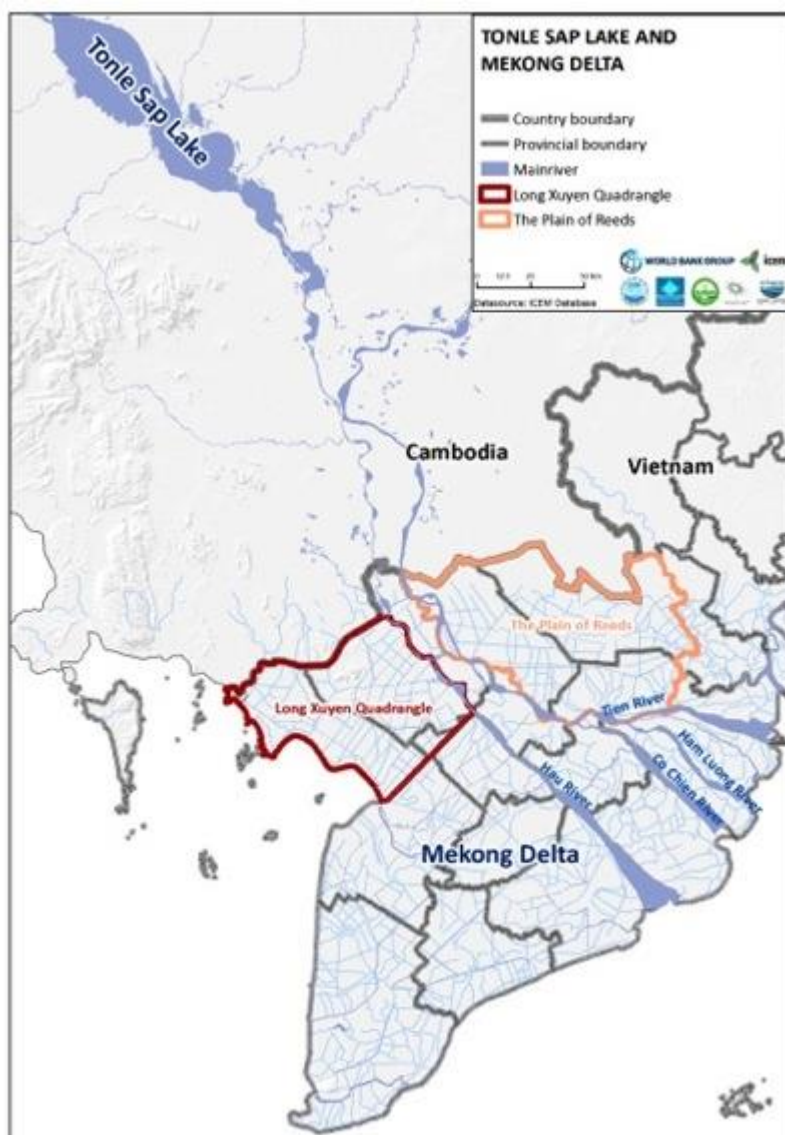


Figure 5: Tonle Sap and Mekong Delta

Floodwater enters Vietnam through the Hau and the Tien branches and overland flows from Cambodia to the Long Xuyen Quadrangle (LXQ) on the right and the Plain of Reeds (POR) on the left. The annual inundation in LXQ is mainly caused by the Hau River and to lesser extent by overland flow from the Cambodian floodplains. In the POR, floods are caused by the Tien River and by significant overland flow from the Cambodian floodplains providing a second flood pulse, typically with a few weeks after the peak flow of the Hau River Plain of Reeds. The hydrology of the floodplains and sediment transport drive agricultural productivity in the Mekong Delta in Vietnam.

1.5.2 Hydrological processes and sediment transport

The Mekong River is characterized by its seasonal flood pulse hydrological regime, which is important in shaping the ecosystems, landforms, livelihoods, and the way of live of the inhabitants in the basin. Nearly half of the water of the Mekong comes from the left bank (east) part of the river in Laos. The MRB is unique globally in that the annual variations between low water and high water volumes in the mainstream river are greater than for any other large river in the world with peak rainy season water levels in August and September being approximately 30 times as much as dry season water levels in March and April (Baird 2009). MRC (2009) identifies four bio-hydrological seasons in the annual hydrological cycle of the Mekong including:

1. The dry season;
2. The transition season 1- lasts for about 7-8 weeks from May to end of June;
3. The flood season; and
4. The transition season 2- lasts for about 2-3 weeks from early to third week of November.

The transition seasons between the dry and flood seasons is also particularly important because the changes in flow during these times have great biological significance. Changes in flow occurring during the transition season are thought to trigger migration in certain species of fish.

The Tonle Sap (Great Lake) in Cambodia plays a critical role in the hydrological regime of the Mekong Delta. The flood discharge to the delta is regulated by the Tonle Sap system. During the dry season (October–May), water drains from the Tonle Sap system into the Mekong via the Tonle Sap river. As the wet season advances the flooding in the delta downstream of Phnom Penh causes the water levels in the Mekong to rise higher than the Great Lake. This causes flow in the Tonle Sap to reverse towards the Great Lake, inundating its floodplains. At the peak of the flooding the surface area will increase between three and six times and the water level increases from 1m up to 10m (FAO 2011; WWF 2009). Figure 6 below shows the extent of inundation of the Tonle Sap in 2011 in the wet and dry seasons. At the end of the wet season, the flow reverses and the water recedes out of the Tone Sap lake back towards the delta. In peak flood years, in the order of 30% of the dry season flow in the Tien and Hau Rivers is supplied by natural drainage of the Tonle Sap Lake back into the Mekong River system.

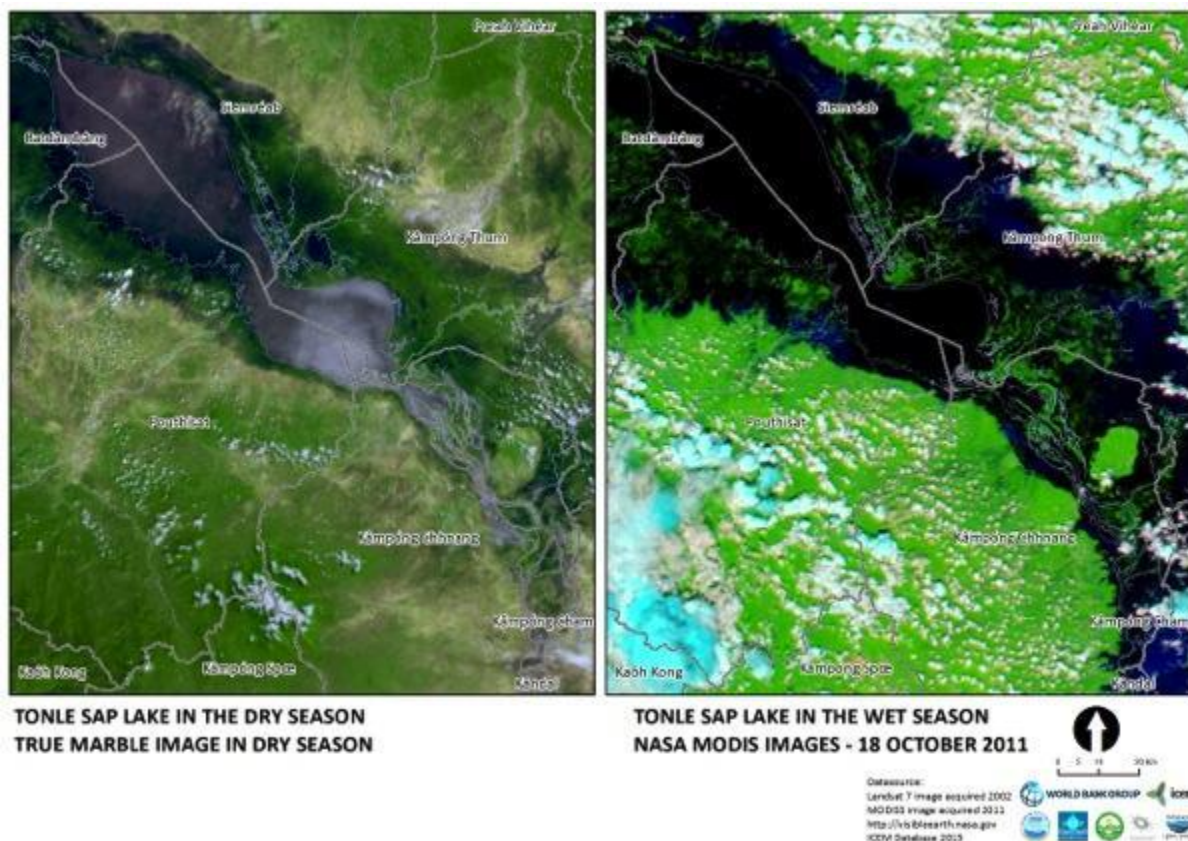


Figure 6: Tonle Sap lake in the wet and dry season

The sediment and nutrient supply of the Mekong has important implications for channel morphology, freshwater and coastal fisheries, agricultural productivity and water supply in the delta. Annually the Mekong River discharges about 475km³ to the East Sea, transporting with it estimated sediment load of 50-160 million tons per year (Xue et al. 2009; Milliman & Meade 1983). The large range in variability of sediment transport reflects the uncertainty regarding the amount of sediment trapped behind existing dams in the Upper Mekong and tributaries (Koehnken et al. 2012; Lu et al. 2014). As much as 50 to 65 % of the sediment load of the Mekong River comes from the UMB where the catchment is steep and narrow (pre-Manwan situation). The 3S basin (Sesan, Sekong, and Srepok) contributes 5-15% and the rest of the watershed of the Mekong contributes 20-40% of the sediment load (ICEM, 2012).

The Tonle Sap regulates the sediment flux to the delta. When floodwaters fill the Great Lake during the rainy season, part of the Mekong sediment load is transported into the lake. During the dry season as the Tonle Sap flows back into the Mekong River it carries sediment, adding to the total sediment load of the Mekong in the. The sediment load from the Tonle Sap is critical for the delta during the dry season (December to April). In 2008, the Tonle Sap sediment contributed 88% (97 MT) of the total sediment reaching the delta, 77% (54 MT) in 2009 and 58% (50 MT) in 2010 (Lu, Kummur & Ourng 2014).

1.6 Bio-physical description of the Mekong Delta

1.6.1 Soil and geology

The Mekong Delta covers approximately 40,000km² in southern Vietnam, accounting for 12% of the country's total area. Most of the land area of the delta is flat except for some isolated low mountains in the An Giang and Kien Giang provinces near the border with

Cambodia and the coastal sand ridges of 5-8m in elevation. More than half of the delta is less than 1.0m above mean sea level. Generally, the terrain of the delta drops from 2.0-4.0m near the northwest border with Cambodia to 1.0-1.5m in the middle plain, to 0.3-0.7m in the southeast in the coastal area (Figure 7).

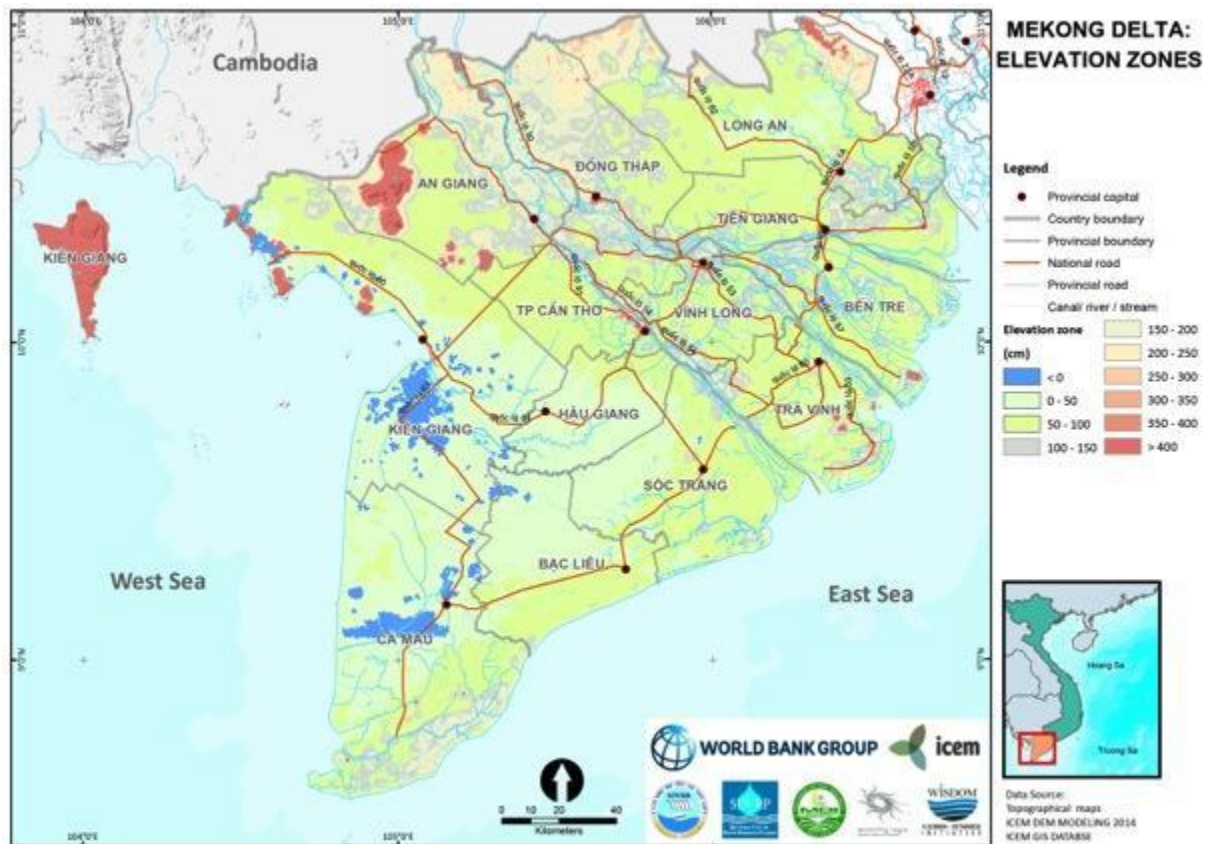


Figure 7: Elevation in the Mekong Delta

The formation of the Mekong Delta is the product of fluvial process of the Mekong River System interacting with tidal and wave processes in the East and West Seas (ICEM 2012). Regressions over the last 4550 years BP have produced many distinct sets of relict beach ridges, which are useful in distinguishing the former coastlines and evolutionary history of the delta (Nguyen et al. 1997). The extremely fast progradation rate could be due to: 1) very high sediment supply depositing in the slight inclination of the receiving basin, 2) neotectonic movements and relative sea-level changes, and, 3) widespread mangrove forests playing an important role to enhance sediment accumulation. Former mangrove marshy deposits were significantly developed in the Plain of Reeds (POR) and Long Xuyen Quadrangle (LXQ).

The dynamics of its formation have resulted in the majority of the Mekong Delta area being comprised of acid-sulphate or saline soils, creating a poor environment for agricultural production, and yet, today, the delta is central to Vietnam's agro-economy and has some of the most productive agricultural land in Vietnam (Tuyet & Cosslett 2014). The soil types in different provinces have an important influence on the type of agriculture. The four main soil types in the delta are alluvium, acid sulphate, saline and peat soils (Figure 8).

- **Alluvium soils:** cover an area of 1.110 million hectares (28% of the Delta) and are found along the Tien and Hau rivers. The soils are a result of multiple depositions of alluvia by the Mekong River over several thousands of years, and are most suitable for rice production;

- **Acid sulphate soils:** covers an area of 1.590 million hectares (41% of the Delta) and occur sometimes in combination with saline soils. They are found along the shore of the Gulf of Thailand and along the Hau River and the low land between the Tien and the Hau rivers;
- **Saline soils:** covers an area of 808,749 hectares (21% of the Delta). They are found along the coast of the East Sea and are subject to salinity intrusion for 5-7 months a year; and
- **Peat soils:** covers an area of 24,000 hectares, mainly found in U Minh Thuong National Park in Kien Giang province and U Minh Ha National Park in Ca Mau province. Peat soils vary in thickness from 0.3 to 1.5 meters and 2.5 meters.

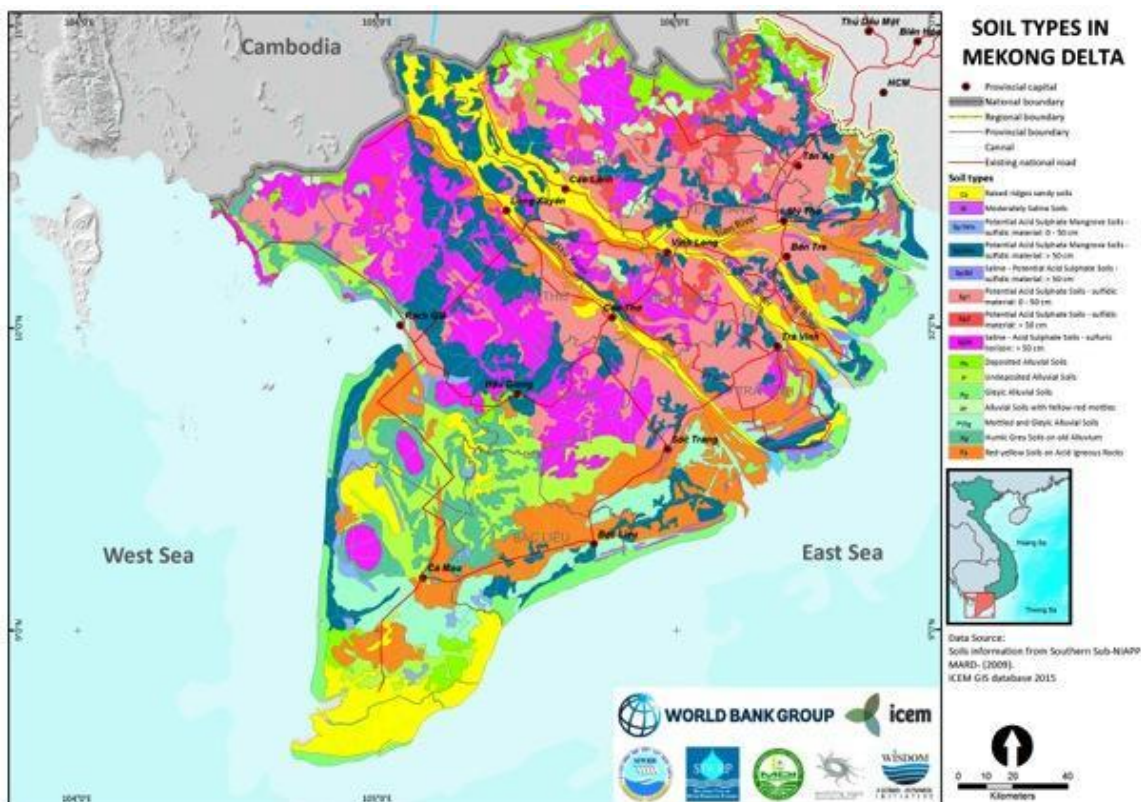


Figure 8: Soil types in the Mekong Delta

1.6.2 Climate

The Mekong Delta lies within the humid tropics, characterized by consistently high mean monthly temperatures (25 –29°C) and high but seasonal rainfall (1200 – 2300 mm). Seasonal climatic variations are predominantly controlled by the Asian monsoons. During the wet season from May to November, the dominant winds from the southwest bring over 90 % of the annual total rainfall. The dry season from December to April is characterized by higher temperatures and less rainfall. Tropical depressions that develop over the East Sea, seldom reach the Mekong Delta. The delta is occasionally affected by heavy rain, wind, and high ocean waves associated with storms offshore or in central Vietnam during the wet season (Hashimoto & Takehiko 2001).

The average annual rainfall of the delta is approximately 1800 mm, with an uneven distribution in space and time. The western region has higher annual average rainfall from 2000-2400 mm, while the east has from 1600-1800 mm rainfall on average. The central plains from Long

Xuyen, Chau Doc-Can Tho to Tra Vinh - Cao Lanh - Go Cong have the lowest annual rainfall 1200-1600 mm. Rainfall is very unevenly distributed throughout the year. Rainfall in the dry season accounts for only 10% of the total rainfall, with January, February, and March having almost no rain (often triggering droughts). In the rainy season there is occasionally continuous rain that can last for 3-5 days causing flooding and an increase in water levels (MDP 2011).

1.6.3 Water resources

The hydrological regime of the Mekong Delta is a product of the interaction between the river flows, the semi-diurnal tidal regime of the East Sea and the diurnal tide of the West Sea (Gulf of Thailand). Hydrologically, the delta can be divided into three parts:

1. **The upper delta:** is dominated by freshwater inputs from the Mekong basin and overbank flooding of the Tien and Hau river channels. The POR and LXQ are subject to annual inundation of about 3-4 meters by Mekong floodwaters. The floodplains temporarily store water in the flood season and gradually release water to replenish the river mainstream in the dry season, regulating the extent of salinity intrusion in downstream coastal areas;
2. **The middle delta:** an area of about 1.6 million ha lying between the upper part of the delta and the coastal area on both sides of the Mekong River. The area is under the mixed influence of upstream hydrology as well as coastal processes such as tidally-induced saline intrusion and channel-flow reversal; and
3. **The coastal delta:** with an area of about 1.0 million ha, primarily influenced by tidal flow. The saline soils form a belt of 20-50km wide along the east and west coast and most of the Ca Mau Peninsula. Coastal processes dominate local hydrology and local rainfall is the main freshwater input.

1.6.3.1 Flooding

Annual flooding in the Mekong Delta usually begins in June-July and ends in November-December, with an average peak flow entering the delta of around 28,000-30,000 m³/s. This is followed by a seasonal average dry flow of about 3,000-5,000 m³/s. Both high and low flood regimes prevail for about 6 months. The total average annual river flow in the Mekong Delta in the upstream parts of the Tien and Hau rivers is ~408 billion m³ (according to data measured from 2000 to 2008 at Tan Chau and Chau Doc stations). With flooding in the flood season the border region accounts for 14-18% of the total flow into the Vietnam (estimated 57 billion m³) and surface water by rain on the plains accounts for 11% of the whole water volume (estimated 45 billion m³) (MDP 2013).

There are two large natural floodplain depression areas: 1) Long Xuyen Quadrangle (LXQ) is roughly 600,000 hectares on the right bank of the Hau river (Bassac) and, 2) Plain of Reeds (POR) is about 700,000 hectares on the left bank of the Tien river (Mekong). These two vast floodplain areas act as natural sponges to regulate flooding by absorbing water in the flood seasons and releasing water back to the mainstream in the dry season.

1.6.3.2 Sediment transport

One of the important benefits of the annual floodwaters that the Mekong brings to the delta is the sediments and associated nutrients critical for agriculture and fisheries. The total sediment transported to the delta varies from 64% in an extreme flood to 71% for a low flood, with a corresponding flood volume of 86 and 93% respectively. The largest fraction of

the sediment is transported through the Tan Chau and Chau Doc stations ranging from 57 to 68% (corresponding flood volume: 78–89%) for high and low flood years (Manh et al. 2014). The floodplains compartments trap 1-6% of the total sediment load at Kratie, this is equivalent to around 9-41 % of the total sediment transported into the delta. The remaining suspended sediment is transported to the coastal areas.

For example, in the extreme flood in 2011 it was estimated that 292,000 tons of nutrients were deposited in the POR, 102,000 tons in the LXQ and 45,000 tons between the Tien and Hau rivers (Manh et al. 2014). Even under normal flood conditions (as in 2009), flooding can provide more than 50% of the typically applied agro-chemicals for rice crops (N, P, K), reducing the costs of fertilizers and pesticides used in intensive rice growing areas.

1.6.3.3 Groundwater

The Mekong Delta can be described as having five main aquifers named after the following geological units: 1) Holocene, 2) Upper-Middle Pleistocene, 3) Lower Pleistocene, 4) Pliocene, and 5) Upper Miocene. The near-surface aquifer (holocene) occurs across most of the delta. Water quality and yield from this aquifer are generally poor with high salinity, high levels of pollutants, and some areas of extremely low pH because of the exposure and oxidization of acid sulphate soils, particularly in the POR and Ca Mau Peninsula (Hung et al. 2000; IUCN 2011). The other four deeper confined aquifers including Upper-Middle Pleistocene, Lower Pleistocene, Pliocene, and Miocene are large-scale reserves of water with varying yield and quality. Water quality is best in the Pleistocene and Pliocene layers but varies markedly by location and aquifer (Phuc 2008).

As surface water in the Mekong Delta is under increasing strain due to pollution, extraction, salinity intrusion, groundwater has become an important water source. Today more than one million wells access groundwater for domestic, agricultural, and industrial needs, causing hydraulic heads (i.e., groundwater levels) to steadily decline in many aquifers over extensive regions (Wagner et al. 2012). A drop in hydraulic heads of over 15m has been reported at Ca Mau since the mid 1990s, the current average rate of hydraulic head decline among wells in the Delta is estimated at 26cm/year (ranging 9-78cm/year)(Erban et al. 2014). The decline in hydraulic head has caused widespread aquifer drawdown in a 100km wide area northwest of Ca Mau to Ho Chi Minh City. Based on time-series data from 79 nested monitoring wells, the compaction of sedimentary layers at these locations is calculated to be causing land subsidence at an average rate of 1.6cm/year (range: 0.28-0.31cm/year), if groundwater extraction continues at present rates, ~0.88m (0.35–1.4m) of land subsidence is expected by 2050 (Erban et al. 2014).

1.6.3.4 Salinity intrusion

In dry years, such as 1998, salinity intrusion can be pervasive in the coastal and intertidal zones of the delta, with as much as 35% of the delta experiencing salinity levels greater than 4g/L. Ca Mau is the most affected province in the delta with 90% of the province area affected in dry years, followed by the delta estuary provinces of Ben Tre, Bac Lieu and Soc Trang (60-79%). In these provinces saline conditions can persist for more than 40 days during the year and up to 100 days in Ca Mau, with maximum salinity concentrations reaching ocean-levels of 30-35g/l. In the coastal areas, seawater intrudes into land through the rivers and canals. The Ca Mau peninsula is most influenced by saline water as seawater intrudes from both sides on the east and the west coasts with different tidal regimes.

1.6.3.5 Water quality

The variation in water quality of the flooded areas of the Mekong Delta is complicated as it is dominated by climate, hydrology, soils, and human activities. The levels of soluble substances of Na, K, Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} , Fe^{2+} , Al^{3+} , SO_4^{2-} , Cl-, HCO_3^- varies with season (MDP 2011). The dry season values are usually higher than those in the flood season, but are generally still below critical thresholds. Surface water pollution in the Mekong delta is characterized by high concentrations of coliform (300.000-1500.000 unit/100ml on average) from human, livestock, and poultry. Effluents from industrial sources and untreated effluent from aquaculture and agriculture also affect surface water quality. Every year the agricultural sector uses around 2 million tons of chemical fertilizers and 500,000 tons of plant protection pesticides.

The Environment Monitoring Center (2012) reported that organic pollution of surface water in the Mekong Delta is showing a decreasing trend in recent years. Measurements of COD and BOD_5 on the mainstream Hau River were reportedly low and meeting Vietnamese standards (*QCVN 08:2008/BTNMT for class A2*¹). Pollution level on the mainstream Tien river was higher than Hau river but still meeting the standards for class A2. Concentrations of N- NH_4^+ and N- NO_3 at the monitoring sites on Hau and Tien Rivers were low, meeting Vietnamese Standards (*QCVN-08:2008 for class A1*²), suitable for domestic water supply, irrigation, and aquaculture purposes.

1.6.4 Biodiversity and ecosystems

1.6.4.1 Wetlands

The Mekong Delta is a highly modified landscape with most of the natural wetlands converted to agriculture land relying on the networks of canals for irrigation. Although the delta has been substantially modified for the intensification of rice-based agriculture it still supports a diverse biota (Campbell 2012). The delta consists of a variety of landscapes, ranging from tidal flats, sandy ridges and tidal back swamps in the coastal plains, estuaries at river mouths, to river flood plains, broad depressions, peat swamps, alluvial levees and terraces further inland (Thinh 2003). The habitats of the delta are dominated by wetlands (Figure 9). The wetlands are among the richest ecosystems in the basin and are important breeding sites for many aquatic species migrating from upper reaches of the Mekong River (Vietnam Environmental Protection Agency 2005).

¹ A2 – water can be used for domestic purposes with appropriate treatments; conservation of aquatic life; and other purposes in lower categories (B1 and B2 for navigation, irrigation, and other purposes that do not require high quality water)

² A1—water is good for domestic purposes and other purposes in the lower categories (A2, B1, and B2)

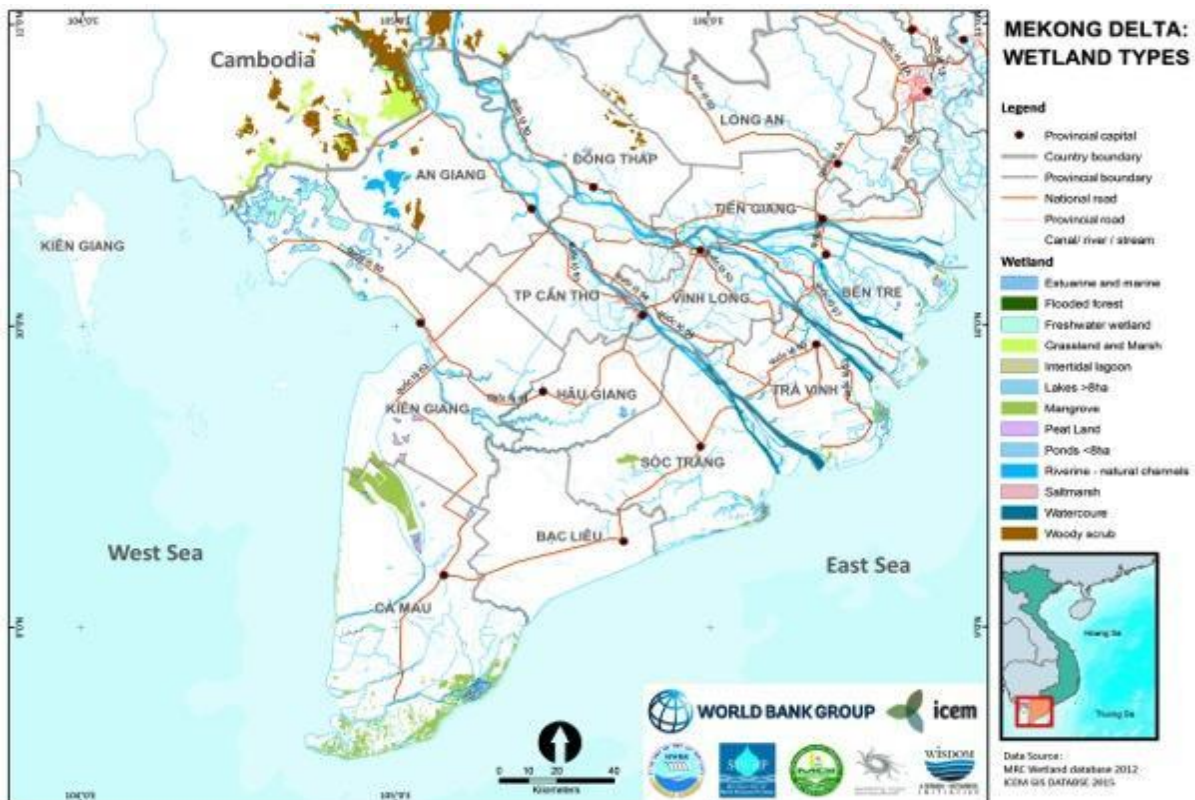


Figure 9: Wetland types in the Mekong Delta

The wetlands of the Mekong Delta can be broadly categorized into three groups:

1. **Saline wetlands:** distributed along the east and west coast along with the coastal mangrove belt. The mangrove forest cover used to be more extensive but has steadily declines for the development of shrimp aquaculture. Saltwater lagoons are also found in the west coast, including the Dong Ho lagoon in Ha Tien, Kien Giang and the Thi Tuong lagoon in Ca Mau;
2. **Inland wetlands:** are dominated by *melaleuca* forest and seasonally inundated grassland habitats. *Melaleuca* forest and grassland used to cover most of the acid sulphate soil zones but now remain mainly in the U Minh protected areas in Kien Giang and Ca Mau, the Ha Tien grasslands near the border with Cambodia in Kien Giang, POR in Dong Thap and LXQ in An Giang; and
3. **Estuarine wetlands:** distributed mainly at the mouth of the Mekong River in Long An, Tien Giang, Ben Tre, Tra Vinh, and Soc Trang are seasonal saltwater wetlands.

1.6.4.2 National Parks and Nature Reserves

The natural resource areas including national parks and natural reserves have increased in the Mekong Delta. The natural resource areas were recently updated under the *Law on Biodiversity* issued by *Decision 1107/QD-BTNMT* on May 12, 2015. Details of the 5 national parks and 6 nature reserves in the Delta are presented in Table 2.

Table 2: National parks and nature reserves in the Mekong Delta

Name	Province	Area (ha)	Level	Management authority
National parks				
Mui Ca Mau	Ca Mau	41,862	National	Provincial PC
U Minh Ha	Ca Mau	8,528	National	PPC
Phu Quoc	Kien Giang	29.135.9	National	PPC
Tram Chim	Dong Thap	7,313	National	PPC
U Minh Thuong	Kien Giang	8,038		
Nature reserves				
Ap Canh Dien	Bac Lieu	363	Local	PPC
Hon Chong	Kien Giang	964.7	National	PPC
Lang Sen	Long An	5030	National	PPC
Thanh Phu	Ben Tre	2584	National	PPC
Long Khanh	Tra Vinh	868.1	Local	PPC
Lung Ngoc Hoang	Hau Giang	2805.37	National	PPC

The new law on biodiversity also specifies five species landscape reserves and six landscape protected areas (LPA) (Table 3). Figure 10 below shows the location of protected areas in the Mekong Delta.

Table 3: Species and Landscape Reserves and Landscape Protected Areas in the Mekong Delta

Name	Province	Area (ha)	Level	Management authority
Species and landscape reserve				
Dam Doi Bird Sanctuary	Ca Mau	130	Local	PPC
Bac Lieu Bird Sanctuary	Bac Lieu	126.7	Local	PPC
Dong Thap Muoi (the Plain of Reeds) ecological area	Tien Giang	106.8	Local	PPC
Phu Quoc Marine Protected Area	Kien Giang	2881.47	National	PPC
Forest on the Hon Khoai island cluster	Kien Giang	621	Local	PPC
Landscape protected area				
Sam Mountain	An Giang	171	Local	PPC
Thoai Son	An Giang	370.5	Local	PPC
Tra Su	An Giang	1,050	Local	PPC
Tuc Dup	An Giang	200	Local	PPC
Xeo Quyt	Dong Thap	61.28	Local	PPC
Go Thap	Dong Thap	298.8	Local	PPC

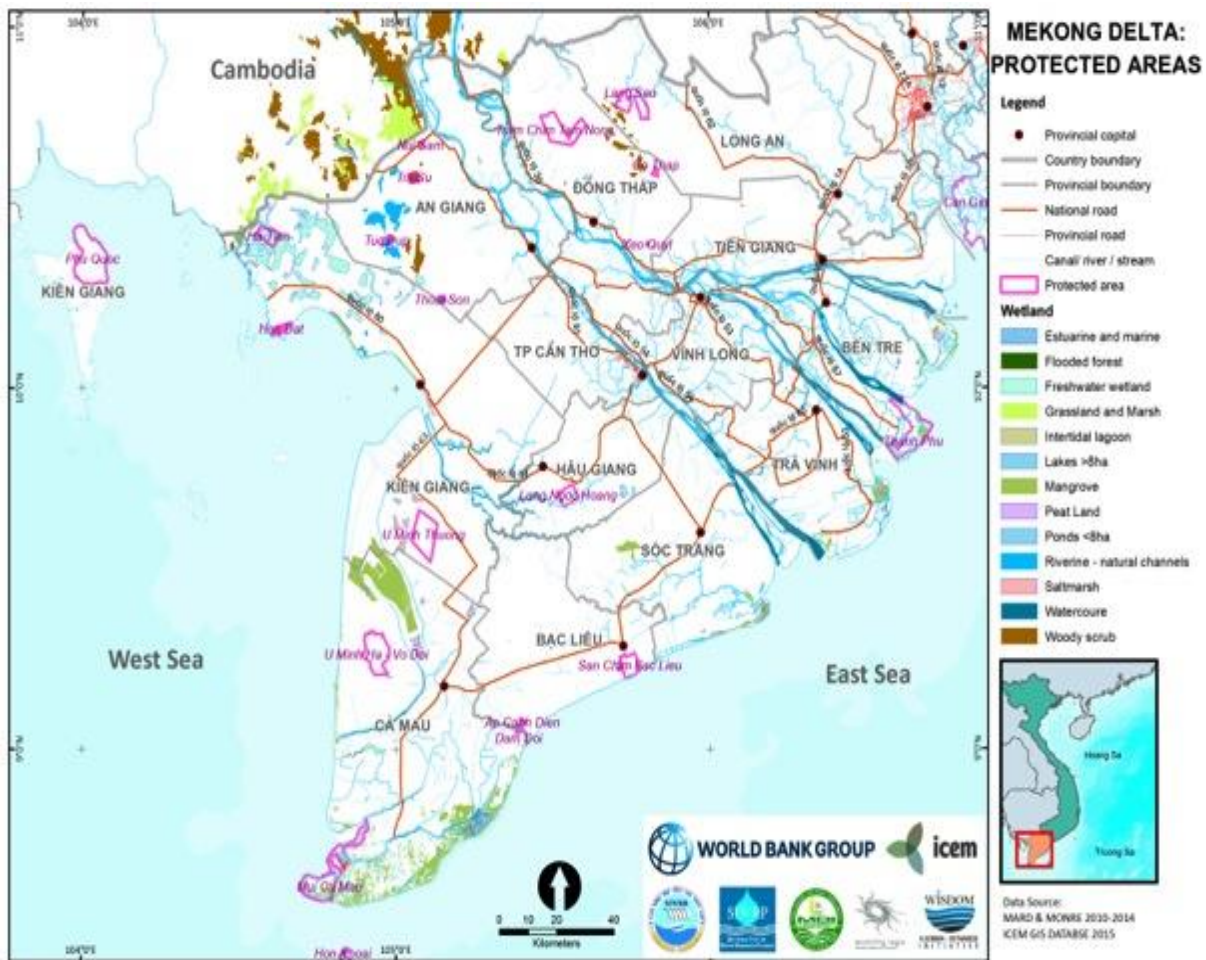


Figure 10: Mekong Delta protected areas

1.6.4.3 Flora

In terms of vegetation, the distribution of natural and semi-natural vegetation communities in the delta depend on a combination climatic, soil, and hydrological conditions. The vegetation of the delta can be broadly divided into freshwater and saline water communities, and further classified to freshwater communities in riverbank vegetation, lowland forests and marshes, and aquatic vegetation associated with rivers and waterways (Le Cong Kiet 1994). The dominant tree species in the lowland forest and marshes in the delta such as the POR, LXQ and U Minh peat swamp forest is *Melaleuca cajuputi*. A diversity of other plant species is also recorded in the *Melaleuca* forests, including: 134 flora species in the U Minh Ha National Park and 130 flora species in Tram Chim National Park including 14 woody tree species, 2 shrub, 5 climber, and 109 herby plant species (Thinh 2003).

The saline communities consist mainly of mangrove forests. There are at least 40 species of mangroves plants including, *Rhizophora*, *Avicenia*, *Bruguiera*, *Cerip*, *Sonneratia*, *Xylocarpus*, *Aegiceras*, *Lumnitzera* and *Acanthus*. The distribution of these species depends on soil fertility, tidal influences and salinity (Thinh 2003). For instance, *R. Mucronata*, and *A. marina* can grow in areas of high saline (20 –30%) and *R. apiculata* and *A. officinalis* can grow in moderately saline areas. *N. fruticans* and *K. candel* grow in slightly saline or brackish water areas. *Avicenia alba* is a pioneer species occurring in newly accreted mud flats while *Rhizophora* species occupy higher grounds. Further inland in brackish water areas the *Rhizomatous palm* and *Nypa palm* are recorded. *S. caseolaris* is the dominant species at slightly

saline environment at the mouths of the Mekong at as Cua Dai, Ham Luong, and Co Chien. In Ca Mau peninsular *A. alba*, *A. marina*, *A. officinalis* and *R. apiculata* grow densely in muddy swampy areas along the coast and in less saline areas *Lumnitzera* and *Ceriopsare* were found.

1.6.4.4 Fauna

The Mekong Delta boasts a rich fauna biodiversity due to its vast wetlands. The fauna of the delta includes 23 species of mammals, 386 species and subspecies of birds, 35 species of reptiles and six species of amphibians (Thinh 2003). The mammals include five species of dolphin, the crab eating *Macaque fascularis*, smooth-coated Otter *Lutragale perspicilata* and fishing cat *Prionailurus viverrina*. While there are only two mammals of conservation significance (the Hairy-nosed Otter and the Dugong) remaining in the delta there are at least 37 species of birds and 470 species of fish that have been recorded, of which 28 are endemic to the Mekong and four are known only to exist in the delta (Campbell 2012).

The delta has the largest diversity of fish in the Mekong Basin. From an extensive review of 45 sources of information on fisheries in the Mekong Basin, there is a strong gradient of species richness from the headwaters down to the sea with 24 species in Tibet and 486 species in the delta (Baran 2010). This phenomenon reflects the fact that hydrological predictability and habitat diversity increase downstream, allowing more species to develop. The delta is the area characterized by the highest species diversity, because of the combination of estuarine, freshwater, and marine faunas. The aquatic invertebrate fauna of the delta has been substantially impacted by humans, with the littoral fauna of the main channels particularly species poor, probably reflecting the intensity of human impact in those locations. (Ian Campbell, 2012).

1.6.4.5 The coastal plume

The Mekong Basin is also considered to extend ecologically into coastal marine waters known as the “Mekong Plume”, where productivity of coastal fisheries depends on the nutrients attached to the sediments distributed by the Mekong River. The Mekong River contributes around 16,000 – 17,000 tons of attached nutrients to coastal Vietnam, which supports productive fisheries harvesting 0.5 to 0.7 million tons of fish per year (Baran 2012). Very little is known about the trends and extent of the Mekong sediment plume, but it plays two important functions for the delta:

- Introduces nutrient rich silt into the marine environment, which plays an important role in the highly productive marine fisheries of the Mekong delta. Trash fish from marine fisheries are also an important source of food-pellets used extensively in the Mekong Delta to support its large aquaculture industry; and
- Responsible for delta building and the preservation of mangrove coastlines – particularly in Ca Mau province (ICEM 2010).

1.6.4.6 Physical cultural resources

There are a number of physical cultural resources or national heritage sites of significance to people in the Mekong Delta. Physical cultural resources are defined as property, site, monument, building or group of buildings with paleontological, archaeological, historical, cultural, artistic, religious, spiritual or symbolic value for a nation, people or community (IUCN 2015). Any direct or regional impacts on the physical cultural resources

listed in Table 4 below will need to be considered in the environment and social management framework (ESMF) for any future projects.

Table 4: Physical cultural resources in the Mekong Delta

Province	Physical cultural resources
Long An	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tôn Thạnh Pagoda (Can Giuoc district) • 1000-pillar house (Can Duoc district) • Nhựt Tảo rivulet mouth (Tan Tru district)
Tien Giang	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vĩnh Trảng Pagoda (My Tho city), Thủ Khoa Huân Tomb and Temple (Cho Gao district) • Trương Định Temple, Hoàng Gia Tomb (Go Cong district) • Gò Thành Relic (Cho Gao district)
Ben Tre	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phú Lễ Temple, Nguyễn Đình Chiểu Tomb (Ba Tri district) • Tiên Thủy Temple (Chau Thanh district) • Cồn Phụng Islet (Chau Thanh district)
Dong Thap	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gò Tháp Relic (Thap Muoi district) • Kiến An Cung Pagoda (Sa Dec Town) • Sa Dec flower village (Sa Dec Town)
An Giang	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bà Chúa Xứ Temple, Tây An Pagoda (Chau Doc Town) • Núi Sam Relic cluster • Oc Eo Cultural Relic (Thoai Son district), Ba Chúc Charnel-house (Tri Ton district)
Kien Giang	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nguyễn Trung Trực Temple • Phật Lớn Pagoda, Sắc Tứ Tam Bảo Pagoda (Rach Gia Town), • Đá Dựng Mountain, Mạc Cửu Tomb (Ha Tien Town)
Can Tho	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bình Thủy Temple, Long Quang Pagoda (Binh Thuy district) • Ông Temple (Ninh Kieu district) • Cái Răng floating market (Cai Rang district)
Hau Giang	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ngã Bảy floating market (Phung Hiep district)
Tra Vinh	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ba Om Pond, Phước Minh Cung Pagoda (Tra Vinh town)
Soc Trang	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mahatup Pagoda, Kh'Leang Pagoda (Soc Trang city)
Bac Lieu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Đồng Nọc Nặng Relic (Gia Rai district) • Vĩnh Hưng Tower (Vinh Loi district) • Thành Hoàng Cổ Temple , Công Tử Bac Liêu House (Bac Lieu city) • Cỏ Thum Pagoda (Hong Dan district)
Ca Mau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Đá Bạc Island (Tran van Thoi district) • Hòn Khoai Island (Ngoc Hien district)

1.7 Socio-economic description of the Mekong Delta

The development success of the delta can be attributed to two important factors. First the natural supply of freshwater and nutrient-laden sediments by the Mekong River annually transforms the delta providing the vital ingredients for productivity. On average some 120 million tons of sediment are transported downstream with the floods into the Mekong Delta of Vietnam with approximately 15-20% deposited on the delta's floodplains and the remainder

transported into the marine environment contributing to important delta building processes (ICEM, 2012).

Second the Government of Vietnam has since the late 1960s supported ambitious master planning efforts with the guiding mandate being the control of the delta's freshwater hydrology to enable multiple rice crops each year (Kakkonen et al, 2008). These planning initiatives, which emphasized the role of water control infrastructure began to take effect in the 1980s after the American War and accelerated in the post Doi Moi era of the 1990s, had a tremendous effect in increasing rice production in the Mekong Delta but adverse effects on the delta's connectivity and on the wide array of fresh, brackish and marine habitats which had previously covered the delta and which were responsible for the delta's former high biodiversity. Today some 75% of the Vietnamese Mekong Delta is agriculture land (mainly multiple rice cropping paddies), and at least 13,000km of dykes and 42,000km of primary and secondary canals have been constructed.

1.7.1 Demographics

1.7.1.1 Population

From 1990 to 2010 the population in the Mekong Delta increased from 14.7 million to 17.5 million people (Figure 11). The annual population growth rate decreased slightly from 1.1% between 1990-2000 to 0.52% from 2001-2013. In 2013, about 76% of total population still lived in rural areas of the Mekong Delta. Rural-migration has occurred as a result of urbanization and industrialization. Rural people often migrate to urban areas within provinces or to Can Tho and the south-east region of the Mekong delta (including Ho Chi Minh City) in search of employment. The annual growth rate of urban population increased from 2.7% between 1990-2000 to 3.1% between 2001-2013. Rural areas experienced marginal growth of 0.8% between 1990 -2000 and a negative net migration rate caused the population to decrease by -0.2% between 2001-2013.

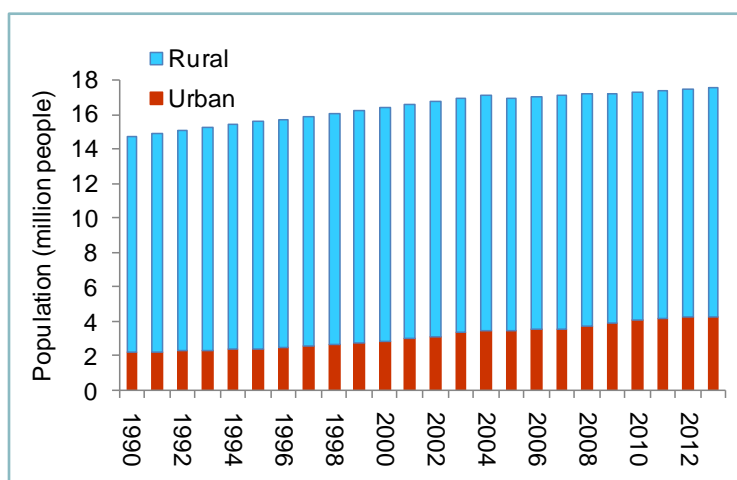


Figure 11: Urban and rural population in the Mekong Delta

The population density of the Mekong Delta is shown below in Figure 12.

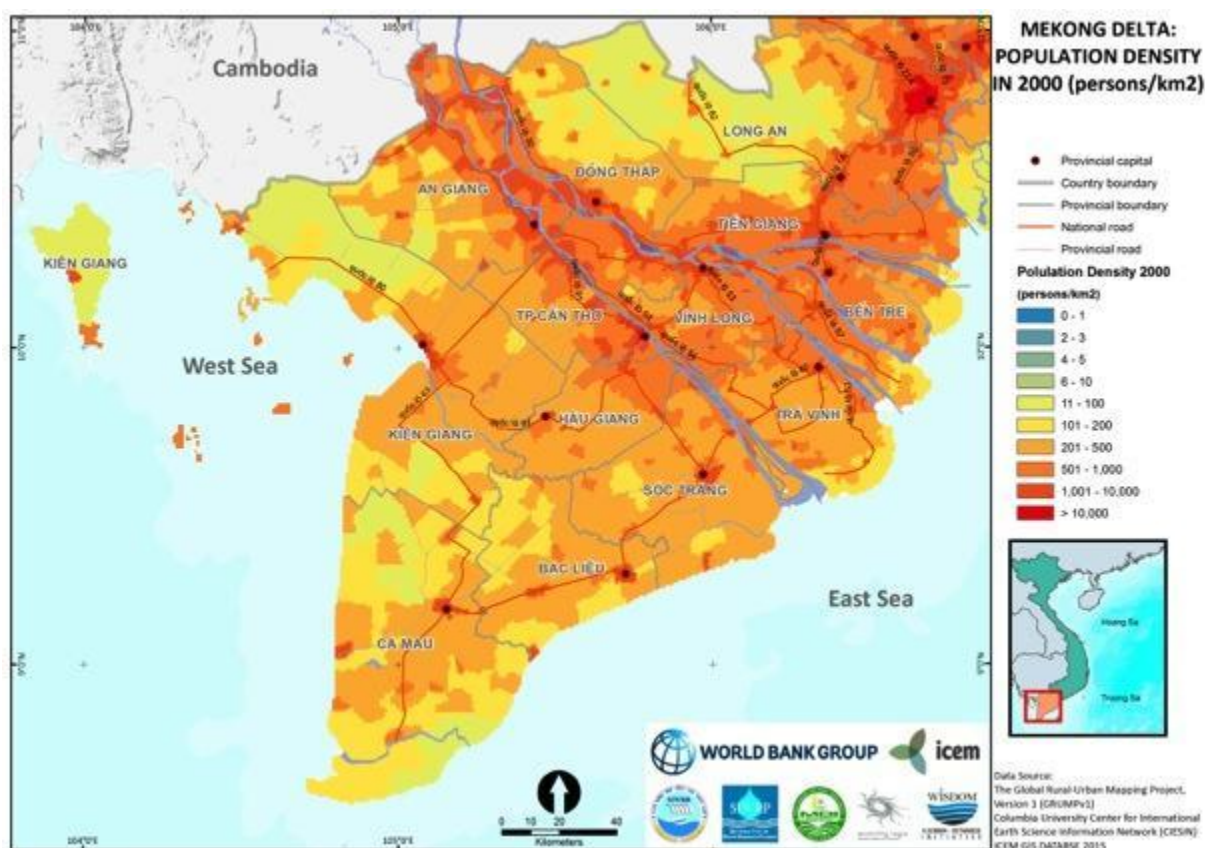
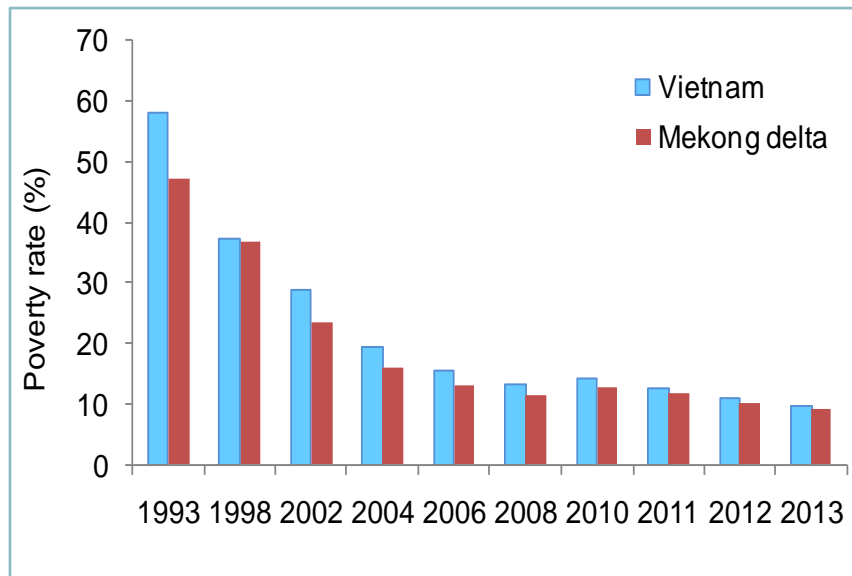


Figure 12: Population density in the Mekong Delta 2000

In Rural areas the population is decreasing due to negative net migration rate that is the in-migration rate is lower than the out-migration rate. The net migration rates were -1.8% in 2005, -8.4% in 2009-2010 and -4.3% in 2013 (GSO, 2015). The provinces of Can Tho and Long An are the only provinces with positive net migration rates. The coastal provinces of Ca Mau, Bac Lieu, Tra Vinh, Ben Tre and Vinh Long in the middle delta are experiencing high negative net migration rates (Garschagen et al. 2012; GSO, 2015). High out-migration rates in the coastal provinces are a result of the shift to intensive shrimp farming, which requires relatively less labor inputs than rice production. The rural transformation towards rice intensification, farmland accumulation and mechanization of agriculture has also contributed to negative net migration in rural areas. Rural-urban migration puts further development pressures on urban and industrial regions, where infrastructure and socio-economic services are still developing.

Poverty rates in the Mekong Delta decreased significantly from 47% in 1993 to 9% in 2013 (Figure 13). The average poverty rates in the delta are lower than the national average in Vietnam, but still higher than poverty rates in other regions of Vietnam, including the South East, the Red delta and central coast). The intensification of agriculture in the Mekong Delta has been a strong driver of poverty reduction. However, poor skills and education of the rural workers constrains opportunities to further reduce poverty rates. The current rice-dominance of the economy is hampering human capacity building, as it requires less skills and resources compared to other economic sectors such as aquaculture fruit culture, horticulture or industry (MDP 2013).



Generally the poverty rates are reducing in the Mekong Delta, however there are still areas experiencing high poverty rates and inequalities, especially in the coastal areas. Figure 14 below compares the poverty rates of 1999 and 2009 and the distribution of poverty across the Mekong Delta.

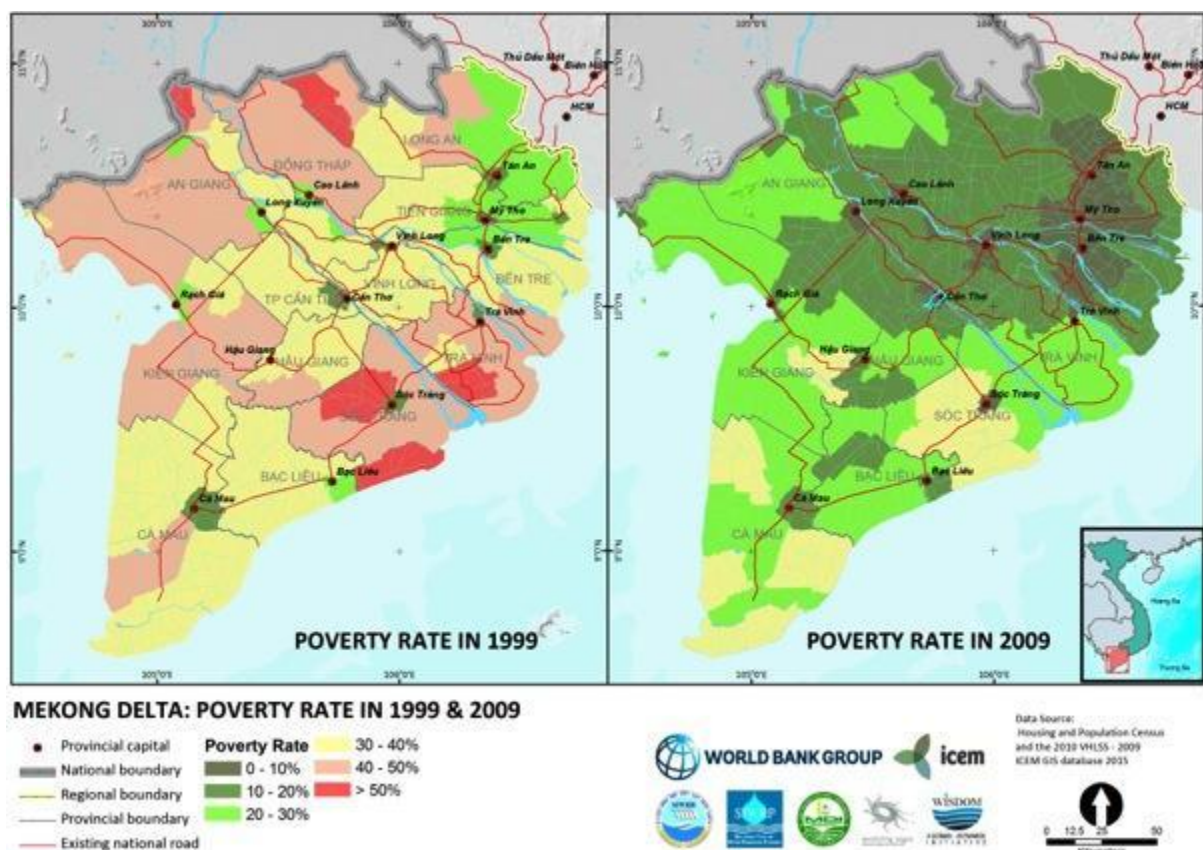


Figure 14: Poverty rates in the Mekong Delta in 1999 and 2009

1.7.1.2 Ethnic minorities

The Chinese group inhabits all provinces, while the Cham people are living only in the An Giang province. The majority of the Khmer people live in Tra Vinh (32%), Soc Trang (31%), Kien Giang (12%), Bac Lieu (8%) and An Giang (4%) provinces (GSO 2009). Previous studies have revealed that the poverty rates among the Khmer people are higher than that of Kinh and Chinese communities (AusAid 2004: Nhan et al, 2012). Poor Khmer households accounted for one in three of the total poor households in highly populated provinces like Tra Vinh and Soc Trang.

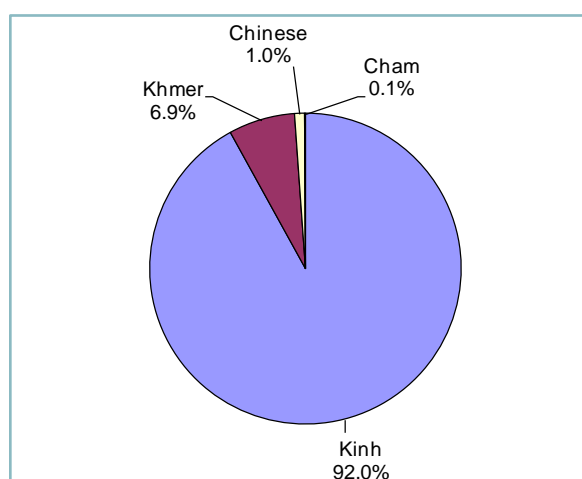


Figure 15: Ethnic groups in the Mekong Delta

Over the last two decades, the Vietnamese government has implemented several National Development programmes aimed at reducing poverty and improving livelihoods of ethnic minority groups, including Khmer people in poor and disadvantaged communes³. These programmes were successful in improving and diversifying livelihoods and increasing access to social services, credit, markets, and agricultural extension. However, studies have shown that Khmer households generally have less opportunity to generate wealth than other ethnic groups due to limited human and social capital (Nhan et al. 2008; Nhan et al. 2012).

1.7.2 Livelihoods

The livelihoods of rural households are characterised by access to five capitals: 1) natural 2) physical 3) human 4) financial, and (5) social. In the Mekong delta, rural people and farmers face multiple threats to their livelihoods. The resilience of the households to respond to environmental and socio-economic challenges depends on access to the five capitals. For rural households in the delta, livelihood capacity depends upon agro-ecological zones, infrastructure and farm size. Generally, people living in more favourable zones have higher capacity than those in lesser favourable zones. Favourable biophysical conditions include fertile soils, year-round availability of freshwater, effective irrigation (and drainage) systems, semi-flood depth or without salinity intrusion. Rural households with large farms usually have higher resilience to natural and socio-economic shocks than those with smaller farms.

³ Programme 134 "improved housing, safe water supply and agricultural land for poor ethnic minority people"; Programme 135 "Socio-economic Development of the Most Vulnerable Communes in Ethnic Minority and Mountainous Areas"; Programme 138 "infrastructure development of centres and improvement of settlement ethnic minority households of remote or disadvantaged rural communes"

1.7.2.1 Natural capital

The livelihoods of people living in the delta are highly dependent on natural resources. Agricultural production in most areas remains small-scale, an average of 48% of households owned less than 0.5 ha, 42% owned 0.5-2 ha and 10% owned more than 2 ha of farmland (GSO 2012). For farmers in the delta, livelihoods largely depend on rice, which on average shares a 60% (in rainfed, brackish or saline zone) and 80% (in flood or alluvial zones) of farmland. The farming areas for rice, agriculture and aquaculture in the the Mekong Delta are shown below (Figure 16). Flooding (or inundation), water quality, salinity intrusion, and droughts in the dry season are considered threats to natural capital.

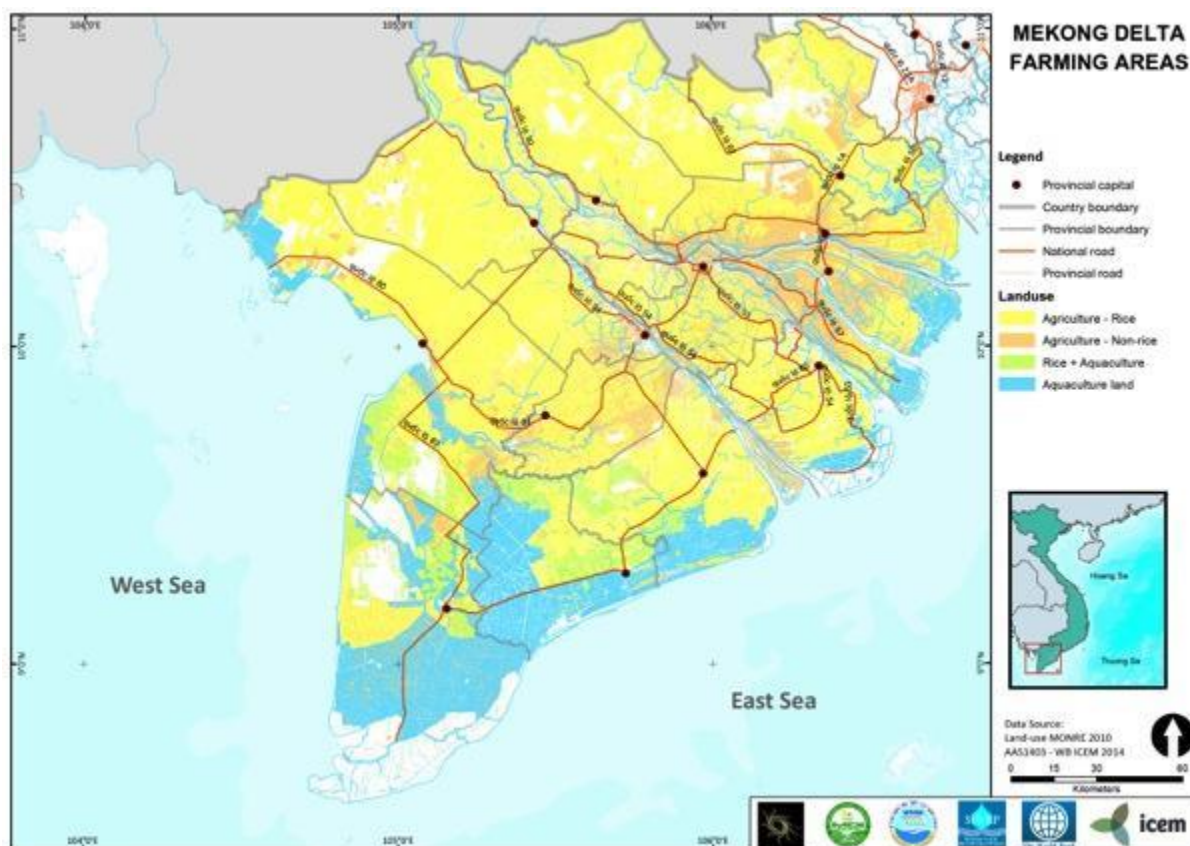


Figure 16: Farming areas in the Mekong Delta

1.7.2.2 Physical capital

At community level, rural households have improved access to social services, including transportation, electricity, schooling, Internet, health services, water and sanitation (based on data from GSO 2012; GSO2007-2013) as summarised below:

- **Roads:** The number of communes that the centre approaches asphalt or concrete increased from 41% in 2001, to 66% in 2006 and 90% in 2011;
- **National electricity grid:** Connections increased from 97% of communes and 90% of households in 2006 to 99% of the communes or 97% of households in 2011;
- **Schools:** The number of communes with concrete schools was 57% for elementary level, 75% for basic secondary level and 91% with high secondary level in 2011, compared to 34%, 56% and 81% in 2006;

- **Internet:** About 83% of communes accessed to internet services in 2011, compared with only 22% in 2006;
- **Health:** The number of hospital beds increased from 1.8 to 2.4 beds/1000 patients and the number of doctors increased from 0.4 to 0.5 doctors/1000 people from 2006 to 2011;
- **Access to water:** The proportions of households with access to safe water increased from 81% to 86% and households that owned a toilet increased from 35% to 53% from 2008 to 2012.

The figures in the delta remain lower than in all other regions of Vietnam. Particularly domestic water supply and sanitation, which is a priority issue for the sustainable development of the Mekong Delta.

In a household survey of 1250 rural households in An Giang, Can Tho and Tra Vinh provinces conducted in 2011 showed that more than 75% of households owned motorbike(s), more than 85% of households owned a television, and more than 90% of household owned a telephone. This provides rural people improved access to information, particularly agricultural extension services. However, the proportions of households that owned farm assets (i.e. tractors, rice threshers/harvesters, trucks) were low, less than 5% of total households. A higher proportion of households with large areas of land or farm enterprises for rice or aquaculture production owned farm assets (20-30% of total households)⁴. Development of agricultural mechanical services and access to these services by small farmers is of great importance in further improving resource use efficiency and livelihoods of farmers. Another significant constraint of farmers' livelihoods was poor access to output market systems, lowering the potential added values of agricultural commodities and reducing farm-based income (Nhan et al. 2015).

1.7.2.3 Human capital

The labor force in the Mekong Delta comprised 59% of the total population in 2013 (GSO 2015). From 2001-13 the labor force has transformed from agriculture to the industry and service sectors (GSO 2012: GSO 2014). In 2013, employment in the agricultural sector was 50%, industrial (32%) and services (17%)(Figure 17). The rural labor shift to industrial or service sectors largely occurred with the age group of 20-40 years olds. The shift from agricultural labor to industry and services sectors in the delta was lower than in the south-eastern, northern central and central coast regions and Red delta (GSO, 2014).

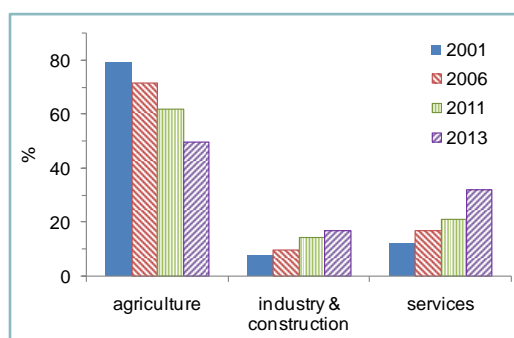


Figure 17: Labor force structure in the Mekong Delta

⁴ Data obtained from Mekong Futures project funded and coordinated by CSIRO and AusAID and MDI and Dragon Institute (CTU) as partners

The transformation of labor in the delta is complex due to high rates of untrained and unskilled labor (Fig. 5), only about 4% of labor force had technical or vocational training and about 2.5% of that had college or higher training. The capacity of labor in the delta remains lower than the other regions in Vietnam (GSO 2014). Figure 18 below shows the labor force qualifications in the Mekong Delta overall and specifically for the agricultural sector.

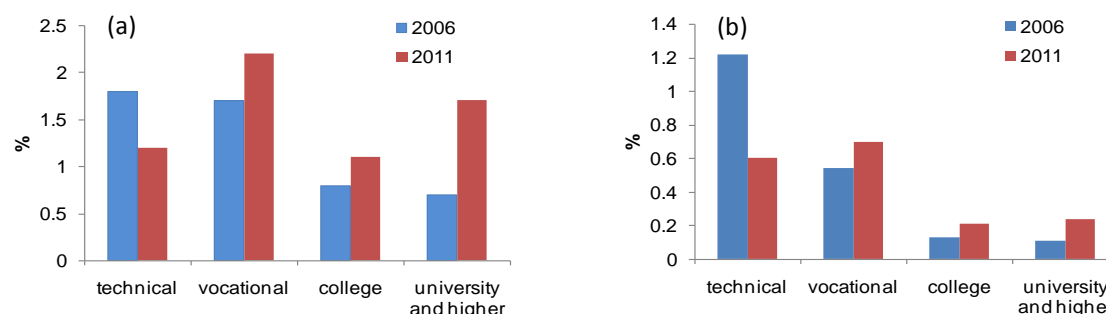


Figure 18: Labor force qualification in the Mekong Delta a) Overall b) Agricultural sector

The transition of rural labor requires labor force to become more specialized and diversified. Better-off farming households will look to accumulate agricultural land and modernize agricultural activities for market integration (i.e. stepping up from agriculture) and the non-agricultural sectors can be expanded by improving rural infrastructure (i.e. stepping out from agriculture) (Dorward et al 2009). This creates both opportunities for employment for poor households, as well as further demands for agricultural development for better-off farming households. Better infrastructure and job opportunities are required to attract labor in rural areas. Currently, unskilled and/or young labor tends to migrate to urban and industrial centers, mostly to Ho Chi Minh City or the south-east region of the delta (Garschagen et al. 2012).

1.7.2.4 Financial capital

Agricultural activities are still the main income source of a majority of household in the delta. Due to the labor shift from agriculture, households with the main source of income from agriculture reduced from 73% in 2006 to 65% in 2011. At the same time the industry sector increased from 9 to 13% and the services from 16 to 20% (GSO, 2014). Savings per household increased from \$VN 7 million to \$VN 21 million, in comparison, household savings in the Red delta increased from \$VN 8 million vs. 24 million \$VN (GSO, 2014).

Farming and household income depends on several factors related to farm assets and land ownership. Farmers with larger areas of land, more available labor and farm assets earned higher income. In the same province or district, farmers living in more favourable areas and having more diverse sources of income had higher farm-based and household income (Nhan et al. 2015). Results from the Mekong Futures project⁵ demonstrate that households that were classified as intermediate wealth with a farm size of 0.4-0.7 ha had an average monthly income of just one million \$VN/capital or two million \$VN/labor. This income level is just above the poverty line issued by Vietnamese government in 2013. Among agro-ecological zones, households in the transition between fresh and brackish water had lower income than those in other zones (Nhan et al. 2012). This implies livelihoods of people in this zone are more vulnerable to freshwater availability from the upstream, to salinity intrusion from estuaries and/or adjacent shrimp farming areas and to extreme dry-season droughts.

⁵ Mekong Futures project was funded and coordinated by CSIRO and AusAID and MDI and Dragon Institute (CTU) as partners

Small farmers have limited financial savings from low farming incomes, particularly those in acid sulphate or rainfed zones. Farmer income is also affected by high interest for informal credits from local agro-chemical businesses. About 70-90% farmers got informal in-kind credit sources locally, due to the ease of access, compared to formal micro-credit programmes by the government (Nhan et al. 2015). Further improvement of formal micro-credit programs for rural people is essential for further increases in livelihoods and financial security.

1.7.2.5 Social capital

Social capital is reflected by participation of households in community-based organisations (CBOs), and in decision making in local development plans. Relatively more rural households in flood and alluvial zones participated in CBOs than those in other zones. For example, about 30% of farming households in the flood or alluvial zones had members participating in Farmer's Association, Women's Union or Agricultural Extension Clubs compared to 23% of those in acid sulphate soil and 17% in saline ecological zone (Dung et al. 2014). Poorer households also had members participating in CBOs (Nhan et al 2012). Increased participation of rural households in CBOs is important for social networking and to improve knowledge on more efficient resources use to improve adaptive capacity of rural households.

1.7.3 Agricultural Sector

The Mekong delta is considered an important agricultural region of Vietnam. In 2010, the economic structure in the Mekong Delta was 39 % for agriculture, 28 % for trading and services and 18 % for the industry and construction sector (GSO 2011). The share of the agricultural sector to the total economic value in the Mekong Delta reduced from 2000 (54% agriculture, 28% trading and services and 18% for industry and construction) to 2010 due to transformation of the economy, but was still higher than the national average of 21% for agriculture. Foreign Development Investment (FDI) remains relatively low in the delta. From 2010 to 2013, the share of the delta to the country in FDI capital was about 5%, much lower than that of the Red delta, the north central and central coastal region and the south-east region that contributed from 20% to 45% (GSO, 2013). For the whole delta, total output values can only meet about 70% of budget for investment in local development. Among the 13 provinces in the delta, only Can Tho is able to contribute to the national budget, the other provinces rely on annual financial assistance from the State.

Rice, horticulture and aquaculture (*Pangasius* catfish and shrimp) are the main agricultural commodities of the Mekong Delta. Rice and aquaculture production have been contributing significantly to national food security as well as to national agricultural exports. Rice and aquaculture in the delta shared about 53% and 70% of total production and about 90% and 70% of total export volume of Vietnam (GSO, 2015).

1.7.3.1 Agriculture

The major land use patterns for agricultural production are primarily determined by soil and hydrological conditions. Over the last three decades, changes in agricultural land uses and agricultural development have been strongly influenced by a combination of drivers, including policy reforms, irrigation development, export markets, technological advances, environmental changes, urbanisation and industrialization (Garschagen et al. 2012). The trends of agriculture (rice, fruit and vegetables) are shown below in Figure 19. Rice growing areas increased significantly between 1990-1999, as a result of the “rice first” policy by the government. However, rice-growing areas declined in the period between 2000-2007 as a result of policies promoting agricultural diversification. From 2000-2013 the areas of fruit and

vegetable area increased 3% and 7% per year, respectively.

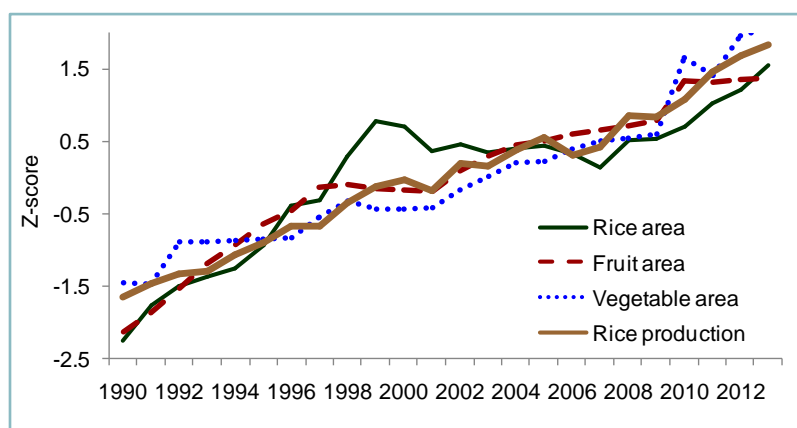


Figure 19: Trends of agriculture (rice, fruit, vegetables) from 1990-2012. Standardized data with Z-score

In 2000, recognising the importance of aquaculture and fruit production for sustainable development of the agricultural sector the Vietnamese government implemented the policy on agricultural diversification and sustainability (*Decree no. 09/2000/NQ-CP dated 15th June 2000*). In response many farmers shifted from rice production to aquaculture, to fruits or vegetables or from rice monoculture to a more diversified rice-based farming system with higher potential for increased income generation (Nhan et al. 2007).

From 2007-2013, the rice growing area again increased in response to the development of irrigation and flood-control systems and the rice export promotion policy of the government. The increase in rice growing areas came from the development of the third crop (summer-autumn crop), with annual growth rate of 2% (Figure 20). In contrast, growing area of traditional rice production decreased by an average of -2% per year in the period 2000-2013, due to the shift to high-yielding rice and/or shrimp culture.

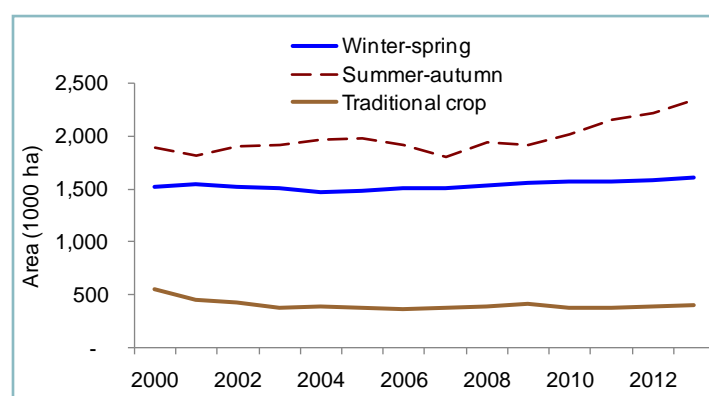


Figure 20: Rice area by crop in the Mekong Delta from 2000-2013

Total rice production increased between 1990-2013 due to the contribution of high-yielding rice crops in winter-spring and summer-autumn crops (Figure 21). From 2000-2013, rice production grew 2.4%, 4.4% and 1% with the winter-spring, summer-autumn and traditional rice crops, respectively. The growth of rice production was higher than the increase in rice growing areas area, reflecting the shift towards rice intensification. From 2000-2013 the areas of fruit and vegetable area increased 3% and 7% per year, respectively.

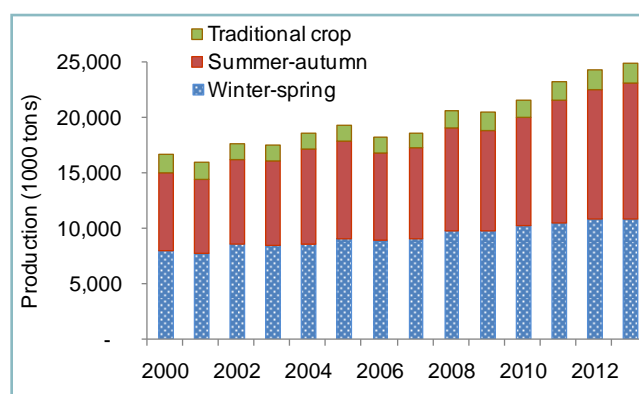


Figure 21: Rice production by crop in the Mekong Delta from 2000-2013

1.7.3.2 Livestock

Livestock production was affected by outbreaks of diseases and instability of input and output markets (Figure 22). Poultry production dropped dramatically in 2003-2004 due to Asian avian flu out-breaks. The poultry sector developed again rapidly after that up to 2011 and then dropped from further avian flu outbreaks. Pig and cattle production decreased in the period 2007-2013.

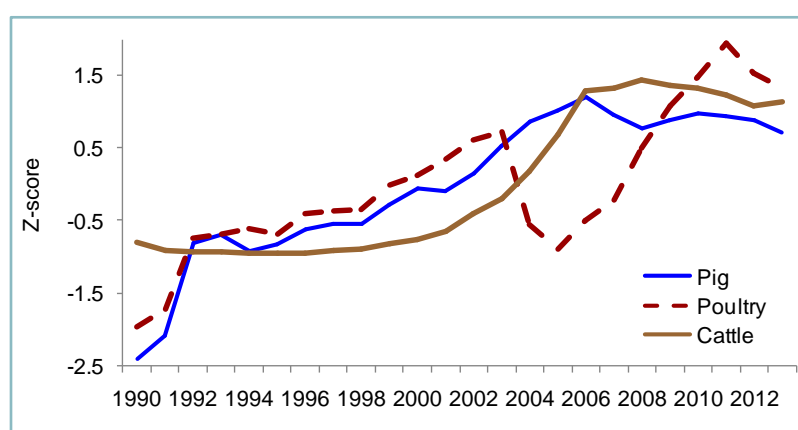


Figure 22: Trends of livestock (pig, poultry, cattle) from 1990-2012. Standardized data with Z-score.

1.7.3.3 Aquaculture

Aquaculture area and production increased significantly from 2000-2013 (Figure 23). Aquaculture and shrimp production developed significantly since 2000 following the policy on agricultural diversification, shifting from rice to shrimp and aquaculture. An increase in fish production since 2003 resulted from the intensification of the *Pangasius* catfish culture. From 2000 to 2013 the aquaculture area grew 4% per year, especially shrimp and fish production, which increased 15% and 16% per year respectively. In addition, fish catch grew steadily in the period 1990-2013, with an annual growth rate of 3%.

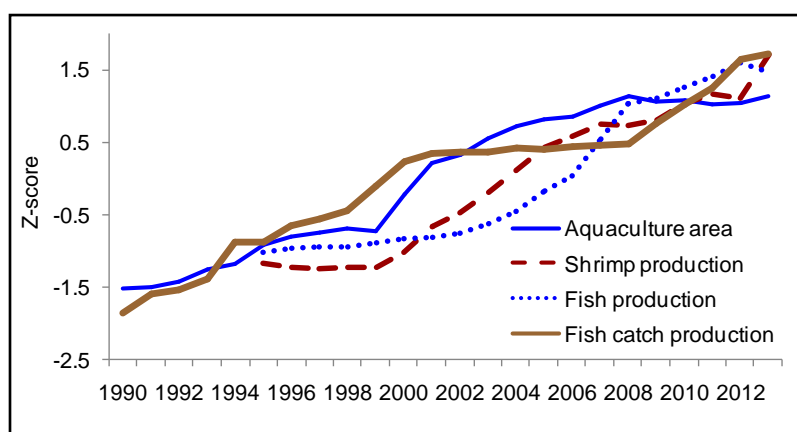


Figure 23: Trends of aquaculture from 1990-2013. Standardized data with Z-score.

Source: GSO Census Data 2000-2015

1.7.4 Water resources management

The Mekong Delta faces three major water-related issues: 1) annual flooding from the Mekong River in the upper delta, 2) salinity intrusion in the delta estuary and, 3) soil acidity in wetland areas. From 1975-1999 the water management and land uses in the delta were primarily intended for rice production through structural and non-structural measures. Since 2000, water and land uses have evolved towards multiple objectives (i.e. including agriculture, livelihoods and environment) and more adaptive resource management approaches (i.e. making use of flood and saline water) rather than resource control and exploitation for agricultural production only. Combined with projected climate change impacts, changes in water use in the Mekong upstream and the need of agricultural and rural transformation in the delta provides challenges in water resources management and agriculture in the future.

1.7.4.1 Flood management and irrigation in the freshwater zone

Every year, flooding influences the agricultural production and livelihoods of about 50% of total area of the delta. Before 1970, extreme flood events had not been considered seriously due to low population, extensive agriculture and livelihoods dependent on natural resources. In the 1980-90s, flooding was perceived as a severe natural hazard causing extensive losses to an increasing population and infrastructure and agricultural production in the POR and LXQ. Since 2000 the perceptions has once again shifted to consider flooding as a natural resource, not a hazard. The Vietnamese government is implementing the “*living with floods*” policy through a combination of structural and non-structural measures. In areas with deep flooded areas, flood-control dike systems (know as the “August-dike”) were built to protect the summer-autumn rice crop from flooding.

Adaptive farming practices are also been applied, including, modifying cropping seasons, shorter-growth duration rice varieties and growing an aquatic crop (i.e. fish, prawns, eel, vegetables) in rotation with rice crops. The August dykes can delay flooding by about 20-30 days, allowing farmers to pump water out at the end of flood period and establish the winter-spring rice crop in 15-20 days. In the semi-flooded areas the flooding is fully controlled, forming polders and communal or inter-communal dykes to grow 3 rice crops per year or 8 crops every 3 years⁶ (e.g. North Vam Nao and Cho Moi of An Giang), develop high-value

⁶ Six rice crops practiced in the 1st two years with flood control and two rice crops grown in the 3rd year when floodwater is allowed to enter rice fields for flushing pollutants and maintaining soil fertility.

upland crop areas (e.g. Cho Moi district of An Giang); and protect fruit orchards from flooding (e.g. Dong Thap, Vinh Long, Tien Giang).

In An Giang province, for example, the area for triple rice cropping area doubled between 2005-2012 and the total rice productivity increased by 30% (GS0 2014). From 2000-2012 large flood control and irrigation projects were implemented in the LXQ, POR, O Mon-Xa No and Quan Lo – Phung Hiep.

The water control infrastructure for irrigation and flood control is extensive in the Mekong Delta (Figure 24). The delta currently has about 13,000 km of embankments and flood-control dykes, of which around 7,000 km is the “August dykes”. There are around 15,000 km of primary and 1st level canals, 27,000 km of 2nd level canals, 50,000 km of 3rd level and 4th level canal, and 80 large and medium-scale sluice gates (Luong Quang Xo 2013). In addition, residential clusters and/or residential lines were constructed to move households vulnerable to floods to safer areas. Approximately 132,371 households were resettled to those residential clusters and/or residential lines in Phase 1. The 2nd phase is targeting resettlement of about 57,252 poor and vulnerable households in seven provinces; Can Tho, Dong Thap, An Giang, Kien Giang, Tien Giang, Vinh Long and Hau Giang.

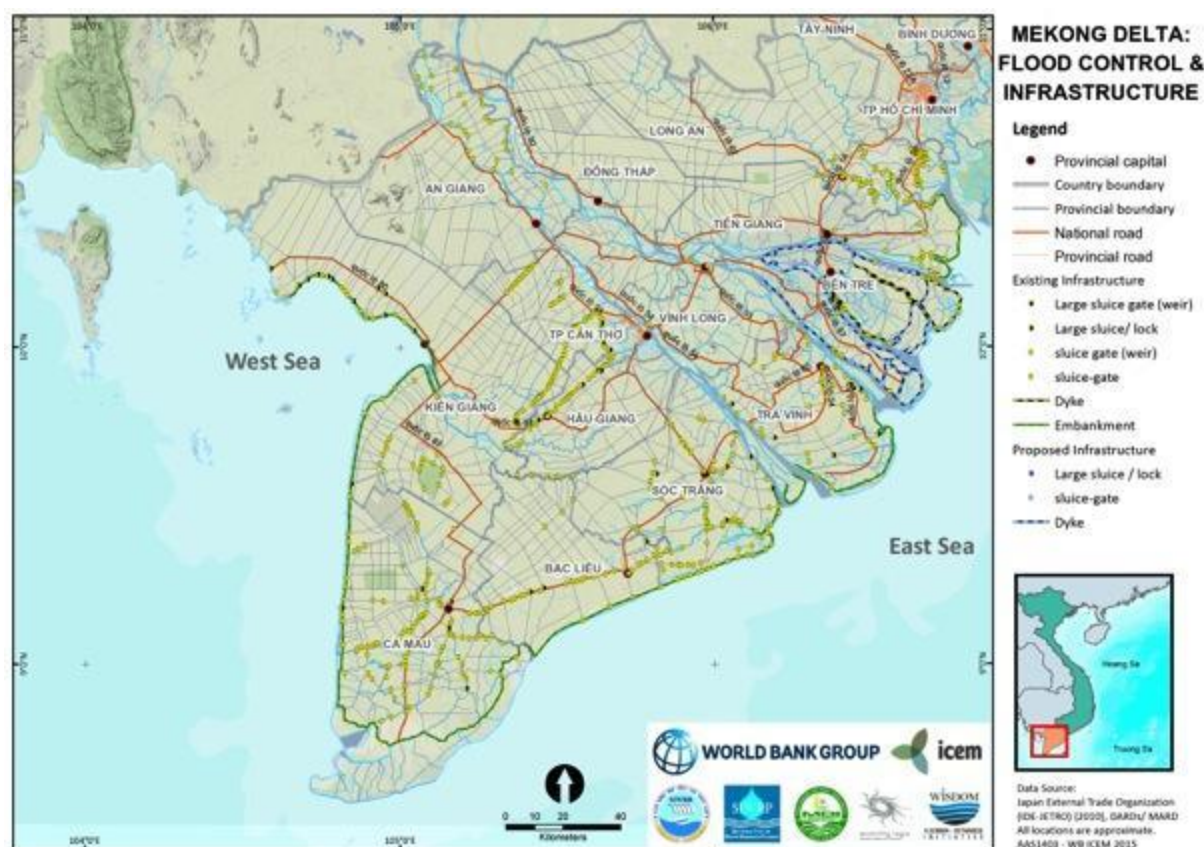


Figure 24: Mekong Delta Flood Control and Irrigation Infrastructure

Both positive and negative effects of flood management and irrigation development projects have been identified. Positive impacts are reduced flood damage costs, development of rice production by further intensification, crop diversification, safeguarding of fruit orchards from floods. Economic development has improved rural transportation and providing more opportunities for education and employment for rural households. However, local people have reported issues with surface water pollution within polders, declined aquatic resources (i.e.

capture fisheries) and less sediments and nutrients for natural fertilisation (Nhan et al. 2012).

Increasing inputs and application of fertilisers, combined with surface water pollution, declining aquatic resources and reduced income are impacting the sustainability of rice intensification. Surface water pollution comes from the residues of agro-chemicals (i.e. pesticides and fertilisers) and organic matter from rice intensification when flushing water from canals. Natural aquatic resources that support livelihoods of the poor are declining from fish migration being blocked by dykes and increased application of fertilisers and pesticides in rice fields. Farmers have also reported that their rice fields are less fertile from reduced alluvial deposition from flood control structures. They are now investing in a higher rate of chemical fertilisers and other agro-chemicals to maintain high yields or income of rice crops, increasing rice production costs. An analysis of rice production in the delta from 1995-2006 found that increases in the costs of fertilisers, fuel and labor were reducing farm-based income from rice production (Nhan 2009).

A sustainable approach was planned to grow eight rice crops every three years to maintain soil fertility and the ecosystem services of floodplains. However, farmers are growing rice crops continuously without opening sluices to refresh the floodplains. The polders are increasing water levels in main canals, which can lead to severe inundation in other areas of the LXQ and unexpected changes in the morphology of river networks from deposition or erosion (Hoa et al. 2007; Tri et al. 2011). Resource use efficiency and transboundary impacts need to be considered further in future water management plans.

The local government and farmers have implemented a combination of structural and non-structural measures to mitigate the problems. Small-scale domestic water supply systems and on-farm irrigation structures have been developed. Local government have promoted participatory irrigation management (PIM) and sustainable farming like the “*1 must - 5 reductions*” practice⁷ in rice culture (i.e. North Vam Nao project area in Phu Tan district of An Giang). In addition, local government are promoting rotational rice-based farming systems, replacing one rice crop with a short-duration upland crops and practicing small-scale aquaculture in paddy fields. Farming technologies, including alternate wetting-drying irrigation, reduced cropping-duration practices and replacing triple rice with more sustainable farming systems are needed to maintain the ecosystem services of floodplains while improving livelihoods of rural households. Appropriate production organisation and better service supplies for farming inputs and outputs and vocational training packages will provide further benefits for farmers.

1.7.4.2 Managing salinity in the coastal zone and estuaries

Salinity intrusion affects the agricultural activities and livelihoods of around 40% of the delta in the dry season. In March – April, the combined low flows of the Mekong and the tidal influence push salinity intrusion up 40-50 km inland. To implement the “rice-first” policy for national food security and export the Vietnamese government with funds from the State and the World Bank invested in a series of salinity-control structures in coastal zones. The projects aimed to control salinity intrusion and to use freshwater from the Mekong and Bassac rivers for rice intensification, upland crop production and maintaining domestic water supply. Large-scale salinity-control projects were developed including the Go Cong (38,000 ha), South Mang Thit (267,000 ha), Quan Lo-Phung Hiep (350,000 ha) and Ba Lai (133,875 ha) (Vo & Pham 2005). Subsequently, around 450km of sea dykes, 1,290 km of main river/canal dykes and 7,000 km of tertiary and quaternary canal dykes with sluices were constructed (Luong

⁷ Must use certified seed and reduce seed, fertilizer, pesticide, irrigation water and harvest loss rates

Quang Xo 2013). By doing so, the government hoped that farmers in the saline zones could intensify rice and other upland crop production and improve their livelihoods.

The shift to rice production resulted in a number of environmental issues and losses of natural aquatic resources. With salinity control structures and irrigation systems, farmers shifted one crop of low-yielding traditional rice to two or three crops of high-yielding rice. Farmers experienced problems from poor structural design and operations causing freshwater shortages in the dry season and acidification of soil and canal water in early rainy periods. Farmers who cultivated rice in acid sulphate soil areas that dominate the coastal zones suffered production losses due to crop failures. Their rice yields and income dropped, compared to what they earned previously. Farmers and rural households whose livelihoods depend on the natural resources suffered reduced incomes from shrimp production and fisheries (Truong et al. 2003; Ut 2004).

Since 2000, the Vietnamese government has recognised the importance of the diversification of agriculture and aquaculture in improving resource use efficiency and the livelihoods of farmers in the coastal zones. The function of salinity-control structures was modified from a control oriented to adaption-oriented approach. For instance, shrimp culture relying on saline water in the dry season is followed by rice culture depending on rainwater in the wet season through proper adjustments in the design and operation of existing water structures and additional investments in small-scale infrastructure. Considering the socio-economic and environmental impacts of salinity-control measures is critical for land and water use planning in the coastal zone (Tuong et al. 2003). Saline water is now been utilised as a resource rather than a problem (Nhan et al. 2012).

Proper adjustments in water management structures has allowed in both the irrigated and saline-transformed areas (converted from freshwater back to brackish or saline water) to earn higher incomes and improve livelihoods from resource-based diversification of farming activities. However, a number of environmental issues exist. An example is the Ba Lai salinity-control structure that has contributed to surface water pollution from agro-chemicals, organic residues of agricultural activities and domestic effluents and prolonged inundation in some swamp areas (Hoang et al. 2009).

The operation of water infrastructure to satisfy demands of different water uses for shrimp and rice farming is complicated, and competition over water use remains an issue. Rice farmers are facing salinity intrusion from adjacent shrimp areas in the early and the late rainy season, while shrimp farms downstream are have dealing with effluent discharges from rice farms in early rainfall periods from upstream, including agro-chemical residues and acidic water (Nhan et al 2007). Internal conflict exists between shrimp farmers, with water pollution in canals caused by the effluent from shrimp farm affecting other shrimp farms. Increasingly, farmers are pumping more groundwater to further intensify upland crops and shrimp production, this is considered one of the main reason for groundwater drawdown and land subsidence (Erban et al. 2014). Saline or brackish aquaculture also requires relatively lower labor inputs to intensive rice production, causing a high rate of urban-rural migration in the coastal zones. This issue needs to be considered for future adaptation to expected salinity intrusion in the coastal delta.

Adopting small-scale irrigation, salinity-management systems and improving farming practices is reducing conflict over water uses and improving agriculture and livelihoods of people in coastal areas. The “Water Management Square” established 50-100 ha sub plots for collective management of rice and shrimp production. Water saving techniques for rice

production and rainwater storage for vegetable production in the dry season are encouraging initiatives to deal with freshwater shortages in the dry season. Moreover, farmers have grown rice varieties tolerant to salinity ($\leq 4\%$) or varieties with shorter-growth duration, appropriate land preparation for flushing salinity from soil and applying agro-chemicals to improve rice crop performance under saline soil conditions (Nhan et al. 2011).

For shrimp production, good farming practices have been applied such as improving pond structure, stocking certified juvenile, pond water treatments, minimal exchange of pond water and frequently monitoring water quality. On-farm practices need to be supported by measures at community and project scale (inter-district/province scale), including canal water monitoring, proper operation of sluices and improvement of irrigation and drainage systems. Future water management interventions need combined measures of both structural and non-structural solutions at different scales to maximise the efficiency of investments.

1.7.4.3 Safe water supply for domestic and industrial uses

Safe water supply for domestic and industrial uses in the delta is an important issue not only now but also in the future. About 5.7 million people in the delta lack access to safe drinking water and about 10 million people in rural areas live without adequate sanitation (Herbst et al. 2009). The delta has about 2.4 million ha of acid sulfate soils and possessed a dense network of canals, serving irrigation, drainage and transport purposes at the same time. Surface and groundwater pollution has become a major environmental problem (Buschmann et al. 2008; Toan et al. 2013).

Surface water serves as one of the main water sources in the freshwater zone while groundwater is still the main supply source in the coastal zone, especially during the dry season. The main water-related issues caused by domestic, industrial and agriculture water uses are:

- **soil acidification:** increased acids and soluble metal loads resulting from oxidation of acid sulphate soils are problems not only for agricultural and aquaculture production and ecosystems, but also for safe water supply for domestic uses (Kawagahigashi et al. 2008);
- **groundwater aquifers contaminated by heavy metals:** groundwater in several locations in the delta contain high concentrations of arsenic or dissolved organic carbon (DOC), which exceed the WHO guidelines for drinking water (Buschmann et al. 2008). These contaminants are likely released from the surface or shallow subsurface. Chronic arsenic poisoning is the most serious health risk for millions of people drinking this groundwater without treatment in the delta;
- **agro-chemical residues:** rice intensification requires heavy uses of pesticide application. Wide ranges of pesticide residues were found in surface water, soil, and sediment monitoring. This presents chronic risks to biota and humans and surface water requires more advanced treatments;
- **limited wastewater treatments:** treatment systems for domestic sewage and industrial wastewater are in very poor condition or even absent in some areas. As a result most of wastewater enters the river and canal networks leading to contaminated water and high number of typhoid fever and shigellosis cases (Herbst et al. 2009); and
- **poor safe water supply systems:** safe water supply systems for domestic and industrial uses are not meeting requirements. It is estimated that the existing water treatment systems in Can Tho can only meet 70% total volume required for safe water for

domestic and industrial uses, the figure is only about 30% in the Ca Mau province⁸. Figure 25 below shows that safe water supply required for urban domestic uses is higher than rural domestic and industrial demands. The requirement for urban domestic uses will increase rapidly due to urbanisation and industrialisation, growing annually by 21% in Can Tho, 18% in An Giang and 11% in Kien Giang and Ca Mau.

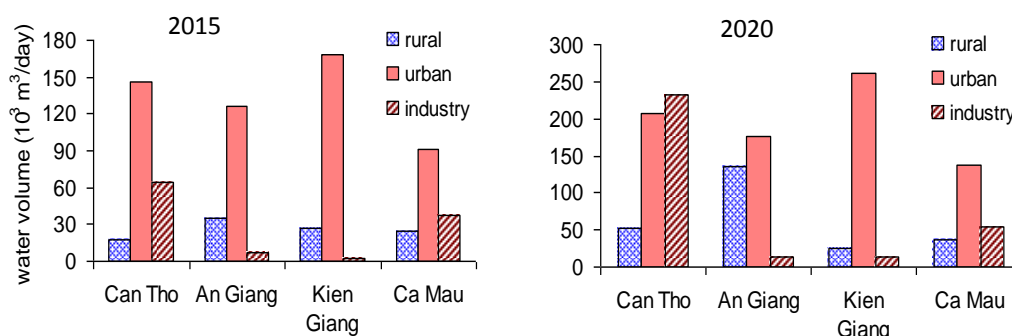


Figure 25: Predicted safe water requirement of domestic and industrial uses of the focal economic zones of the Mekong Delta

1.7.4.4 Water resource management plans by the government

In 2012, the prime Minister approved the “*Water resources plan of the Mekong Delta in the period of 2012 - 2020 and the vision to 2050 under the context of projected climate change and sea level rise*”⁹. The total budget was estimated at 171.700 billion \$VN (8.2 billion \$US). The plan focuses on the following work items:

- Continuing investments on flood, salinity management and irrigation development systems in the northern region of the Mekong, the region in between the Mekong and Bassac, Ca Mau Peninsula and Long Xuyen Quadrangle;
- Continuing investments on construction of residential clusters/lines in flood areas (18,260 billion \$VN);
- Upgrading sea dike systems;
- Upgrading and developing rural transportation road systems in the flood zones;
- Upgrading river dike systems;
- Upgrading flood-diversion systems to the west sea and Vam Co rivers;
- Developing freshwater storage systems by main rivers and canals for irrigation; and
- Developing non-structural measures to respond to expected climate change and salinity intrusion.

The Government of Vietnam has implemented a number of national plans to improve infrastructure, water resource and agricultural development, and environmental protection in

⁸ Estimation is based on information in Decision Approved by the Prime Minister (issued Nov 12 2010) on Water Supply Plan for Focal Economic Zones in the Mekong Delta to 2020

⁹ Decision No. 1397/QĐ-TTg approved by the Prime Minister (issued on September 25th, 2012) on “*Water resources plan of the Mekong Delta in the period of 2012 - 2020 and the vision to 2050 under the context of projected climate change and sea level rise*”

the Mekong Delta. The implementation of the national plans has generated socio-economic benefits and also led to some social and environmental impacts (positive and negative) as outlined in Table 5 below.

Table 5: Summary of national plans, benefits and impacts

National plans	Socio-economic benefits	Social and environmental impacts
Infrastructure and water resource development		
Poldering with flood-control systems in the flood zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Increased rice production and diversified farming activities ➤ Improved livelihoods of farmers ➤ Reduced risks and costs from floods ➤ Developed rural transportation infrastructure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Water pollution from agricultural intensification ➤ Reduced natural aquatic resources and ecosystem services of floodplain ➤ Less opportunities for people depend on natural resources i.e. capture fisheries
Salinity control and irrigation development in the coastal zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Increased rice production and diversified farming activities ➤ Improved livelihoods of farmers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Water pollution from rice intensification ➤ Reduced biodiversity in coastal areas ➤ Less opportunities for people depend on natural resources
Residential cluster/line development	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Provided 57,250 poor households with safe housing ➤ Reduced flood damages to housing and livelihoods 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Limited access to natural resources for livelihoods of inhabitants
Programme 135 for disadvantaged communes ¹⁰	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Improved rural transportation infrastructure and enhanced livelihood capacity in Khmer communities 	
Agricultural development		
Agricultural diversification	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Shifting rice to other crops (fruits, upland crops, aquaculture) for higher income 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Conflicts between water uses e.g. rice and shrimp farmers
“Living with flood” programme	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Diversified livelihood activities during flood periods ➤ Reduced economic risks and improved income of poor people 	
Sustainable agricultural production programme in rice,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Improved income through reduced costs of farming activities ➤ Improved linkages among stakeholders in value chains 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Promoting environmental sustainability and social linkages of farmers

¹⁰ Programme 135 (Development infrastructure and agricultural production for disadvantaged communes and/or communes with high population of ethnic minority people)

National plans	Socio-economic benefits	Social and environmental impacts
fruit and aquaculture ¹¹		
Environmental protection		
Mangrove rehabilitation and coastline protection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Reduced land loss from erosion ➤ Increased awareness of local people in protecting coastline and rehabilitating mangrove 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Protecting mangrove and its ecosystems

1.7.4.5 Water supply plan for focal economic zones

In 2010, the Prime Minister approved the “*Water Supply Plan for Focal Economic Zones in the Mekong Delta to 2020*”. Accordingly, three large-scale water treatment plants will be constructed to supply safe water to seven south-western provinces of the Bassac river, including Can Tho, An Giang, Kien Giang, Ca Mau, Soc Trang, Bac Lieu and Hau Giang. The government hopes that these investments will reduce groundwater extraction for domestic and industrial uses. The three large-scale water treatment plants planned are:

1. **Song Hau 1 water treatment plant:** located in Can Tho city, total capacity of 1.5 million m³/day, serving Can Tho, Soc Trang, Vinh Long, Ben Tre and Tra Vinh;
2. **Song Hau 2 water treatment plant:** located in Chau Thanh district of An Giang province, total capacity of 2.0 million m³/day, serving Can Tho, An Giang, Kien Giang, Hau Giang, Bac Lieu and Ca Mau; and
3. **Song Hau 3 water treatment plant:** located in Chau Doc town of An Giang province, total capacity of 0.7 million m³/day, serving An Giang and Kien Giang.

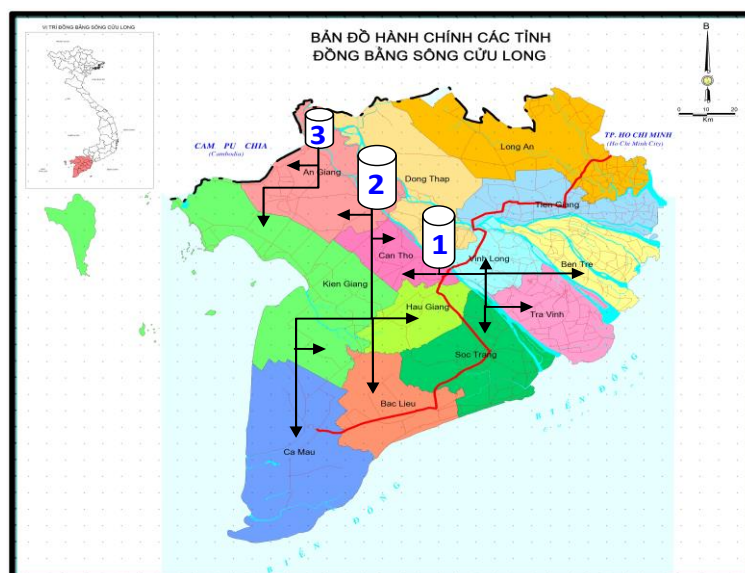


Figure 26: Location of proposed water treatment plants in the Mekong Delta

In 2005, MARD executed a master plan study on integrated water resources planning for the Mekong Delta to promote local socio-economic development. The study proposed a long-term development plan to adapt to critical dry season situations caused by upstream developments.

¹¹ “Good Agricultural Practices –GAP”, “Certified products”, “3 gains – 3 reductions”, “1 must – 5 reductions”, “small farmers with large-scale farm”

A number of possible measures were identified in the MDP, such as changing cropping patterns, increase of water storage in canals and storage basins and the construction of large sluice gates in the main estuaries. Although varying in importance for each region, the following targets are mentioned:

- Flood protection for residential areas, towns and cities;
- Reduction of flood levels in early and late season to ensure the production of two spring-summer- autumn paddy;
- Improvements in water management to reduce problems with acidic soils (e.g. in Ha Tien quadrangle) in order to use them for agriculture and aquaculture;
- Combination of flood control projects with irrigation works to form a complete irrigation system, combination with water storage and traffic infrastructure;
- Improvements of irrigation capacities by dredging canals and improvements the links between canals and the various river; and
- Improvements in drainage pumping capacity for areas that cannot be drained by gravity (e.g. the fruit tree areas).

2 CURRENT TRENDS AND CHALLENGES IN THE MEKONG DELTA

Rapid population growth and intensive agricultural and aquaculture development over the past decades have significantly reduced the natural values in the delta. Progressive land and water reclamation, agricultural intensification, as well negative ecological impacts of warfare, have significantly reduced the natural forests, wetlands and other natural habitats of the delta. Many wetlands such as mangroves, ponds, lakes, lagoons and wet grasslands are threatened by extinction through the concessions for irrigation, forest plantations, salt ponds, and industrial development zones and shrimp farms (MDP 2013).

After decades, multi-cropping farming systems are dropping in productivity, flood plains are shrinking exacerbating flood risks elsewhere, wetland habitats are being degraded causing water quality issues while water over-exploitation is shifting the balance between land and sea, subsiding the delta surface and causing salinization of remaining sources (ICEM 2015). Five key lessons from the Mekong Delta are:

1. **Highly controlled multi-crop farming systems have depleted soil fertility and cut off agricultural areas from natural fertilization processes of the Mekong River:** The widespread isolation of the Mekong's freshwater flood plain from fluvial processes to open up opportunities for triple and double crop rice farming has resulted in reduced fertility and reduced productivity of triple cropped areas. In **An Giang province** total yield from some triple cropped areas are actually lower than yield from neighboring double- crop areas which are still partially connected to the annual flood cycles (Kakkonen et al, 2008);
2. **The Shrinking Mekong Floodplain area has exacerbated flooding in unprotected areas:** the loss of floodplain has increased flood levels in the remaining unprotected areas and concentrated flood discharge in the Mekong River channels and distributaries. Worsened flood conditions have also lead to transboundary issues between Viet Nam and Cambodia, and channelized flood flows have lead to increasing issues of river bank and coastal erosion (ICEM, 2012);
3. **Draining of wetland depressions in the delta for agricultural expansion** have led to increasing acidification of surface water environments with knock-on effects for ecosystems (especially fisheries) and water supply. Lack of wastewater treatment and use of agro-chemicals has also reduced surface water quality. Deterioration of these provisioning services have disproportionately impacted poor communities of the Delta who rely on these services for their livelihood;
4. **Dry season agriculture is shifting the delta's balance between fresh and marine environments:** The MDP highlighted that increased water demand to support dry season agriculture has depleted groundwater sources, strengthened the penetration of saline intrusion, increasing the salinity of water sources and accelerating rates of land subsidence in the Delta; and
5. **Centralized water control initiatives such as the saline control structures in the coastal areas of the delta often limit the livelihood and economic opportunities for farmers seeking to take advantage of market driven opportunities:** the market driven conflict between shrimp and rice farming in the early 2000s revealed the inflexibility and low levels of adaptive capacity of a infrastructure-driven approach to controlling the delta environment and conflict between government targets for rice

production and individual farmers wanting to optimize the economic returns for their farming effort.

Many of the lessons above are Delta-wide, cut across provincial and administrative boundaries and require both structural and non-structural measures to meet these challenges; however, these trends and challenges vary according to the hydro-ecological zones. For further analysis the delta is divided into four hydro-ecological zones based on the balance between coastal and upstream hydrological influences:

1. **Upper delta floodplain:** Northern, upper delta floodplain comprising the alluvial terraces, riverine levies and wetland depressions of Kien Giang, An Giang, Dong Thap, and Long An provinces. The upper delta floodplain is dominated by freshwater inputs from the Mekong basin and overbank flooding of the Tien and Hau river channels. During the wet season, flood water levels regularly exceed 2.0;
2. **Middle delta:** includes the alluvial floodplains and urban areas of Can Tho, Hau Giang, Vinh Long and Tien Giang provinces and is characterized by industrialization, land use changes and limited urban water supply and wastewater services;
3. **Delta estuary:** comprising the estuary areas of Vinh Long, Tra Vinh, Soc Trang and Ben Tre. The inter-tidal zone is under the mixed influence of upstream hydrology as well as coastal processes such as tidally-induced saline intrusion and channel-flow reversal. In the delta estuary under mixed coastal and freshwater influence, rice is still an important crop accounting for 30% of provincial area, with brackish aquaculture accounting for a further 11%; and
4. **Delta peninsula:** Eastern and southern regions of the Delta, where coastal processes dominate local hydrology and local rainfall is the main freshwater input. On the delta peninsula dominated by coastal influences and limited freshwater inputs, brackish aquaculture is the dominant land use accounting for 41% of the provincial area.

Land use has also developed to take advantage of the distinct hydro-ecological characteristics of the three zones in relation to freshwater, brackish and saline farming. Focal provinces have been identified in the three hydro-ecological zones to demonstrate the links between coastal influence and land use as shown below in Table 6 and Figure 27. Section 2 in this REA provided an overview of the biophysical and socio-economic status in the Mekong Delta. Section 3 & 4 will analyze the specific trends and challenges and projected changes in the three hydro-ecological zones used in the MD-ICRSL project: upper delta floodplain, delta estuary and delta peninsula.

Table 6: Hydro-ecological zones and focal provinces

Hydro-ecological zones	Focal provinces
Component 2: Upper delta floodplain	An Giang, Dong Thap and Kien Giang
Component 3: Delta estuary	Ben Tre, Tra Vinh & Soc Trang
Component 4: Peninsula	Cau Mau & Bac Lieu

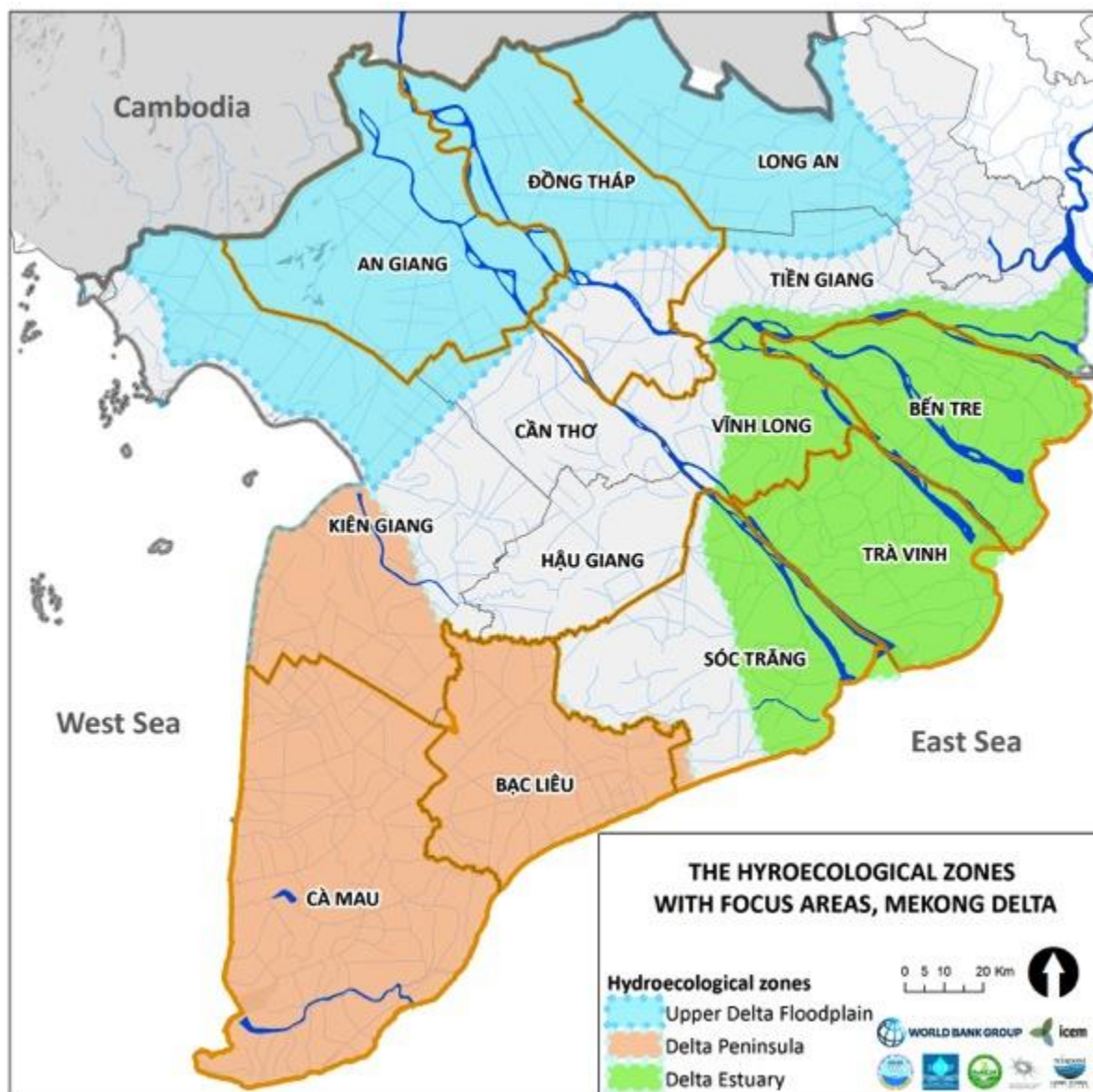


Figure 27: Hydro-ecological zones and focal provinces

Assessing the hydro-ecological zones recognizes that differences in soil texture, salinity and micro-topography have resulted in a variety of ecosystems with different natural vegetation and agricultural opportunities, land and water uses. This analysis aligns with the MDP, which recognized that the opportunities and constraints are geographically bound and the comparative advantages of the zones can be utilized to design strategies for water resources management and the agricultural sector. In developing priority and “non-regret” measures, the MDP identified the following key challenges for the Delta:

- Growing population, urbanization and industrialization leading to a demand for higher flood protection and intensified use of water resources;
- Protecting traditional flood plains against seasonal flooding through permanent dykes for the intensification of triple rice farming in the upper delta takes retention areas impacting downstream flood protection negatively;
- Coping with increasingly fresh water supply constraints during the dry season, in particular in coastal zones and middle delta;

- An expanding brackish water environment along the coast that alters the land (and water) division between brackish aquaculture and fresh agriculture; unsustainable shrimp farming using fresh groundwater and suffering from significant production loss;
- Abundant use of groundwater leading to subsidence and depletion of resources; and
- Aggravation of flooding and drought problems through climate change, upstream developments and land subsidence (MDP 2013).

These challenges above provide the foundation for further analysis in this REA of the trends and challenges in the upper delta floodplain, delta estuary and peninsula. This analysis builds on the scenarios and eight main classes of land use identified and assessed in the MDP: (i) triple crop rice, (ii) rice, (iii) fruit, (iv) brackish water culture, (v) shrimp, (vi) forest/wetlands, (vii) mangroves, and (viii) urban. (vii) mangroves, and (viii) urban.

2.1 Environmental and Social Baseline trends for Upper delta floodplain (Component 2)

The Upper Delta comprises the alluvial terraces, riverine levies and wetland depressions of Kien Giang, An Giang, Dong Thap, and Long An provinces. The upper delta floodplains are dominated by freshwater inputs from the Mekong basin and the annual overbank flooding of the Tien and Hau river channels and include the focal provinces An Giang and Dong Thap. During the wet season, flood water levels regularly exceed 2.0m. Flooding in the delta is a natural process that maintains productivity and drives the dynamic evolution of the Mekong Delta. The annual flood event is responsible for replenishing the fertile sediments that is vital to agricultural productivity. Rice is the dominant crop accounting for nearly 70% of the agricultural production in An Giang and Dong Thap (Figure 28).

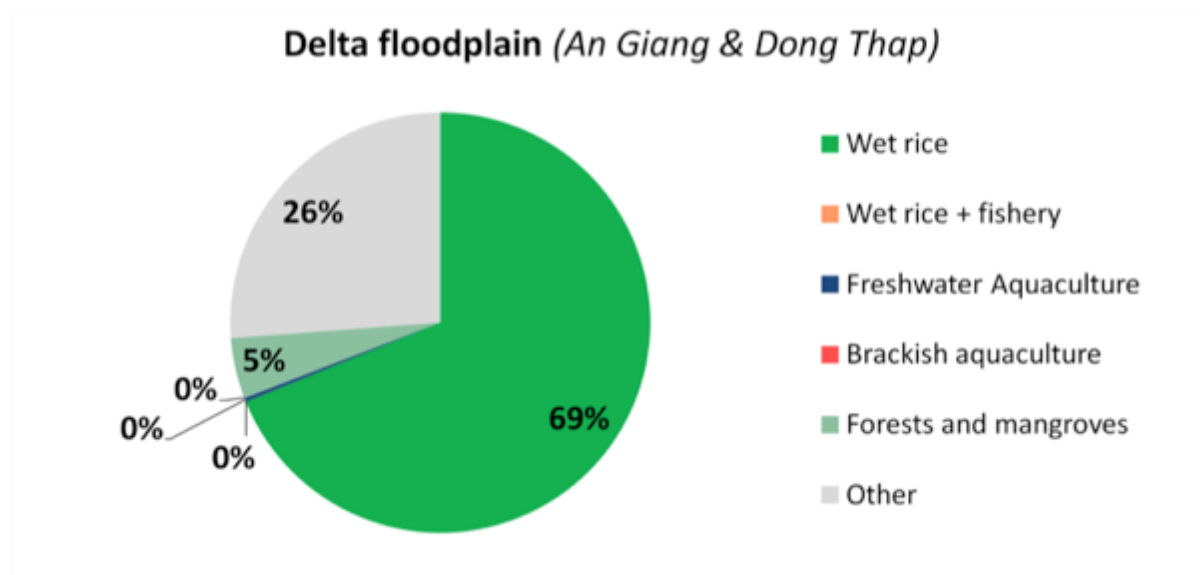


Figure 28: Agricultural land use in An Giang and Dong Thap

Most of the area has been converted to agricultural land for rice intensification. The land use types for the upper delta floodplain are shown below in Figure 29.

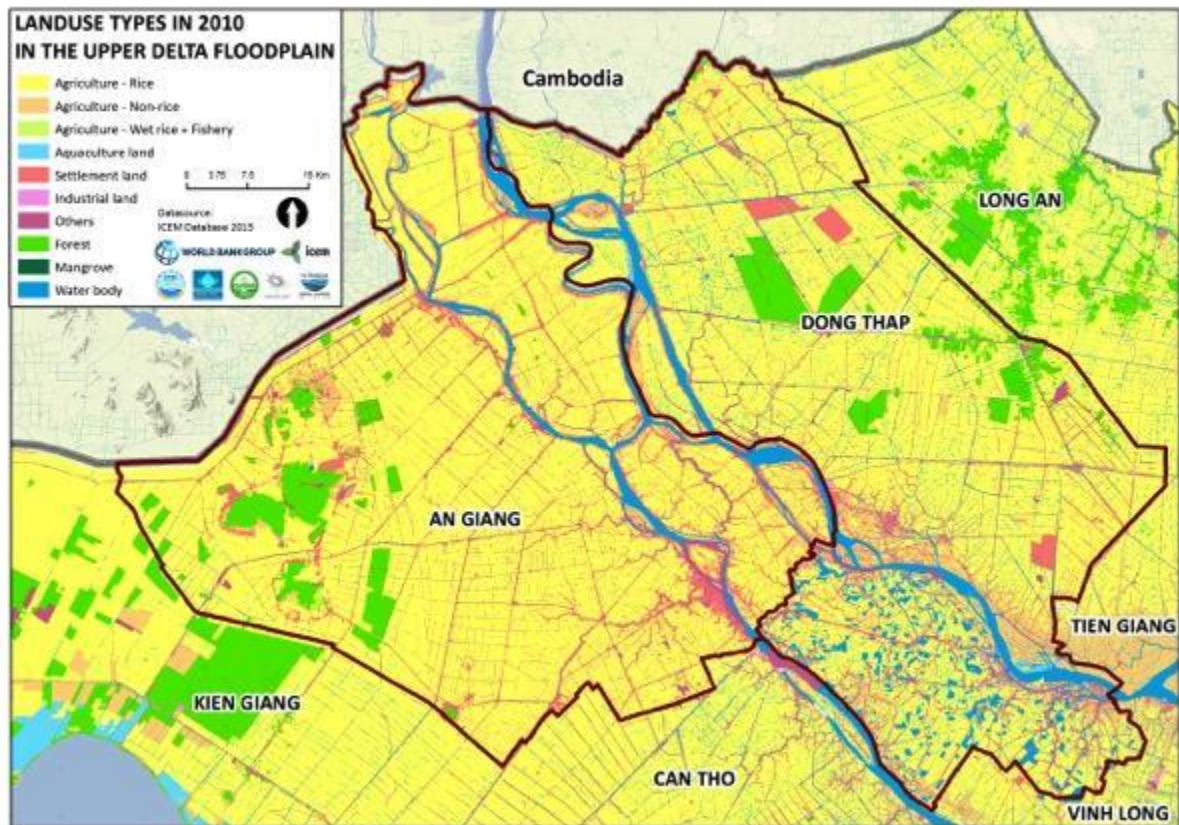


Figure 29: Land use types in the upper delta floodplain

The MDP highlighted that climate change is expected to bring higher and more pronounced season flood regimes, the key challenges are to retain the natural flood based agriculture and protect downstream provinces from flooding.

2.1.1 Shrinking floodplains and exacerbated flood damages

Rapid development of the delta over the past 20 years has reduced flood relief capacity of upstream areas through the intensification of multiple crop rice farming. Extensive water infrastructure was developed for flood control and to support rice intensification in the Mekong Delta (Figure 30).

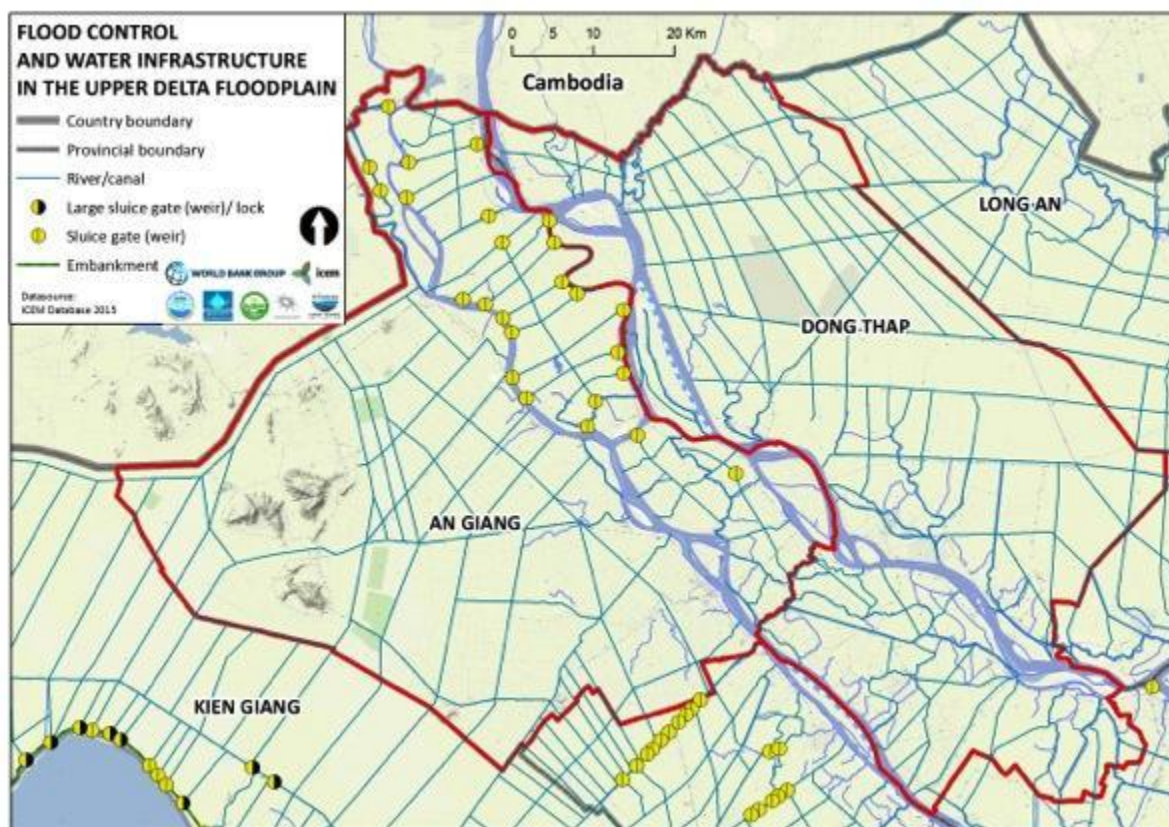


Figure 30: Flood control and water infrastructure in the upper delta floodplain

Dike heightening totally prevents floodwaters from flowing into agricultural fields during the flood season, which is the period of the year when rice farmers grow the third crop. Rice production in An Giang province is associated with annual floods, which are classified as the early flood and main flood. The cropping calendar is as follows:

- **The first crop (winter-spring):** starts in November/December after the annual flood season ends, and is completed in February/March. At the beginning of the season, water is pumped out of the field for sowing and then pumped in to irrigate the farm areas for the whole season;
- **The second crop (summer-autumn):** starts the end of April or beginning of May, and is harvested at the end of July or early August before early flooding. Water is pumped in for the whole season; in case of heavy rains or early floods, water is pumped out at the end of the season and low dykes have to be consolidated; and
- **The third crop (autumn-winter):** follows the second crop, and harvests come in October/November at the end of the annual flood season. For the third crop, high dykes have to be consolidated and upgraded, and water is pumped out the whole season (AGSDI 2009).

The irrigation system has reclaimed large areas of alkaline soils for rice production, enabling two to three crops per year. As assessed in the MDP, the delta's rice production rose from 4.5 million tons in 1976 to nearly 21 million tons in 2008 thanks to improvements in water management, the implementation of technical advances and policy reforms. High yielding rice varieties only started to be effectively used after improvements in irrigation, drainage and flood control were implemented on a large scale. About 1.4 million ha (over 90%

of the Winter-Spring and Summer-Autumn crop) is actively irrigated with the canals and sluices at all levels. Many embankments have been erected to avoid flooding during the harvest month of August. Flood control has achieved significant results, partly through state investments, but also by local people themselves. The main idea is not to completely eradicate floods, since flooding also provide benefits to the people and their crops.

The high-dykes built for flood control failed to prevent extensive damages to agriculture in An Giang province during the 2011 floods. The estimated costs of the damage amounted to around VND 72.4 billion (AGCFSC 2011). In the POR summer-autumn rice crops, high value fruit trees and infrastructure also suffered damages (MDP 2013). The 2011 floods recorded a flood peak level of 4.86m at Tan Chau, lower than the 2000 flood peak level 5.06m. Figure 31 below compares the flooded and non-flooded areas of the 2011 and 2000 floods.

Protecting traditional flood plains against seasonal flooding for rice intensification reduces flood retention impacting downstream provinces negatively. The 2011 flood season experienced a smaller inflow volume than 2000, yet the water levels at Long Xuyen and Can Tho City were higher (MDP 2013). GIS analysis revealed that in the intervening decade between these two floods there was a 42% reduction in flooded area within the LXQ. Between 2000 and 2011, approximately 1,1000 km² of the LXQ was isolated from normal riverine processes of overbank flood and flood storage because of the expansion of triple crop rice. This resulted in an additional 4,700 MCM of water exacerbating the peak flood water levels at Can Tho in September and October, and accounted for approximately 10% of the increase in water levels at Can Tho relative to the year 2000 flood (ICEM 2015).

Since 2000, the Government has made efforts to diversify land use planning in the delta and promote the policy of “living with floods” in inland provinces. Controlled flooding can protect crops and other infrastructure from floods. However, dykes and their associated irrigation systems can considerably affect the nature of the flood as they can fragment the floodplains and interrupt the natural flow of water, sediments, nutrients, and fisheries (Tong Yen Dan 2015; MDP 2013). The high dykes are also contributing to the decline of capture fisheries in the Mekong Delta. Declining trend are due to overfishing, water pollution, destruction of natural fish habitats within the delta, and the increased pressures from the upstream developments (Chen and Zhang 2011).

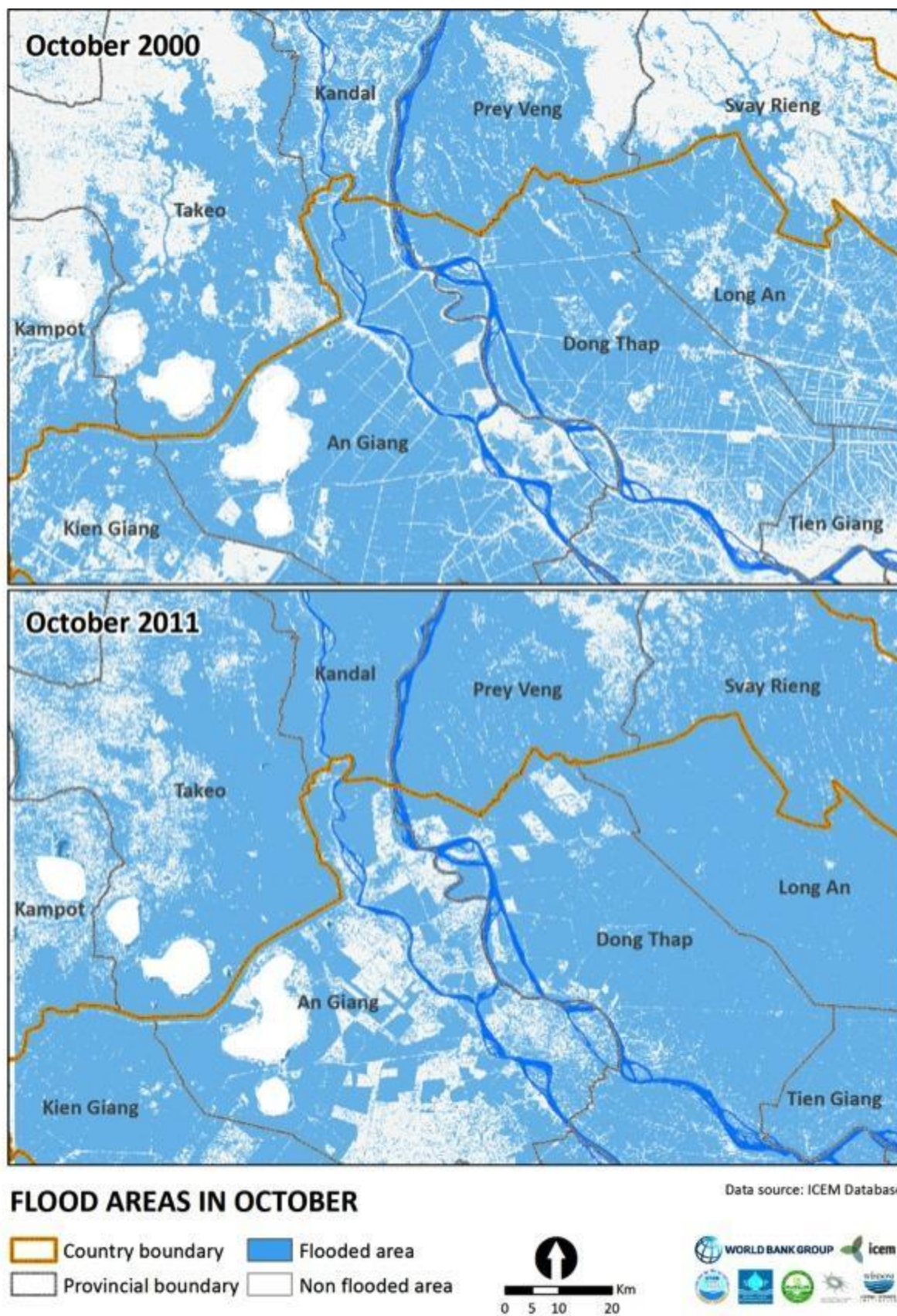


Figure 31: Flooded areas in the October 2000 and 2011

2.1.2 Acidification and surface water quality

Draining of wetland depressions for agricultural expansion have led to increasing acidification of surface water environments with knock-on effects for ecosystems (especially fisheries) and water supply. Each year about half of the delta is flooded by river water up to three meters in depth under extreme conditions. And after the recession of the floodwaters new problems arise. Reduced river flows cause the sea to intrude far inland, affecting over 1.4 million ha with saline waters. The drainage of naturally occurring acid sulphate soils causes an additional problem for farms on low-lying land in the Upper Delta (MDP 2011). The acid sulphate soils comprise a total area of about 1.4 million ha (approximately 35% of the entire Delta). Saline and alluvial soils occupy nearly an equal area of about 1.2 million ha (28%) each. In the 1980s a total of about 1 million ha of acid sulphate soils could not be used for cultivation. Most of these soils have now been reclaimed for cultivation from improved water management practices.

People living in acid-sulphate soil and saline-affected zones are more vulnerable to natural resources threats than those in freshwater and alluvial zones. The decline of soil fertility in the flood and alluvial zones and soil and water acidity in the acid sulphate zones are impacting agricultural productivity. Farmers in acid-sulphate soil and saline-affected zones contend with more biophysical threats than farmers in freshwater and alluvial zones. Especially where infrastructure and human capacity remain under developed. In addition, the occurrence of crop pests and surface water pollution from aquaculture and domestic users are emerging threats to natural resources.

Households in the flood or saline zones usually have larger farms than those in alluvial or rainfed zones. In the brackish and saline zones, where agriculture has shifted to the shrimp-based farming systems, field trenches and dykes are important farm resources, sharing around 20% of the total farm area. Household surveys showed that diversifying crops and replacing rice production by aquaculture and horticulture enabled rural households to increase farm-based income. For landless or poor people, their livelihoods depend largely on the exploitation of natural resources and off-farm activities. Ecosystem services and employment opportunities for poor households need to be considered in transforming the agricultural sector

The agricultural potential in areas of the Dong Thap Muoi and LXQ is low due to acid sulphate soils. The Dong Thap Muoi and LXQ are closed floodplain systems are situated at both sides of the river and together cover an area of 510,027 ha. The Dong Thap Muoi includes the vast POR, the agricultural potential is very low because soils in these regions have very high concentrations of sulphates (low pH values ranging from 2.26 to 3.54). These areas are also deeply flooded from August to November and have insufficient fresh water during the dry season (MDP 2013). The areas of sulphate and alluvial soils in the upper delta floodplain are shown below in Figure 32.

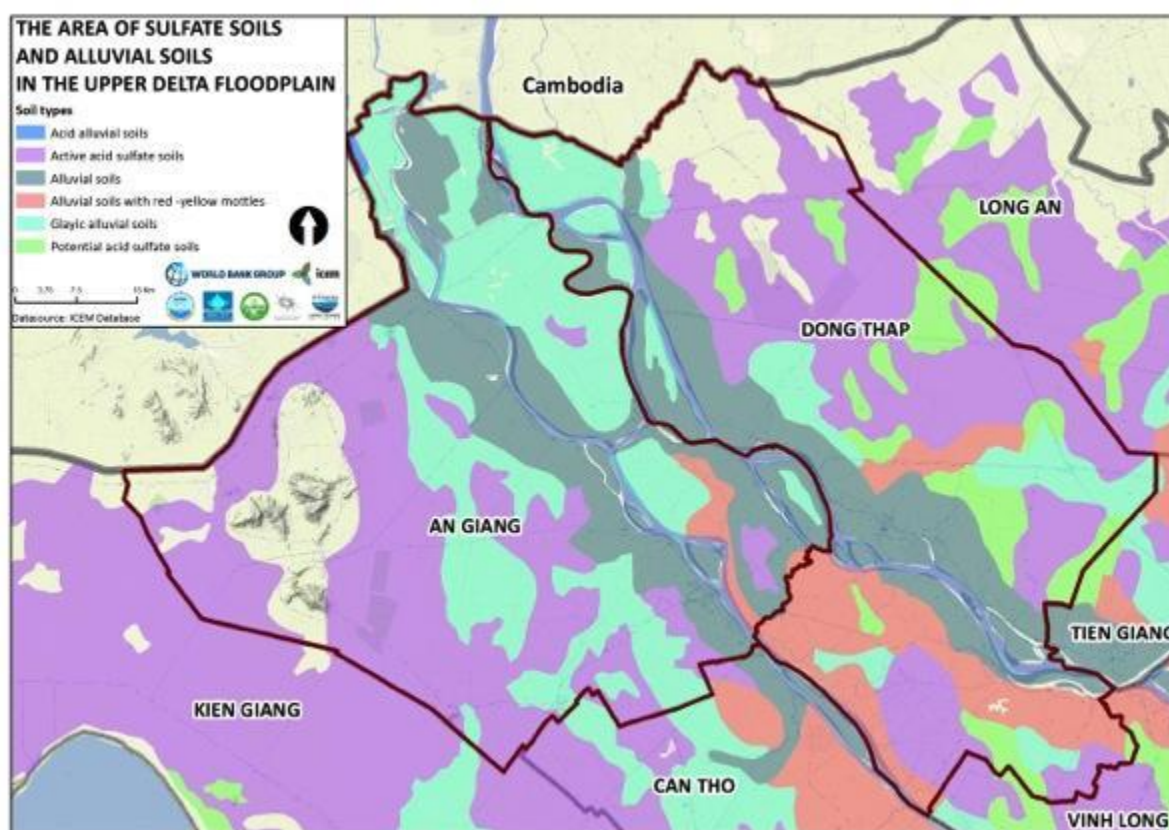


Figure 32: Area of acid sulfate and alluvial soil in the upper delta floodplain

Surface waters are polluted by acid water leaching from acid soils, increased use of agricultural fertilisers and pesticides and domestic wastes in the upper delta floodplain. Draining of wetland depressions in the delta for agricultural expansion have led to increasing acidification of surface water environments with knock-on effects for ecosystems (especially fisheries) and water supply. Water quality is reported as an issue by farmers and people living in the Mekong Delta. The most extensive water quality programme (2002-2007) indicated the following:

- Saline intrusion in 2007 was not high. Of recent years, the year 2004 had the highest salinity intrusion;
- At some locations with aluminum concentrations (e.g. the channel in Nguyen Tan Thanh) relatively low pH values are measured;
- Silt content in the mainstream and internal canals tends to increase during the period 2002-2007. The highest concentration of silt in major rivers was approx. 500 mg/l;
- Nitrogen tends to increase whereas phosphorous decreased, although differences are not significant;
- Organic matter measured as BOD5 is quite low, but COD component (chemical oxygen demand) increased in the period 2002-2007. In the dry season dissolved oxygen levels in the channels were low;
- In some locations the water was polluted by acid water leaching from acid soils early during the rainy season; and

- Total coliform and E.coli concentrations are low because of large flow conditions in rivers and canals where the measurements have been taken (MDP 2011).

The 2014 Mekong Delta Surface Water Monitoring Report produced by the Environment Monitoring MONRE for the Tien and Hau rivers indicate surface water quality in the Mekong Delta has strong seasonality; the following trends were recently detected in the Hau and Tien rivers:

1. In the dry season, due to saline intrusion from the East Sea high readings of electrical conductivity (EC) and chloride were detected at downstream sites;
2. At the beginning of the rainy season, monitoring results show that some local areas are polluted with nutrients from agricultural run-off;
3. During the flood season, surface water is polluted in some localized areas; and
4. Residues of organic phosphorous (P) contained in agro-chemicals were not detected at additional monitoring sites.

The large flows of the annual floodwaters help to flush out pollutants, especially nutrients and organic compounds from river and streams. However, as the floodwaters rise over agricultural, urban and industrial areas the surface water quality is affected in some local areas.

Increased levels of nutrients from agricultural run-off have been detected by bio monitoring. Aquatic life in the delta is abundant and diverse with 347 species recorded including 187 species of phyto-plankton, 100 species of zooplankton and 60 species of zoo-benthos. The species structure comprises mainly typical freshwater species and some species migrated inland from the sea. Many of these species are adaptive to the nutrient rich environments, showing an increasing trend in organic pollution at the monitoring areas. At the upstream site in Khanh Binh, An Giang province the density of phytoplankton was particularly high, especially the toxic blue algae species that lives in nutrient-rich and often polluted environments. Using the water in this area presents a risk to domestic water supply and aquaculture.

Managing the impacts of surface water pollution is critical as rural water supply is based on surface water, groundwater and rainwater. The MDP identified that safe water supply is guaranteed to only 60-65% of the urban population and for the rural population this percentage is considerably lower. Further water quality monitoring and analysis is required to determine the impacts on surface water quality of acid sulphate soils, increased pesticide and fertilizer use for third rice cropping and aquaculture in the upper delta floodplain. Component 1 of the MD-ICRSL will enhance delta-wide monitoring systems for surface water, flow and groundwater in the Delta.

2.1.3 Higher inputs of agro-chemicals, reducing agricultural productivity

Rice area (ha) and yield (tons/ha) have increased in both An Giang and Dong Thap provinces from 1995-2013. The wet season crop includes the summer-autumn (second) and the autumn-winter (third) crops. The extension of the wet season crops mainly came from the development of the autumn-winter crop, the area for wet season crops increased by about 200,000 ha from 1995 to 2013 (Figure 33). The traditional rice crop only exists in Tinh Bien and Tri Ton districts (GSO, 2014). The area of the autumn-winter crop in An Giang doubled from 83,000 ha to 163,000 ha (Figure 34). From 2008-13 the yield (tons/ha) remained around 7.3 tons/ha for the dry season crop and 5.5-5.7 tons/ha for the wet season crops (Figure 35).

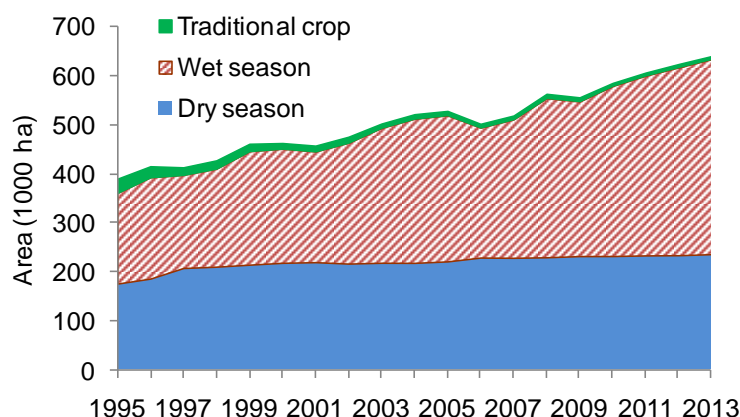


Figure 33: Trends of rice growing areas in An Giang

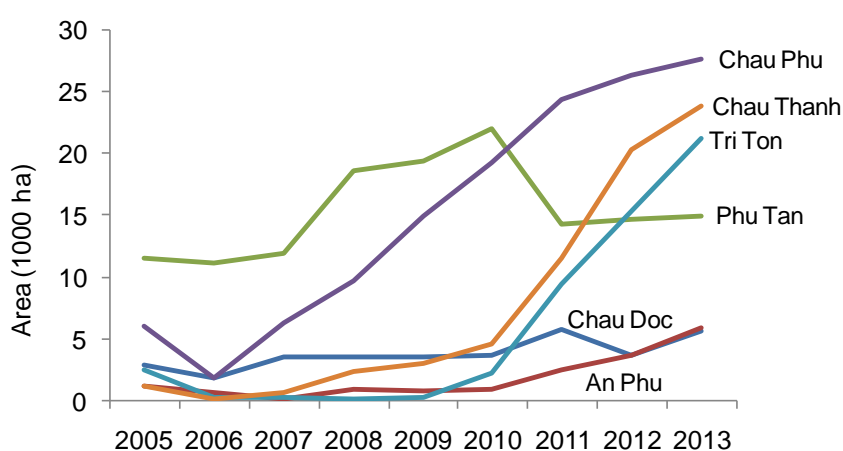


Figure 34: Trends of the autumn-winter crop areas by district in An Giang

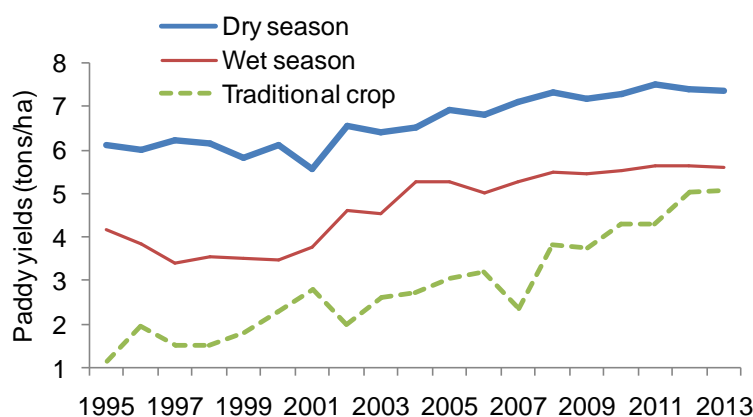


Figure 35: Trends of paddy yields by crop in An Giang

In Dong Thap, the area for the wet season rice increased by 150,000ha from 1995-2013 as a result of the autumn-winter crop (Figure 36). The autumn-winter crop was practiced dominantly in Lai Vung, Lap Vo, Chau Thanh, Cao Lanh and Thap Muoi districts (GSO 2014). From 2008-2013, yields of the dry season crop did not change, about 7.1 tons/ha, and those of the wet season crops from 2011-2013 were about 5.5 tons/ha (Figure 37).

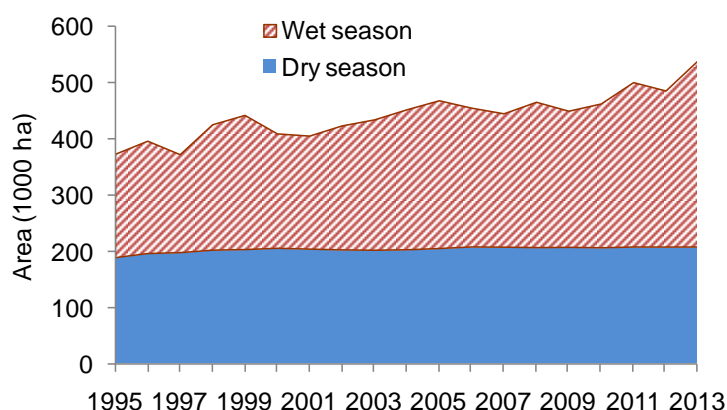


Figure 36: Trends of rice growing areas by crop in Dong Thap

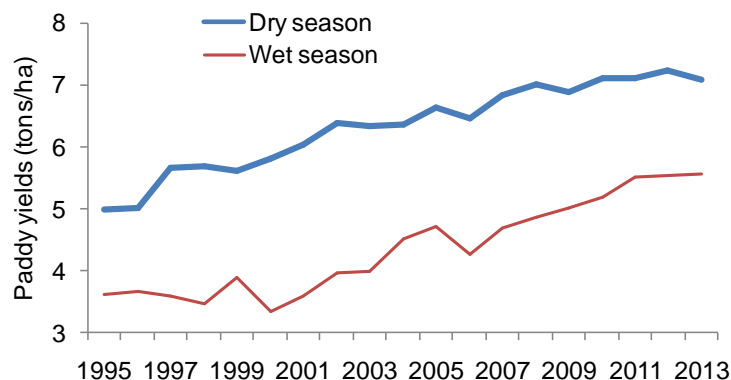


Figure 37: Trends of paddy yields by crop in Dong Thap.

Third cropping in the upper delta floodplain has lower total yield and higher rice production costs. In An Giang province total yield from some triple cropped areas are actually lower than yield from neighboring double crop areas that are still partially connected to the annual flood cycles (Kakkonen et al, 2008). In a cost benefit analysis (CBA) of intensive rice farming in An Giang province, a 20% decline in profit after 10 years of dike heightening was reported (Tong Yen Dan 2015). A recent situational analysis (Thien 2015) of intensive rice farming in the An Giang and Dong Thap indicated that the third crop has the lowest yield and the highest unit cost of production (VND/Kg) among the 3 crops. The net profit of each crop in the double cropping system is higher than that in the triple cropping system due to lower costs of inputs and higher yields. However, the total profit of the triple cropping system is higher than the double cropping system.

Rice intensification has driven farmers to apply more pesticides and fertilizers, reducing the cost benefits of the winter-autumn crop. Howie (2011) reported a 40% difference in rice yield per ton of fertilizer between rice plantations in low-dike and high-dike areas in sites where high dykes had been built for more than 10 years. Figure 38 below shows the trends of fertilizer application rates (nitrogen, phosphorous and potassium), total yield and benefit-cost ratio (BCR) of rice production for the 1st crop (winter-spring), 2nd crop (summer-autumn) in 1999, 2006 and 2010. Data for the 3rd crop is only available for 2010. In 2010, the application of nitrogen (N) and phosphorous (P) based fertilizers was higher for the third crop.

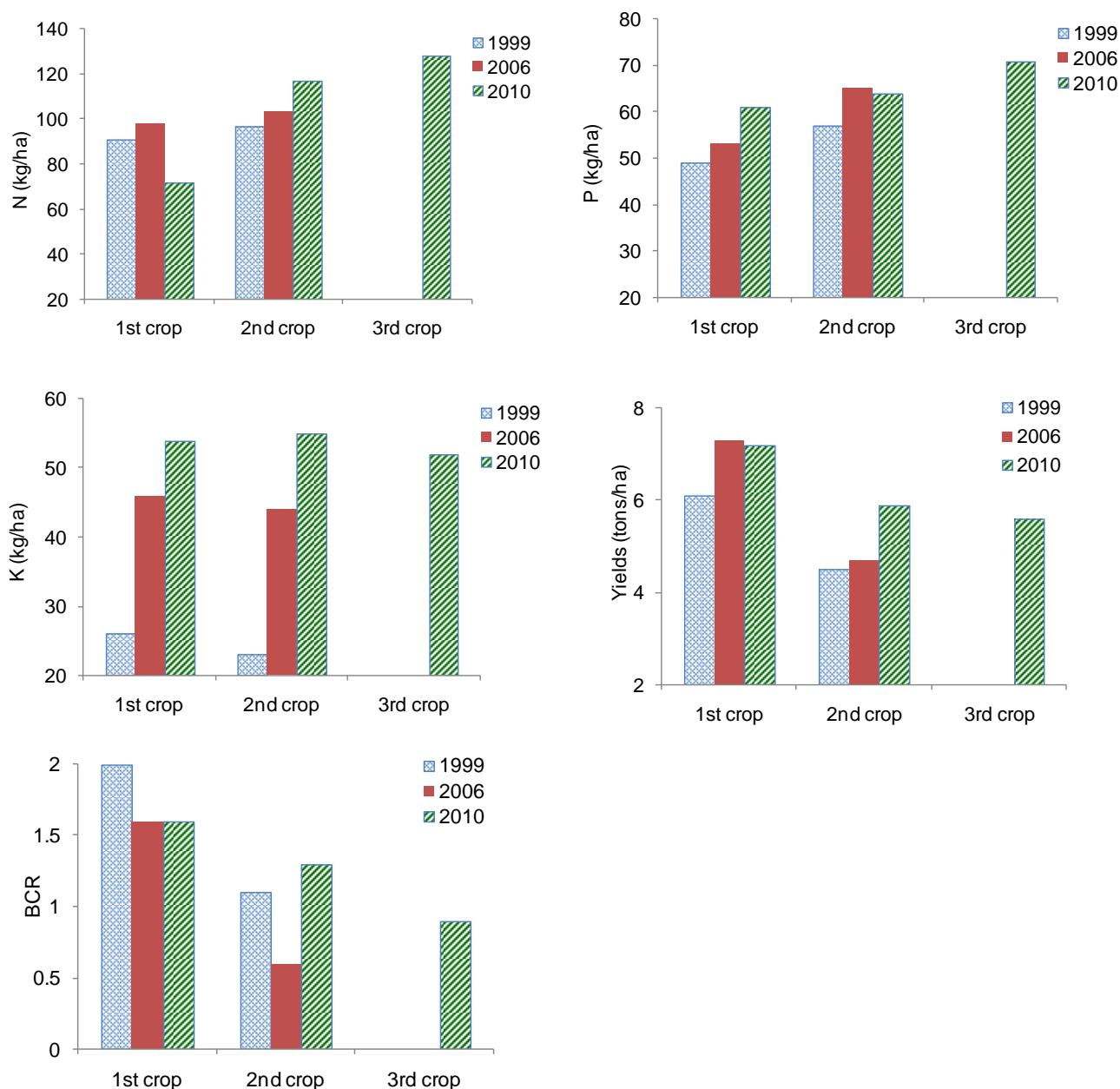


Figure 38: Trends of fertilizer application rates (N, P & K), total yield and BCR

The third crop also had a lower total yield and BCR than the 1st and 2nd crops. Triple rice cropping requires higher inputs levels of fertilizers and pesticides, leading to higher input costs and reduced BCR. A study in An Giang showed that floodwater provided an average of 61 tons dry sediments, which contains 2t organic matter, 151kg total nitrogen (N), 109kg total phosphorus (P), 4kg potassium (K), 211 kg Calcium (Ca) and 6 kg sodium (Na) per ha per year (Nha 2003).

The use of agro-chemicals also poses a threat to aquatic organisms and water quality. Agrochemicals are most intensively used in the upper delta floodplain, where farmers may have as many as three crops of rice per year. Also, the use of pesticides in high value fruit and on vegetables is also high, where large quantities are suspected to end up in the aquatic environment (MRC 2010). Chemicals used in livestock farming and aquaculture, such as

antibiotics for *Pangasius* and shrimp farming may pose a threat to aquatic organisms (Gräslund 2004; Sarter et al. 2007).

Trends for high value agriculture and aquaculture are also increasing in An Giang and Dong Thap provinces. Shifting from rice intensification is important to consider in the upper delta floodplain, farmers with rice monoculture had more expenditure per rice crop than those farmers with rice rotation and intercropping (Huynh 2011). Figure 39 highlights the encouraging trends of the vegetable and aquaculture production in An Giang Dong Thap. The increase in vegetable area results from flood-control projects, particularly in Cho Moi district of An Giang (GSO 2014). Figure 40 below highlights the trends of increased aquaculture production in An Giang and Dong Thap mainly due to the intensification of *pangasius* catfish.

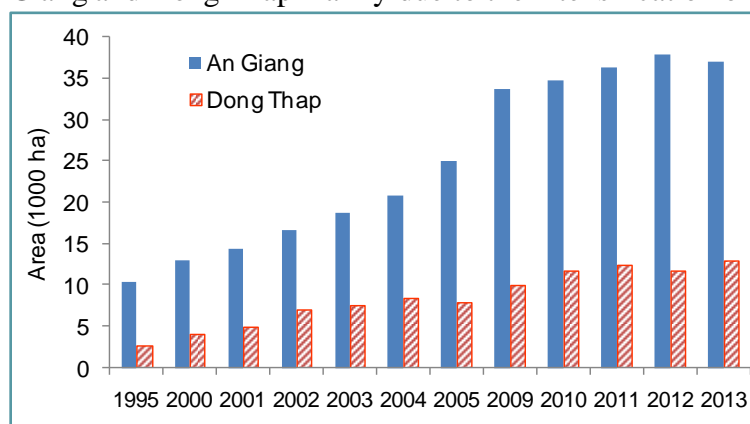


Figure 39: Trends of vegetable production area in An Giang and Dong Thap

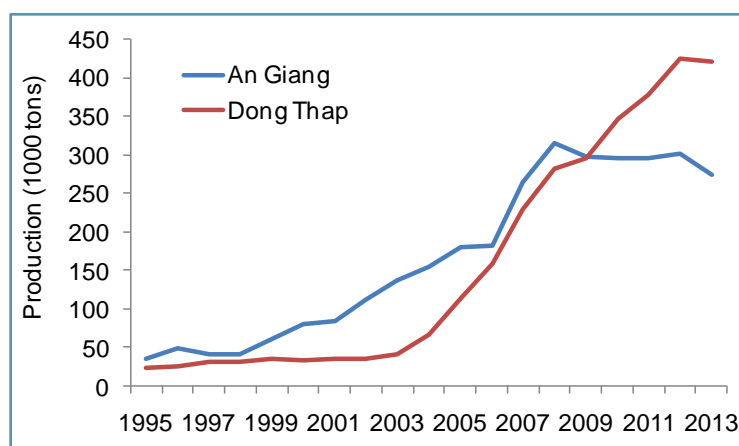


Figure 40: Trends of aquaculture production in An Giang and Dong Thap

2.1.4 Rapid economic growth with a persistent poverty gap

Poverty rates are declining in An Giang and Dong Thap, not all communities have benefited from rice intensification. From 2006 to 2013 poverty rates declined in both An Giang and Dong Thap (Figure 41). Compared to the Mekong Delta average, An Giang has lower rates and Dong Thap has higher poverty rates. In An Giang, relatively high poverty rates occur in Tinh Bien, Tri Ton and An Phu districts. In Dong Thap, people living in deep-flood districts like Tam Nong, Hong Ngu, Tan Hong and Thap Muoi have higher poverty rates (GSO 2013). At the same time total rice yield increased by up to 4% in some areas of the upper delta floodplain, benefiting farmers that have accumulated more farmland and assets.

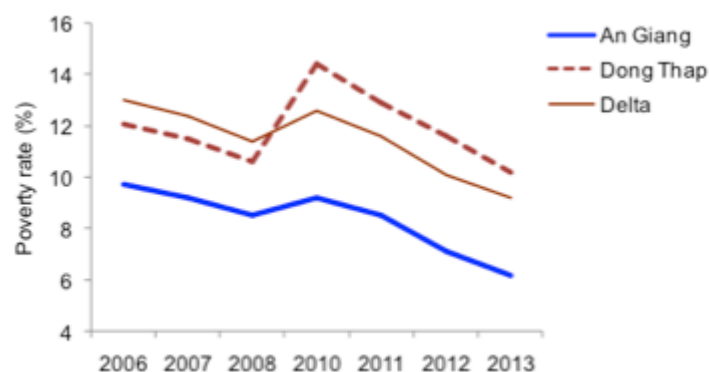


Figure 41: Trends of poverty rates of An Giang, Dong Thap and Mekong Delta from 2006-2013

Rice intensification is driven by production targets assigned by the national government to provinces in the Mekong Delta. The scaling up has been made possible with the support from the government through dyke heightening. Farmers do not have to pay for all the costs of dyke construction, so the cost is not internalized into the rice production cost of the additional crop. The third rice crop has allowed farmers to accumulate more savings than two crops. However, not all farmers wanted to plant three crops of rice per year, once their land is trapped inside a polder they have no choice but to practice triple rice cropping. This inflexible approach to farming systems has limited opportunities for farmers to diversify to high value fruit and vegetables.

Intensive crop farmers have been able to adapt to some of the impacts of dike heightening by increasing inputs (i.e. fertilizers, pesticides) and changing rice varieties. However, they are still constrained by the environmental impacts of reduced biodiversity and fisheries associated with intensive farming. Many environmental, social and farming issues were reported by farmers in An Giang and Dong Thap including:

1. **Environmental:** soil degradation, water pollution, reduction of fisheries and flooding and drainage issues;
2. **Social:** improved social services and infrastructure, higher living costs and young people out migrated to industrial zones for employment; and
3. **Farming:** increased farming costs, reduced profit, more diseases and pest attacks, disadvantages for families with small farms.

The risks and opportunities of rice intensification impacts farmers with less than one hectare of rice land disproportionately. Rice farmers with less land are shifting from rice to other non-rice production activities and more young people are migrating to urban areas for employment. One survey conducted in An Giang and Dong Thap provinces found that 58.8% of the rice farmers' children were working away from home and were not engaged in rice production-related activities (Pham 2015). More mechanized farming associated with rice intensification has reduced employment opportunities for rural households

2.1.5 River bank erosion

River bank erosion has had severe impacts in both the An Giang and Dong Thap province. An Giang has around 50 erosion hot spots with a total length of 150km along the Tien and the Hau rivers. In 2014 there were 25 cases of erosion reported in Dong Thap causing a loss of 26,106m² of soil and affecting nearly 2000 households. Erosion occurred along a total length of 39km in 34 communes, wards, and towns in Dong Thap, threatening 4,000 families

(Vietnamnet 2014). Sand mining, dredging and upstream developments are reducing the sediment load to the delta causing riverbank erosion.

Dredging and sand mining activities are contributing to riverbank erosion in the Mekong Delta. The Vietnamese government has prohibited sand mining and has strict controls in place for dredging. Activities that are undertaken in Vietnam related to dredging include the development of canals, embankments and upgrading of the navigation channel. The government requires dredging and sand mining operators to develop EIA and EPC (*Decree No. 18/2015/ND-CP dated 14 February 2015*). The specific projects requiring EIA are:

- Sand mining or dredging channel, using dredging material as fill materials, construction with the capacity over 50,000m³ of material; and
- Dredging canals, rivers and lakes with a dredging area of more than 10,000m².

If the volume is below 50,000m³ and dredging area is less than 10,000m² then an EPC is required. Sand and gravel is being extracted upstream in Cambodia, Laos and Thailand contributing to riverbank erosion in the delta.

In-channel extractions of sand and gravel are contributing to a reduced sediment load causing large-scale erosion in the Mekong Delta. The MRC and WWF conducted sand and gravel mining survey in 2011 and found that a total volume of 34.48 million cubic meters or 55.2 million tons (density of 1.6 ton per cubic meter of dry sand) of sediment were extracted from the Mekong main stem in Laos, Thailand, Cambodia and Vietnam in 2011. If we consider only sand, which represents 90% of the total bulk on average, then the quantity of sand mined amounted to 31 million cubic meters, i.e. 49.6 million tons in 2011 (Bravard et al. 2013). Sediment trapping associated with upstream hydropower development will also reduce the sediment and nutrient supply to the delta.

The risks of riverbank erosion increase as the river system adjusts to new sediment loads. Reduced sediment supply to the delta is likely to have serious consequences, particularly with regard to increased coastal erosion, a situation which is aggravated by possible sea level rise due to climate change. The sensitivity of the area to the available sediment budget is illustrated by increased bank erosion downstream of areas associated with sand mining (MRC 2010). The impacts of upstream sediment trapping are likely to be long term.

The major fluvial system response to sediment removal is increased erosion downstream since the hydraulic transport capacity exceeds the available supply of material. This leads to downstream impacts such as channel bed degradation, textural changes involving coarsening of surface grain-size distribution, lateral channel expansion and bank erosion. Incision can cause river channels to deepen by 2 or 3 m and a reduction in the over bank flooding, which supplies water, sediment and nutrients to the floodplain and wetlands. Changes in the extent of submerged Mekong delta, because of reduced sediment supply from the river may results in loss of stability of banks of deltaic channels and main coastline (ICEM 2010). Component 1 of the MD-ICRSL will enhance the use of remote sensing tools for monitoring changes in riverbank and coastal erosion.

2.2 Environmental and Social Baseline trends for Delta Estuary (Component 3)

The Delta estuary the riverine levies and alluvial floodplains of Can Tho, Vinh Long, Tien Giang, Long An, Kien Giang, Soc Trang and Ben Tre. The inter-tidal zone is under the mixed influence of upstream hydrology as well as coastal processes such as tidally-induced saline

intrusion and channel-flow reversal. In the delta estuary under mixed coastal and freshwater influence, rice is still an important crop accounting for 30% of provincial area, with brackish aquaculture accounting for a further 11% (Figure 42).

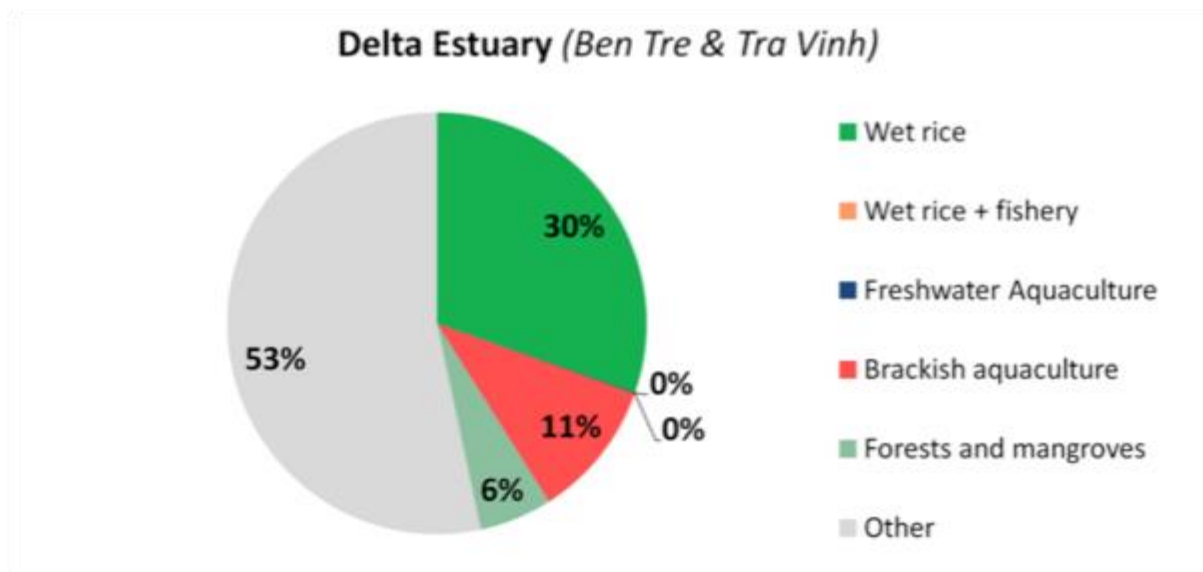


Figure 42: Agricultural land use in Ben Tre & Tra Vinh

As outlined in the MDP, rapid population growth and intensive agricultural and aquaculture development over the past decades have significantly reduced the natural values in the delta estuary. +The wetland types in the delta estuary are shown below in Figure 43.

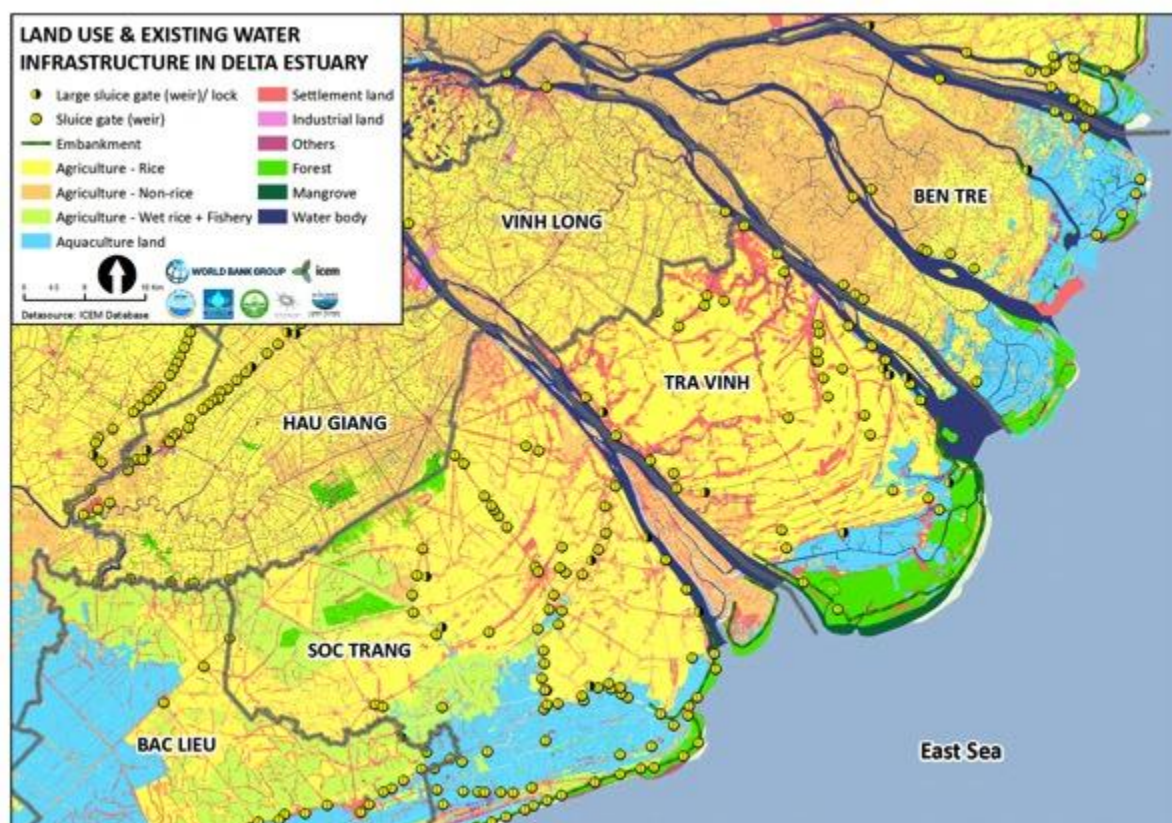


Figure 43: Agricultural land use in the delta estuary

2.2.1 Salinization of the estuary

Salinity intrusion into the delta estuary is reducing agricultural productivity and leading to dry season freshwater shortages. Tidal fluctuations drive saline intrusion more than 80km inland, affecting 40% of the Mekong Delta (SIWRR, 2010). Seven provinces are highly prone to saline intrusion, including: Kien Giang, Tra Vinh, Ben Tre, Soc Trang, Ca Mau, Bac Lieu and Long An, with more than 1 million hectares experiencing salinity concentrations above 4g/L.

The situation of salinity intrusion in Mekong Delta is complex. Each year the situation is different, depending on the magnitude of the previous years' flooding, the ability to supply fresh water upstream in the dry season, the production level of Summer-Autumn paddy and the onset of the rainy season. Salinity can intrude far inland when rains start late, as happened for instance in 1977, 1993, 1998 and in 2004-2005. Highest salinity levels are reached at the end of the dry season, usually in April, but when rains are late sometimes even into early May (MDP 2011). Figure 44 below shows the duration of salinity intrusion (>4g/L) in the delta estuary provinces of Ben Tre, Tra Vinh and Soc Trang.

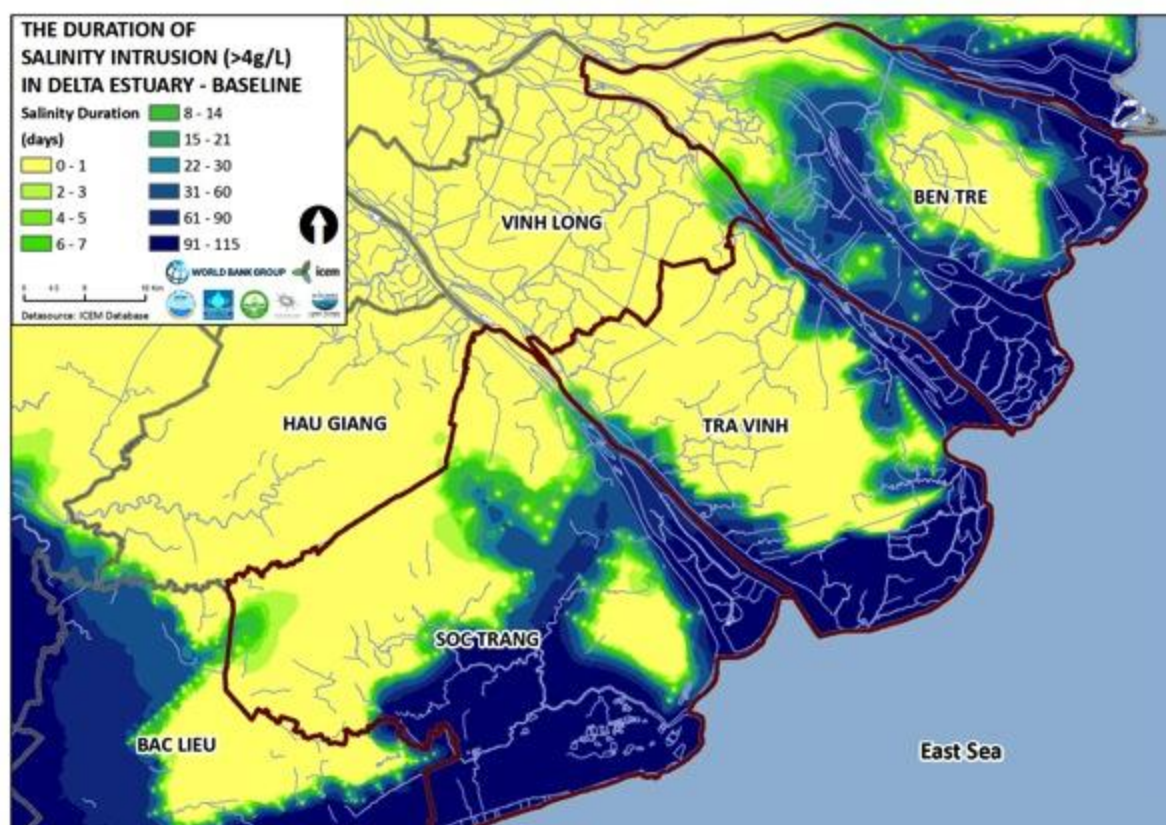


Figure 44: Duration of salinity intrusion (>4g/L) in delta estuary

Expected sea level rise will further increase salinity levels in the delta's river branches and its water network. A sea level rise of one meter would increase the area of 4g/L salinity with 334,000 ha in relation to the benchmark year of 2004, a rise of 25%. Deep salinity intrusion is occurring already during dry seasons, giving rise to significant crop losses. Its extent and frequency is likely to increase due to climate change, giving rise to even higher and more frequent economic losses.

Water control infrastructure has been constructed in coastal provinces to control salinity intrusion into the estuaries. Sea dykes have been constructed along estuaries and coasts in Tien Giang, Tra Vinh, Soc Trang, Bac Lieu, Kien Giang, Ben Tre and Ca Mau provinces. In Ben Tre and Ca Mau the sea dike system is not closed, and only gives partial protection. Both the height and strength of the dykes need upgrading (MDP 2011). The water control infrastructure developed in delta estuary is show below in Figure 45.

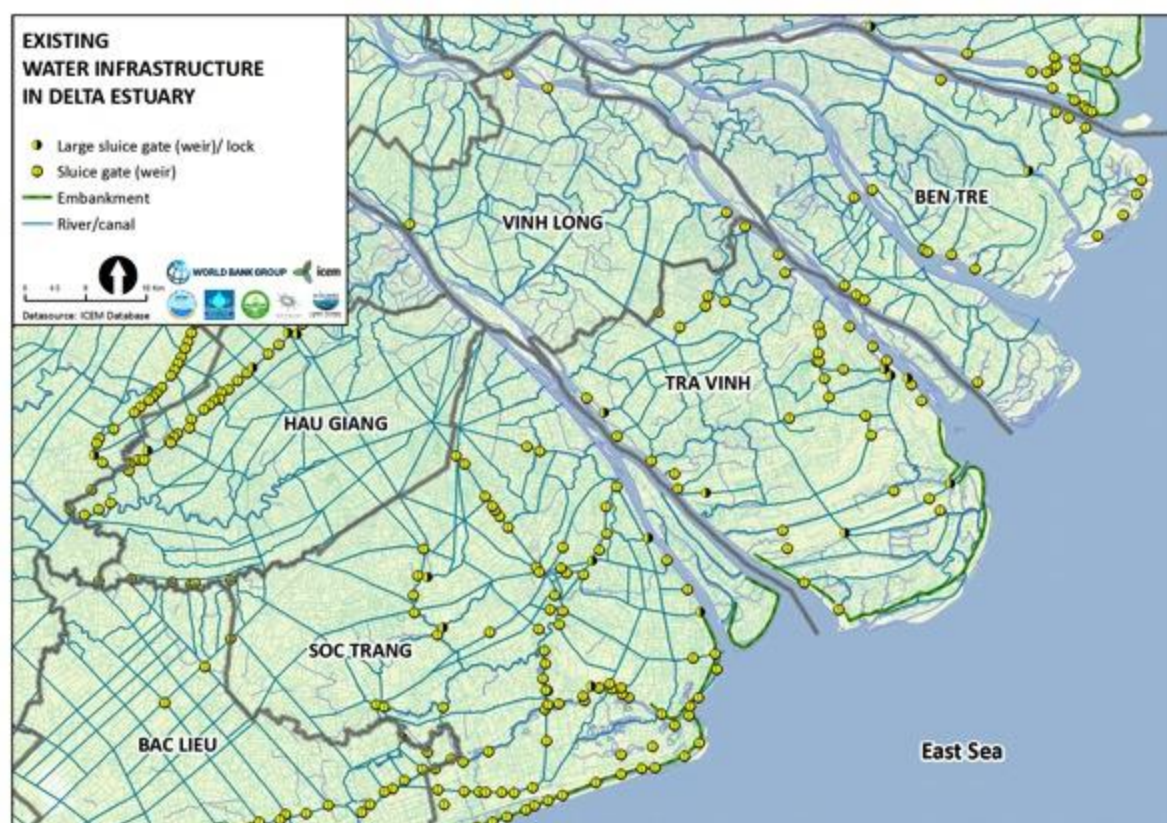


Figure 45: Existing water infrastructure in the delta estuary

Saline water is prevented to enter the canals by the construction of sluices that can be closed when the seawater rises with the tide above river water levels. However, many canals do not have such sluices. For instance along the coastline of the Long Xuyen Quadrangle and Ca Mau peninsula, sluices consist of only one-way gates to let fresh water out and prevent salt water to enter (MDP 2013). Where sluices do exist, this creates conflicts between the freshwater needs of agriculture and the brackish water needs for aquaculture, which will be explored further in the following section. A large decline in capture fisheries is also associated with construction of a sea dykes to cut off saltwater flow into mangrove habitats so it could be used for rice farming. Estuarine fish and other animals rely on these intertidal habitats for feeding so impacts on coastal and freshwater fisheries also need to be considered (MRC 2010).

2.2.2 Estuary balance between saline and freshwater farming

Balancing the needs of freshwater agriculture and brackish aquaculture is required to effectively adapt to salinity intrusion in the delta estuary. In the delta estuary under the influence of both river flow and tidal action, the provincial authorities are faced with the decision to protect freshwater farming systems from salinity intrusion or open up the estuary floodplains for saline tolerant systems. The brackish water environment in the coastal provinces of the delta estuary and are gaining importance, not only due to emerging salinity

issues, but also by the growing importance of adapting to this unfavorable situation. The MDP recommended measures to create a clear borderline between brackish and the freshwater environments. The current areas of freshwater and brackish farming are shown below in Figure 46.

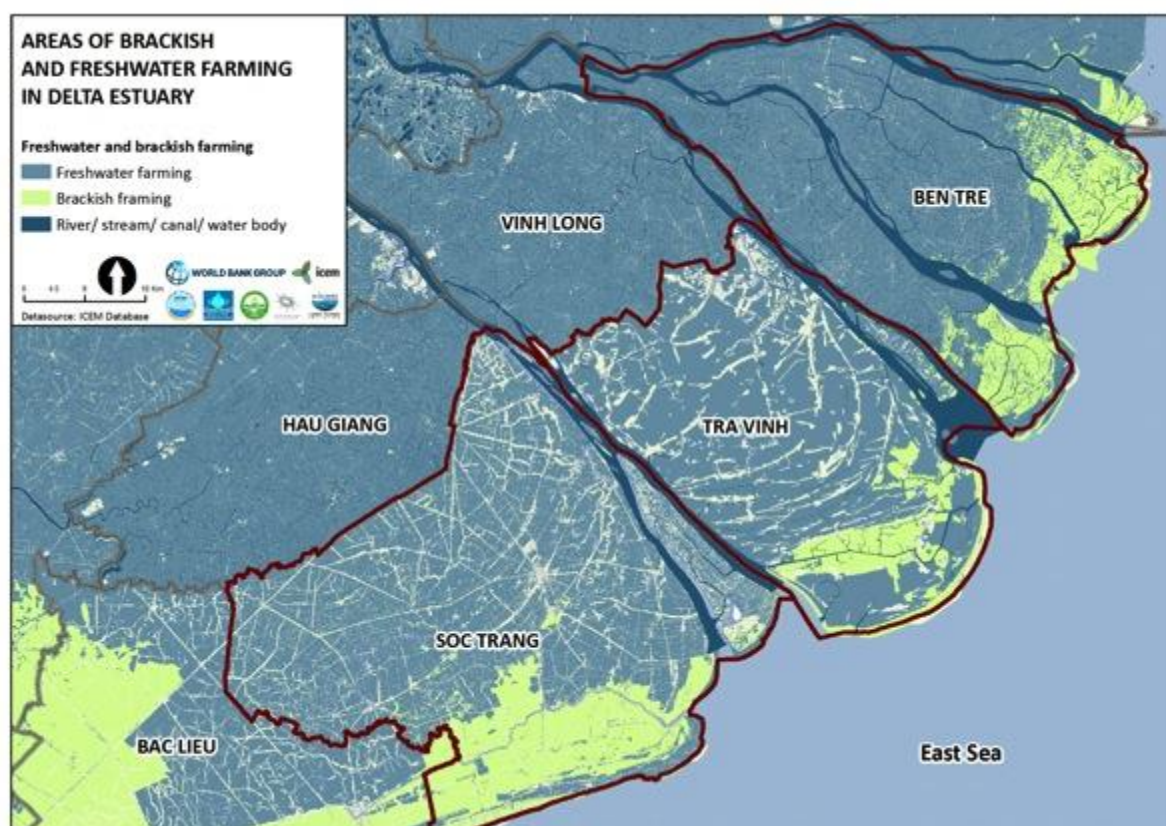


Figure 46: Areas of brackish and freshwater farming in delta estuary

Investment in large water control infrastructure for salinity intrusion will have far-reaching and long-lasting impacts on the delta system. At present Ben Tre province is exploring the potential for a major investment in dykes and sluice gates, including a ring of sluice gates is proposed at the canal entrances for Ben Tre provinces. The provincial authorities are making decisions for the installation of sluices and dykes, which will shape the future land use in the province and the farming opportunities available to local communities. In the past, the development of water control infrastructure has led to conflicting interests and inflexible water management when local rice farmers sought to benefit their income through the conversion of their farms from rice to shrimp (ICEM 2015).

Rice production has been unstable due to droughts, salinity intrusion and excessive flooding in the delta estuary. The yields (ton/ha) for dry season, wet season and traditional rice for Ben Tre, Tra Vinh and Soc Trang from 1995-2013 are shown below in Figure 47.

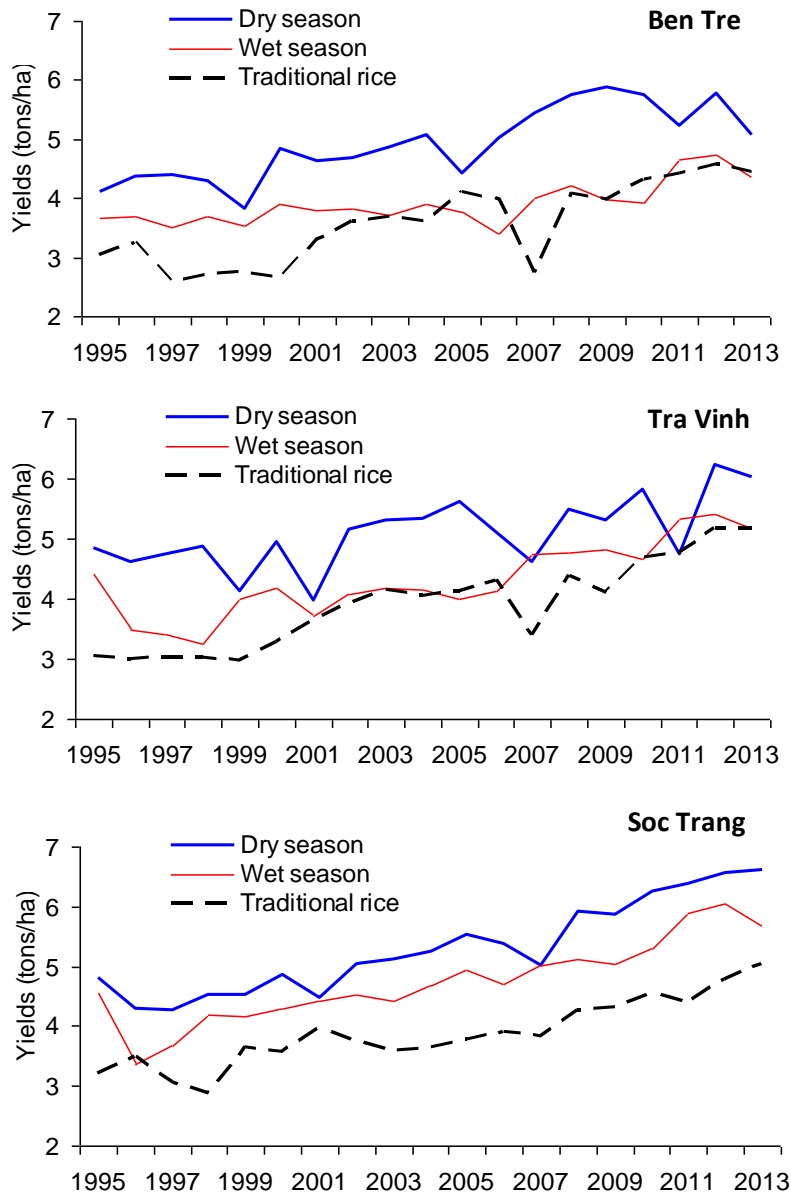


Figure 47: Paddy yields by crop in Ben Tre, Tra Vinh & Soc Trang provinces Source: GSO 2014

Aquaculture area and aquaculture and shrimp production has increased in the delta estuary. From 1995-2013 the total aquaculture area (ha), aquaculture and shrimp production increased significantly in Ben Tre, Tra Vinh and Soc Trang (Figure 48). Aquaculture in the delta estuary primarily includes *pangasius* catfish (Ben Tre and Tra Vinh only), shrimp and bivalve.

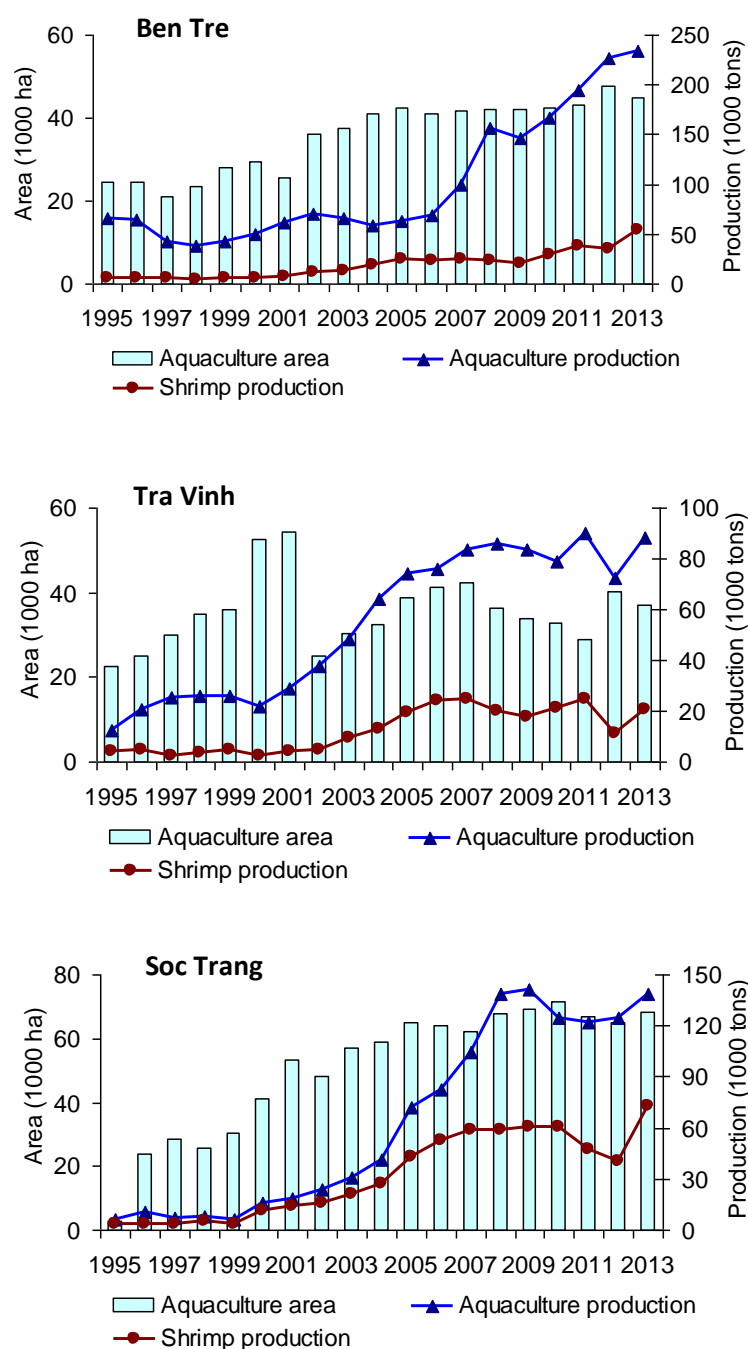


Figure 48: Aquaculture area and production in Ben Tre, Tra Vinh & Song Trang Source: GSO 2014

The areas of high value fruit crops have decreased from 2005 to 2012 due to issues with drought, salinity intrusion and conversion to aquaculture. Figure 49 below highlights the trends in the farming areas of high value fruit crops in Ben Tre, Tra Vinh and Soc Trang.

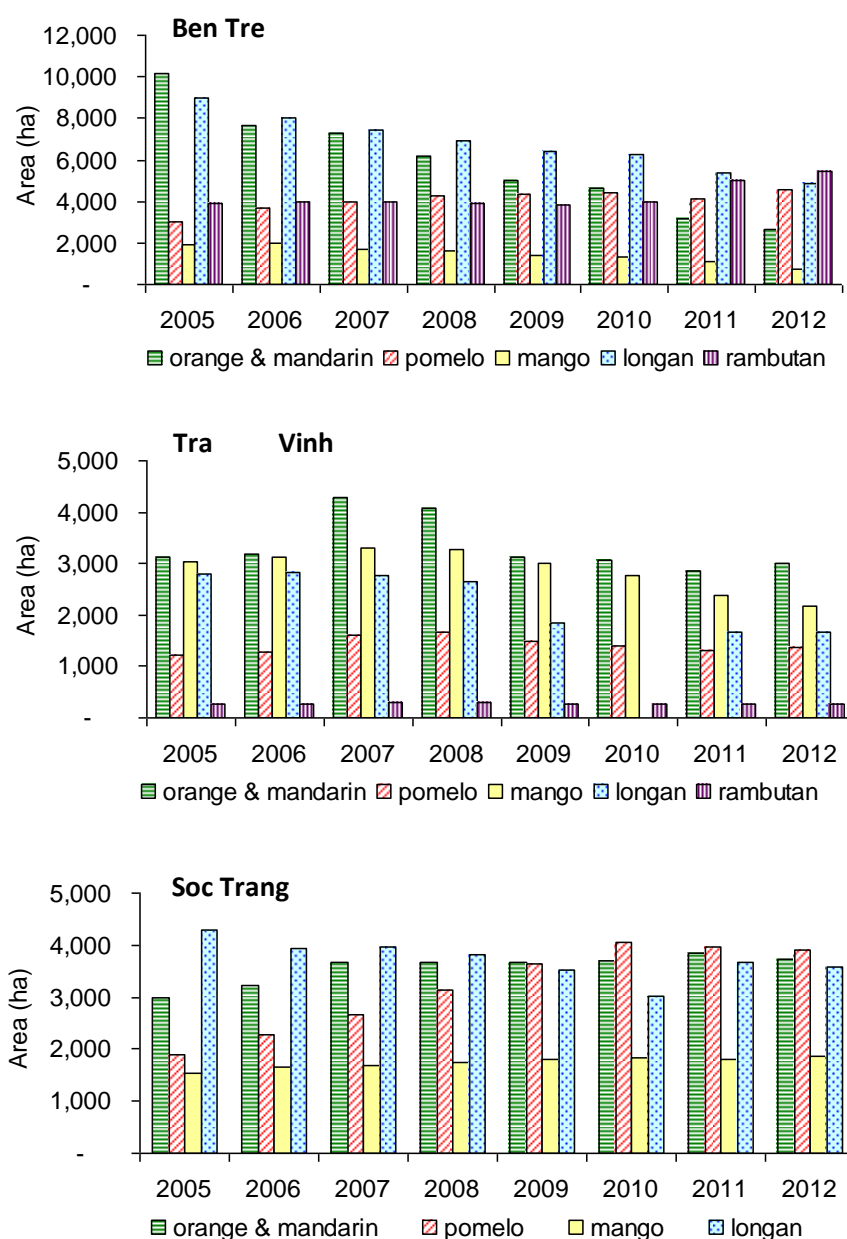


Figure 49: Trends of farming area of high-value fruit crops in Ben Tre, Tra Vinh & Soc Trang Source: GSO 2014

Further agro-research is required to determine the most suitable crops for the delta estuary. The MDP recommended that areas in the mid-eastern delta should also be conserved for higher value fruit-based food products. An interesting example is presented in Ben Tre, the area of cocoa intercropped with coconut grew from about 1,200 ha in 2005 to about 8,200 in 2012 (Figure 50). Coconut crops adapt well to a wide range of salinity levels from 0 to 10g/L.

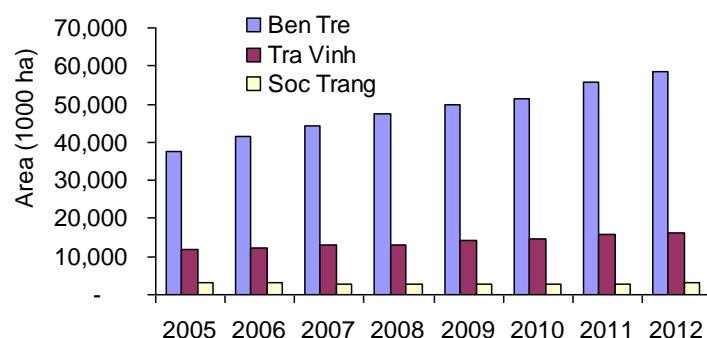


Figure 50: Increasing trends of coconut growing area in Ben Tre province 2005-12

2.2.3 Dry season freshwater shortages and droughts

The Mekong Delta Plan emphasized that coping with dry season fresh water shortages and droughts and securing fresh water supply is a critical challenge for the delta estuary. Ben Tre, Tra Vinh and Soc Trang, like many other coastal provinces suffer from several negative trends, like increased salinity intrusion, decreasing availability of fresh water of sufficient quality, depletion of aquifers. Sea-level rise and dry-season salinity intrusion limit the possibilities for fresh water agriculture and horticulture. Water quality problems put strain on (saline) aquaculture. There is a conflict in water use and availability between brackish areas and fresh areas, and more broadly between agricultural, industrial and domestic water uses. Some parts of Soc Trang and Kien Giang experience dramatic changes in seasonal freshwater available as surface waters in the dry season are almost exclusively dominated by tidal forces and the main source of freshwater is rainfall.

The droughts in 2002 and 2004-05 caused extensive damage to agricultural crops and water supply in the delta estuary. The drought of 2002 was a dry season drought that occurred from February to April. Some 70,300 ha of the delta were affected, with crops lost from 17,800 ha (25 per cent of the affected area). Crop losses in the Mekong Delta accounted for about 25 per cent of the national crop loss and, based on these figures, the cost of this drought to the delta was estimated as approximately US\$24 million (US\$1350 per ha of crop loss) (MRC 2010).

The 2004 wet season finished early, causing salinity intrusion to occur further upstream than normal leading to widespread failure of the autumn rice crop and reduced dry season water supply. More than 104,000 ha of rice were damaged in the delta. Ben Tre was the worst affected province, where 7000 ha of rice and 15,000 ha of fruit orchards worth US\$33 million were destroyed. As well, more than 82,000 families were forced to buy water. The total drought damage bill to the delta was US\$42 million (MARD 2005).

Water supply in many areas, such as Ca Mau, Bac Lieu and Soc Trang water is used without treatment, so water quality is below the required standards. Existing water infrastructure is said to operate at no more than 55-65% of the design capacity. According to the report of the Southern Institute for Urban and Rural Planning, around 60-65% of the urban population in the Delta receive water from the existing supply systems (MDP 2011). The groundwater has been exploited for industrial and agricultural use since 1941. Up till now, there are about 200 large wells to provide water for urban areas and over 25,000 small-scale drilled wells to provide water for rural areas. The current total exploited groundwater amounts in the order of 480,000 m³/day (MDP 2011). The groundwater extraction in the delta estuary is shown below in Figure 51.

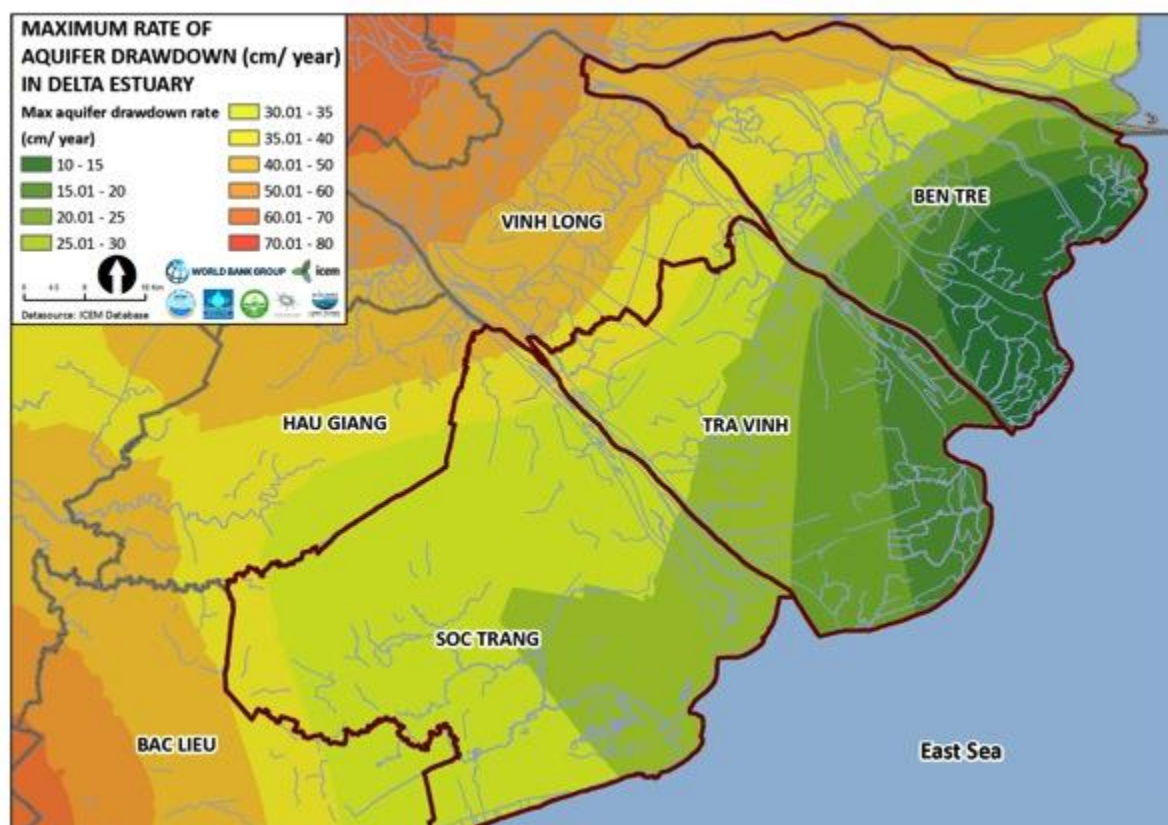


Figure 51: Maximum rate of aquifer drawdown (cm/year) in delta estuary

The freshwater shortages calls for a detailed assessment of the effectiveness of horticulture, freshwater agriculture and brackish aquaculture in the delta estuary, especially as climate change is expected to bring increased average temperatures and further salinity intrusion.

2.2.4 Land use changes from industrialization and urbanization

Industrial development concentrated near the major cities of Can Tho, Long An, Ca Mau and My Tho. The processing of agricultural and aquaculture products is regarded as key to future economic growth, integrated industrial zones near cities are expanding significantly. These developments will have a major impact on population distribution and densities in the delta as more people migrate from rural to urban areas. The competition between provinces to attract industry for their economic growth has led to poor spatial planning in the industrial zones in the Delta are developed randomly. Thousands of hectares of fertile soils along the Mekong and Bassac have been saved for industrial zones instead of agriculture. The land-use analysis in the MDP found that only 30 to 40 % of the industrial zones have actually been occupied by enterprises, even as low as 5% in some places.

Reduced retention area and sea level rise increase the vulnerability to flooding in the delta estuary leading to an increased need for capital-intensive measures for flood protection. Conversion of agricultural land and floodplains decreases flood retention in the wet season, exacerbating the impacts of flooding in urban areas. Raising dykes in the upper delta to enable triple instead of double crop rice takes retention area from the river system decreases and increases flooding risks downstream (MDP 2013; ICM 2015). Drainage capacity is insufficient in many areas during periods of heavy rainfall and high river discharges, causing floodwaters to recede late.

The trend in industrialization and urbanization is growth, taking more land out of agricultural production. At the same time more people need to be provided with food and fresh water. Ongoing industrialization will also take up more space and increase the demand for water as well as the production of wastewater. Both trends will increase the need for proper spatial planning, efficient water supply and further investments in water treatment (MDP 2013).

Ineffective wastewater treatment and industrial growth also places pressure on surface water quality. Levels of heavy metals and oil and grease in surface waters and soils from inland navigation and industrial activities are increasing along the Mekong and Bassac rivers and in canals. Untreated wastewater discharges, industrial pollution and limited sanitary facilities cause local problems of water quality and create health risks in combination with insufficient water supply.

2.2.5 Ethnic minorities and reduced farm-based income

A high number of Khmer people are living in Soc Trang and Tra Vinh, the Khmer are some of the poorest households in the Mekong Delta. The Khmer people living in the Tra Cu district of Tra Vinh are living with poor water sanitation and hygiene conditions and relying on untreated groundwater for drinking (Nhan et al 2008). Their livelihoods totally depend on the natural resource base. Government initiatives have been targeted at the Khmer people and some improvements have been made. However, the proportion of Khmer households with improved income and wealth was lower than other households.

Khmer households and farmers are vulnerable to water related issues in the delta estuary. Khmer farmers in the Soc Trang and Tra Vinh provinces are experiencing rice losses due to salinization and droughts in the early rainy season and pollution of inlet canal water is causing high mortality rates of culture shrimp. The pollution of surface water from disposal of human and animal wastes and run-off agro-chemicals from rice fields are impacting human health, agriculture and aquaculture. Poor sanitation conditions have increased the prevalence of mosquitoes carrying dengue and malaria. A summary of the case study of Khmer people's livelihoods and water-related issues in Soc Trang province is shown below in Table 7, problems and solutions were determined for each of the communes.

Table 7: Water-related problems and solutions in Soc Trang province Source: Nhan et al. 2013

District	Problem	Solutions
Vinh Quoi: Irrigated intensive rice production area	Rice loss by salinity intrusion and inundation Livestock diseases Health and unemployment	Improved rice farming practices and water resources management 2 rice crops with a fish vegetable crop Agricultural extension services Water and sanitation
Tham Don: Rain fed agricultural area	Rice loss by droughts Low fish yields in ponds Livestock diseases Vegetable diseases Surface water pollution	Improved rice farming practices Reduce surface water pollution Improved pond farming practices Crop diversification and bio gas Improved on-farm irrigation systems
Hoa Tu 1:	Rice loss by salinity intrusion Shrimp loss Surface water pollution Unemployment	Sustainable shrimp farming practices Improved shrimp seed management

District	Problem	Solutions
Brackish water area dominated with rice-shrimp farming		Water infrastructure Favorable micro-credit available Agricultural extension services
Vinh Hiep: Brackish/saline water area dominated by shrimp farming	Rice loss by salinity intrusion Shrimp loss Surface water pollution Unemployment	Sustainable shrimp farming practices Improved shrimp seed management Crop diversification Improved water quality of canals Favorable micro-credit available
Vinh Hai: Saline water/rain-fed area dominated with shrimp and upland crop farming	Upland crop production Depression of ground water Instability of output market prices Vegetable diseases Unemployment Mangrove-aquaculture systems Poor planning and institution Poor farming technology	Upland crop production Crop water saving practices Cattle production Improved water and sanitation Agricultural extension services available Mangrove-aquaculture systems Improved institution in land ownership Mangrove- extensive shrimp farming Community based crab culture in mangroves

The Vinh Hai commune has a large proportion of Khmer households experiencing higher poverty and declining wealth compared to other sites. Interventions to increase the wealth of poor households are of great importance to sustainable reduction of rural poverty in the delta estuary (Nhan et al. 2013). Further improvement of natural resource uses and job creation for poor people in these communes is required. The problems and solutions listed in the table above highlight that, even within the one province, the agricultural extension services and interventions designed need to be context specific, considering water resources issues and types of agricultural activities.

2.3 Environmental and Social Baseline trends for Peninsula (Component 4)

Delta peninsula: Eastern and southern regions of the Delta, where coastal processes dominate local hydrology and local rainfall is the main freshwater input. On the delta peninsula dominated by coastal influences and limited freshwater inputs, brackish aquaculture is the dominant land use accounting for 41% of the provincial area (Figure 52).

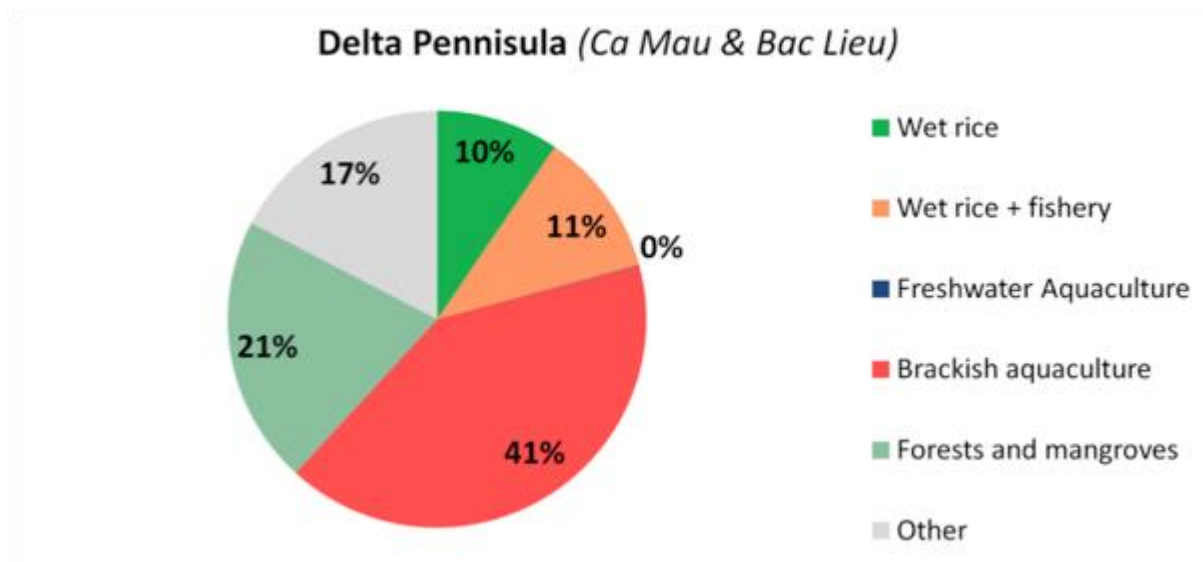


Figure 52: Agricultural land use in Ca Mau & Bac Lieu provinces

The land use types for the delta peninsula are shown below in Figure 53. The mangroves and forest areas remaining in the delta are critical for the natural resource base and coastal protection from storm surges and salinity intrusion.

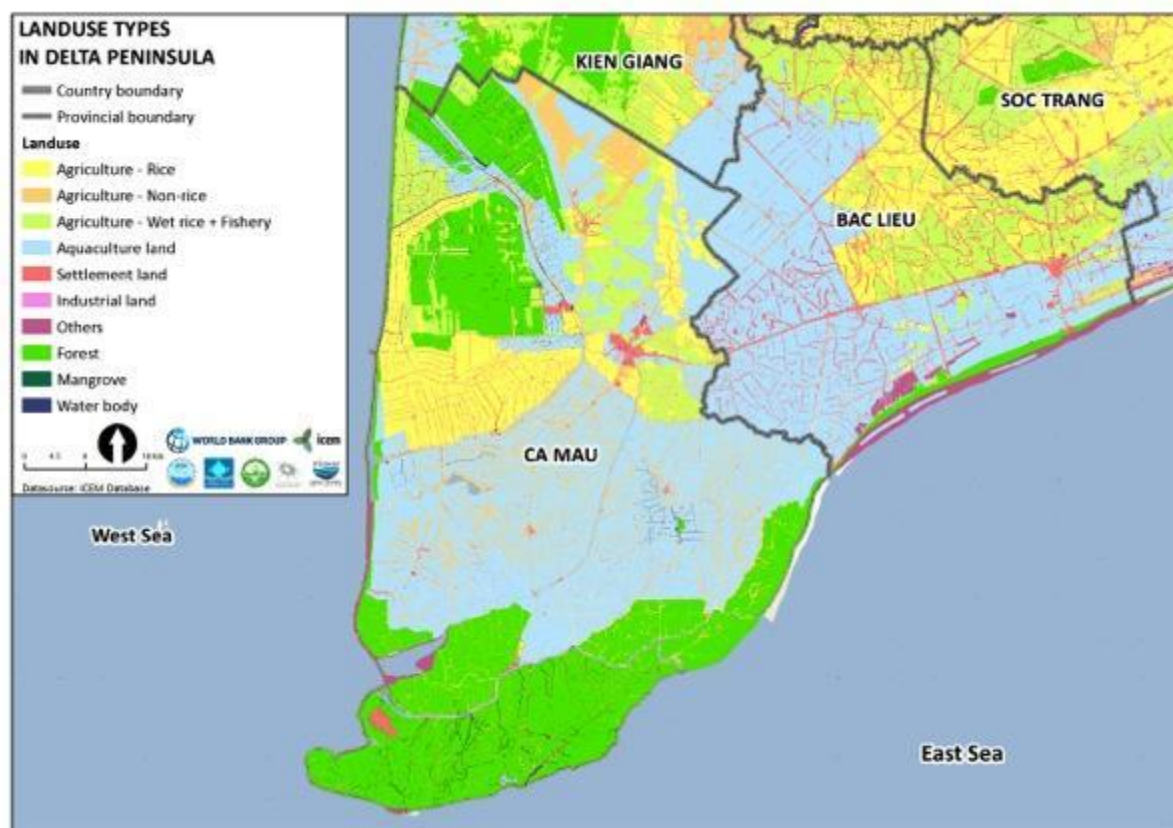


Figure 53: Land use types in delta peninsula

2.3.1 Delta shrinking and land subsidence

The coasts of the delta are tide dominated and affected by: (a) the discharge and sediment regime of the Mekong, (b) the tidal and wave regime of the East Sea, and (c) the Gulf of

Thailand, as well as coastal long shore currents. The coastal progradation rate of the delta has not been continuous over the last 6ka. Through core studies, Ta et al. (2001) estimated the coastal progradation between 5300 to 3560 cal year BP to be 17-18 m year⁻¹. Subsequently, the progradation rate decreased to average 13-14 m yr⁻¹ over the last 3500 years, forming a delta plain of 18,000km. The average accretion rate was 6km² yr⁻¹, with most progradation around the mouths of the distributaries and due to long shore drift on the western side of the Ca Mau Peninsula - which expanded westward at 1.2 km² yr⁻¹ between 1885 and 1985. Due to the dynamic processes on the coastline, in some areas land loss of ~30m y⁻¹ has been recorded, but in other places, some land accretion is still occurring though this is reducing (Albers et al. 2013).

Marine and fluvial processes of the delta maintain a balance between accretion and erosion of the delta land mass. For the past 20 years the East Sea provinces of Ben Tre, Tien Giang, and Tra Vinh have been growing with net accretion rates of 1-10m/ year. Ca Mau has experienced net erosion over the past 20 years with rates increasing from 1m/year to 16m/year during that period. The provinces of Bac Lieu and Soc Trang, aggrading before 2002 at rates of 16-24 m/year, are now eroding at rates of 11-16m/year (Figure 54). These increases in rates of coastal erosion are alarming and require an enhanced management in provinces like Ben Tre, Tra Vinh and Tien Giang. In the delta peninsula, the provinces of Ca Mau, Bac Lieu and Soc Trang high historic rates are projected to continue increasing indicate that the business-as-usual approach to coastal protection is not working and a new approach is needed to protect coastlines and valuable aquaculture and agriculture.

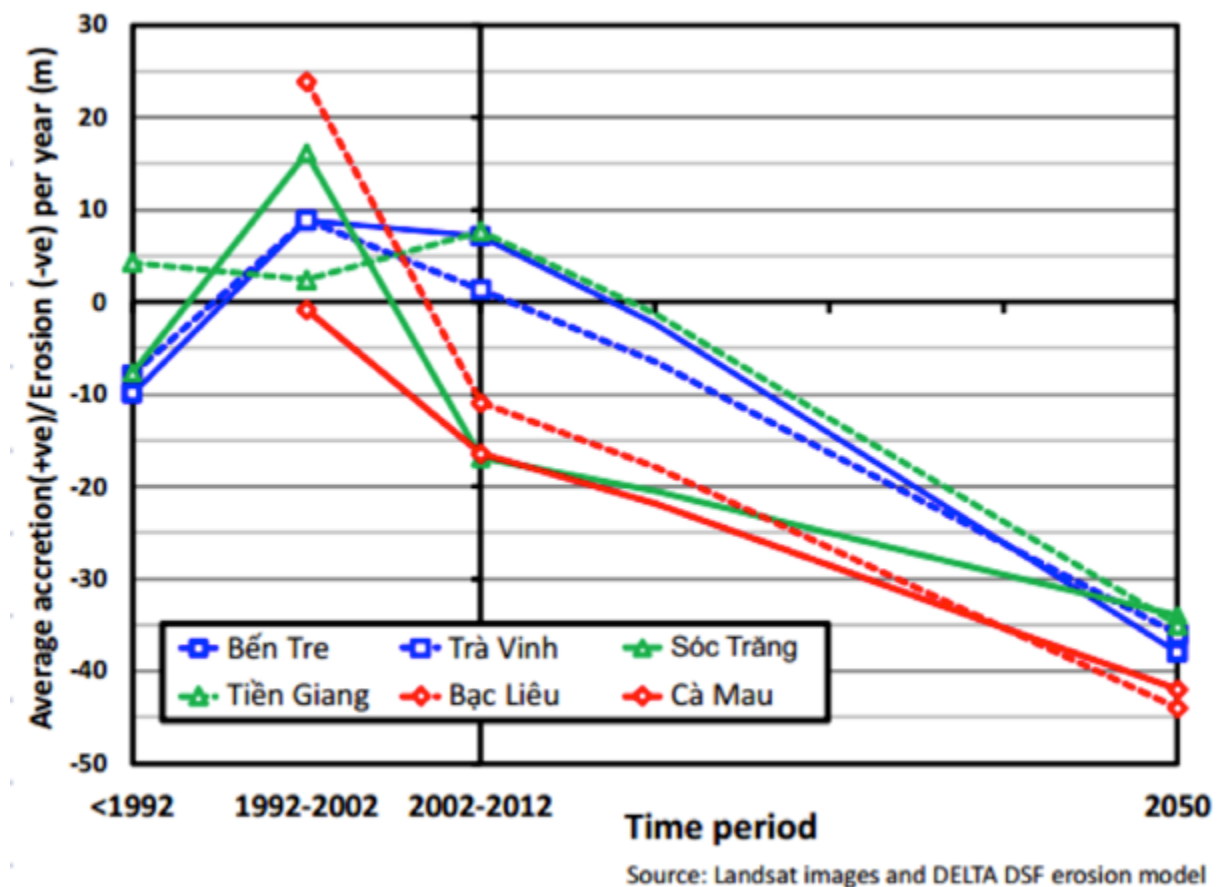


Figure 54: Net erosion and accretion rates in the East Sea

Satellite images from 1992, 2002 and 2011 were digitized to show the impacts of coastal erosion and deposition in the delta peninsula for Bac Lieu & Ca Mau (Figure 55) and the Ca Mau Peninsula (Figure 56). The Ca Mau peninsula is extremely vulnerable to the impacts of coastal erosion. A decreasing river sediment supply to the coast is deemed to be the prime cause of this erosion, and most likely due to existing dam retention of sediment and to massive channel-bed sand mining in the delta, an activity on the increase over the last decade (Anthony et al. 2015).



Figure 55: Coastal erosion and deposition in Ca Mau - Bac Lieu



Figure 56: Coastal erosion and deposition in the Ca Mau peninsula

Under a 2050 scenario with high climate change and high hydropower expansion, all six of the coastal provinces along the East Sea will experience rates of erosion between 34 to 44m/year, representing rates of erosion double anything experienced over the past 40 years. This will be explored further in Section 3. High-resolution satellite images show that the Mekong delta is now largely prone to erosion, with shore-line retreat over the period 2003–2012 having affected over 50% of the > 600 km-long coast, and even up to 90% of the muddy South China Sea coast (Anthony et al. 2015). The coastal erosion tool was used to determine the coastal line of the delta peninsula in 2050 (Figure 57). Investments enhancing monitoring and information systems under Component 1 will use remote sensing tools to monitor changes in coastal and riverbank erosion.

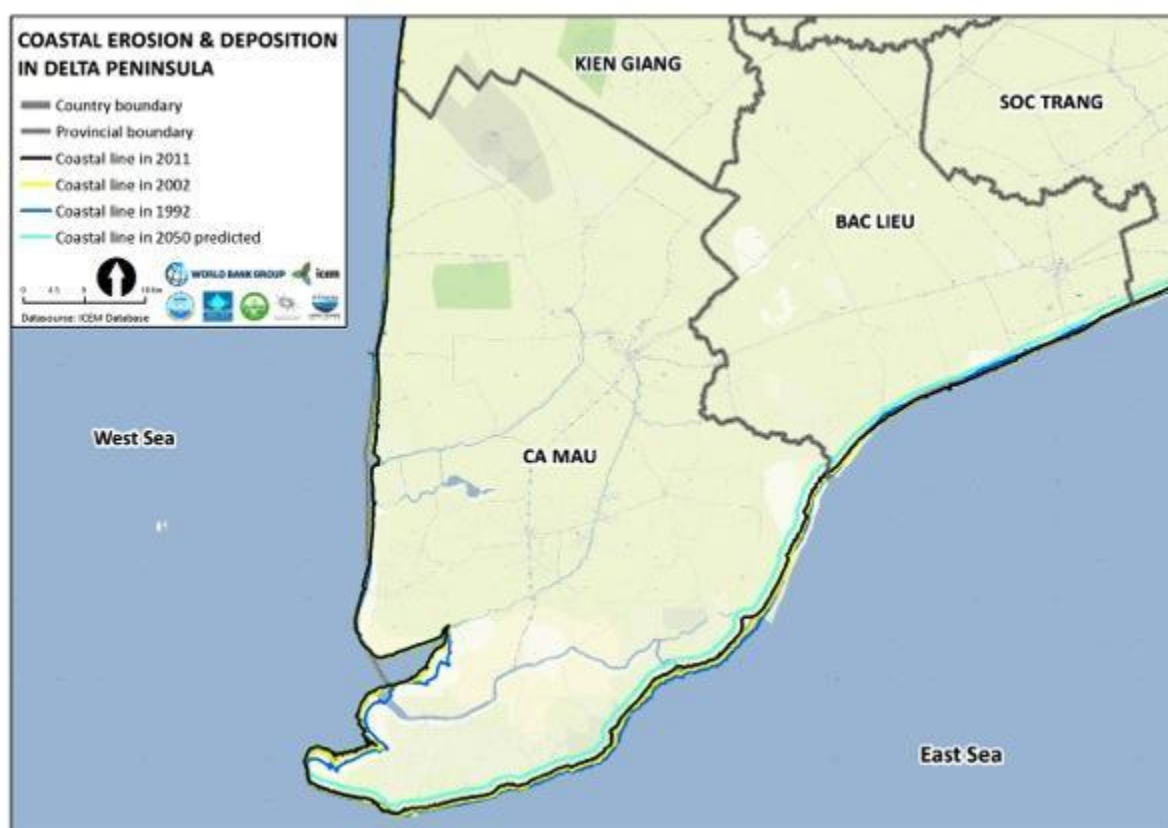


Figure 57: Coastal erosion and deposition in delta peninsula

The Ca Mau peninsula remains hydrological isolated from the surface water processes of the Mekong River and its distributaries. This means that the provinces of Ca Mau and Bac Lieu and some parts of Soc Trang and Kien Giang experience dramatic changes in seasonal freshwater available as surface waters in the dry season are almost exclusively dominated by tidal forces and the main source of freshwater replenishment to the surface water system is direct rainfall with the monsoon rains. The timing and magnitude of wet season rainfall can have significant impacts on farming systems and groundwater dependency of the peninsula where rates of historic groundwater abstraction are the highest for the whole delta region (Figure 58). In the coastal zones a critical area identified in the MDP was that intensification of groundwater exploitation has increased dramatically over the last decade, driven by the widespread diversification of shrimp farmers into horticulture and, to a lesser extent, salinity control in shrimp farming. Further groundwater monitoring complemented by groundwater use studies will be carried out under Component 1 of this project.

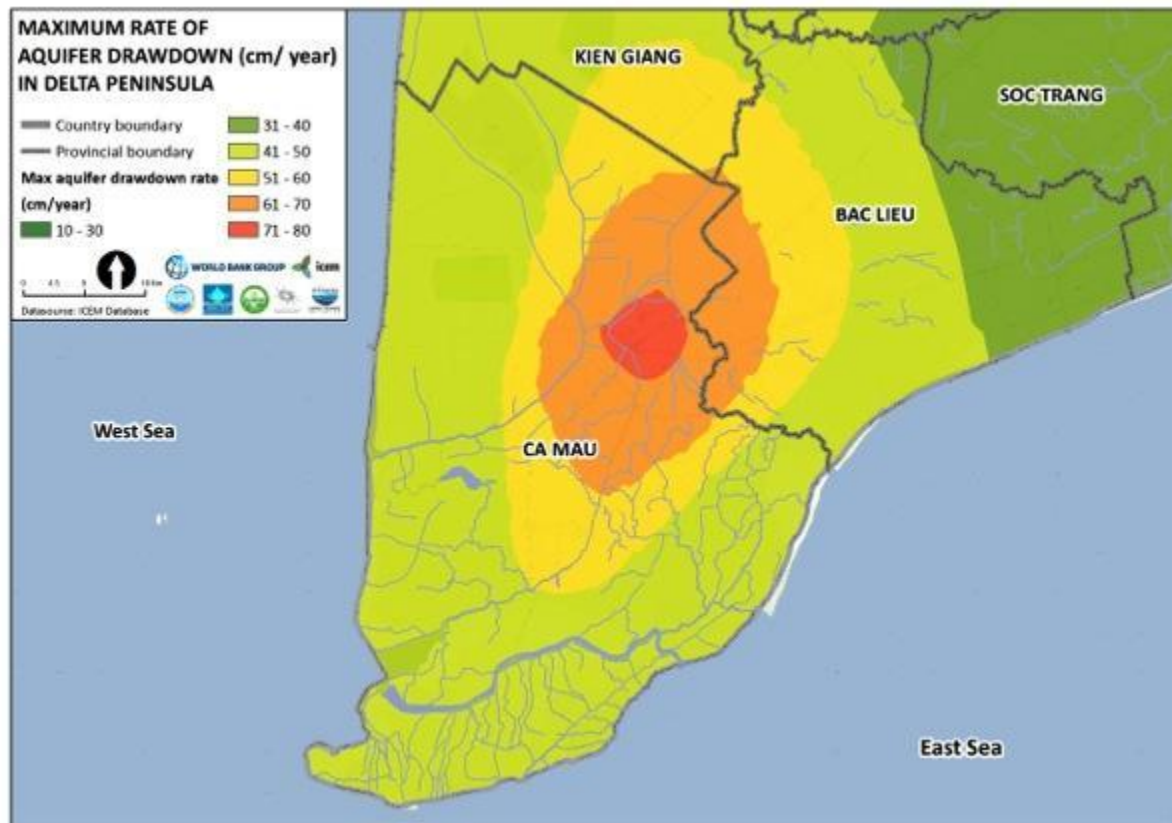


Figure 58: Maximum rate of aquifer drawdown (cm/year) in delta peninsula

Land subsistence is occurring due to sustained, long-term drainage and groundwater extraction. Considerable groundwater extraction from over one million wells in the Mekong Delta, for domestic, agricultural, and industrial use, is taking place, resulting in a steady decline in groundwater levels (Wagner et al. 2012). As water is removed from the sedimentary structure, pore pressure is reduced and compaction occurs between layers, manifest as subsidence. Groundwater abstraction coupled with the areas unique geology, and natural land consolidation processes of a young delta like the Mekong have resulted in rates of land subsidence in the order of 0.5 – 3.3cm/year (Erban et al, 2014), with hotspots centered on the Cau Mau peninsula and the central floodplain areas of Can Tho, Vinh Long, and Tien Giang (Figure 59).

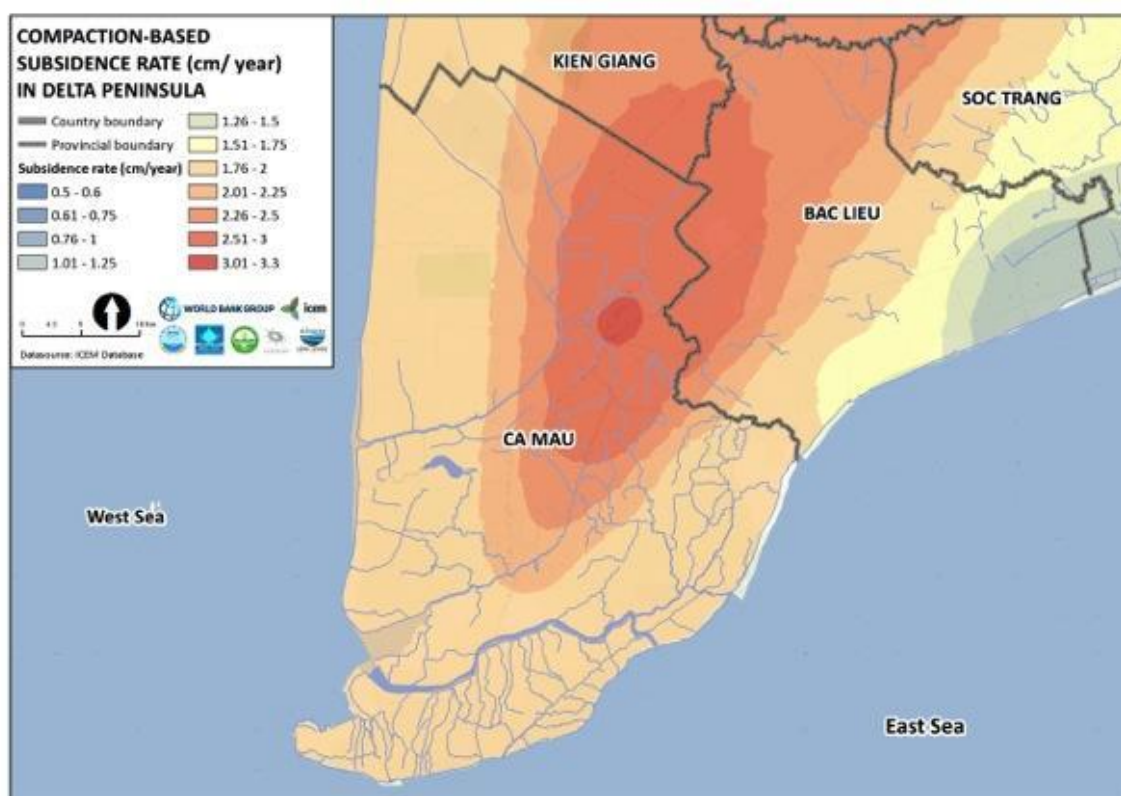


Figure 59: Subsidence rate (cm/year) in the delta peninsula

As outlined in the MDP the issue of flooding, groundwater and land subsidence is not well understood in the integrated context. Component 1 of the MD-ICRSL will establish groundwater and surface water monitoring and use remote sensing to measure changes in coastal and riverbank erosion.

2.3.2 Deterioration of mangroves

The area of mangroves has rapidly declined over time in the coastal areas of Vietnam. Mangroves declined from an estimated 408,500 ha in 1943 to 290,000 ha in 1962, to 252,000 ha in 1982; and to 155,290 ha in 2000 (Government of Vietnam, 2005). However, there is evidence that the area of mangroves increased in 2006 due to a National Action Plan for mangrove protection and development (Government of Vietnam, 2005). Despite this national increase, some areas in the Mekong Delta and other coastal areas are still in decline.

In Ca Mau and Bac Lieu provinces, the mangroves play an important role in ecosystem productivity and protecting coastal communities from storm surges and coastal erosion. The wetland types in the delta peninsula are shown below in Figure 60.

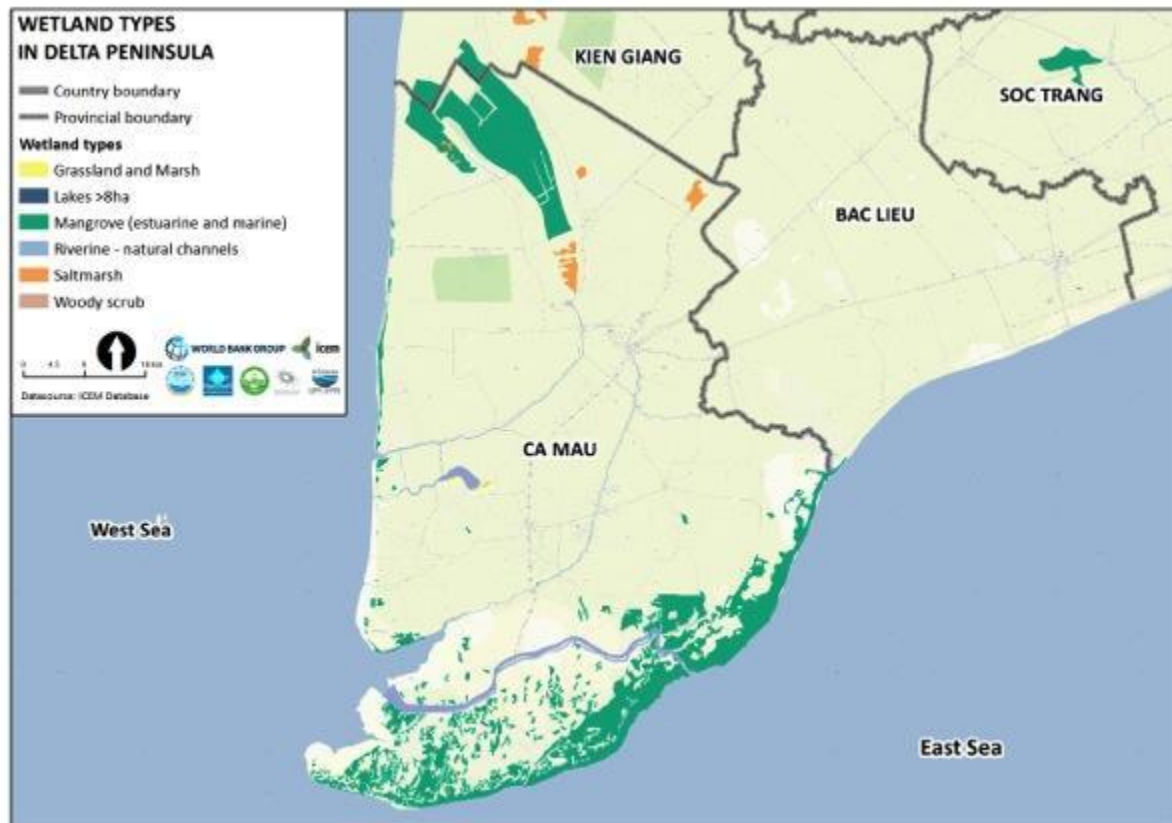


Figure 60: Wetland types in delta peninsula

In the delta peninsula demand for land for shrimp ponds and agriculture has resulted in loss of mangrove forests. Deforestation of mangroves in the Mekong Delta is mainly due to unplanned shrimp farming, urban development and the limited regulations and institutions in relation to integrated coastal management (Nguyen et al. 2013). The destruction of mangroves in the coastal zones of the delta for shrimp ponds took place in the 1990s. Deforestation slowed down after the Government enforced stricter management measures in 2000, and farmers also acknowledged that the sediment in mangroves were not suitable for shrimp farming (Nhuong et al. 2006).

Increased fragmentation of mangroves has reduced capacity to withstand coastal processes, such as wave actions, coastal currents and wind at exposed and semi-exposed coastline locations. Satellite images from 1992, 2002 and 2015 have been used to show the changes in mangrove forests in the Ca Mau peninsula (Figure 61). The mangrove and land use has also been mapped highlighting the areas of mixed forest, *Rhizophora*, *Rhizophora* and shrimp, *Avicennia* and intensive shrimp.

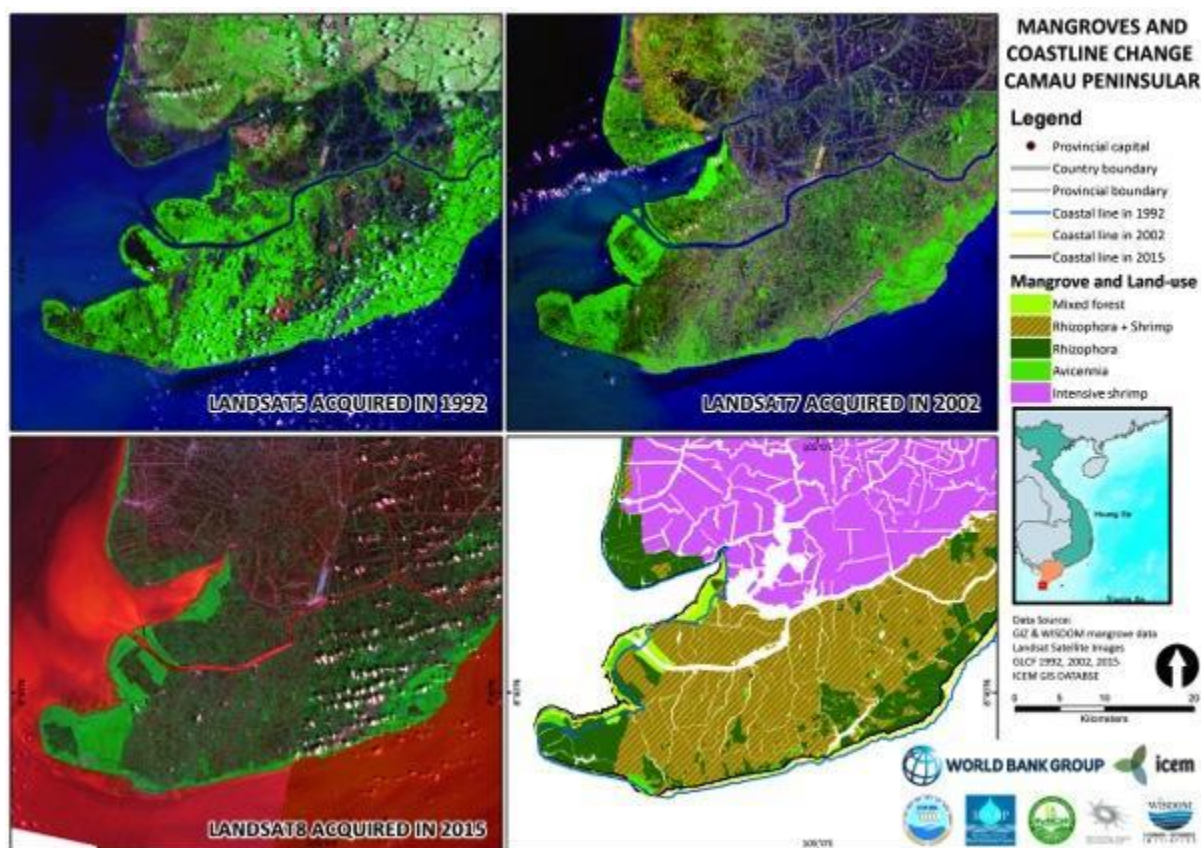


Figure 61: Mangroves and coastline change in Ca Mau peninsula

Mangroves play a critical role in biodiversity and ecosystem productivity in the delta peninsula. The estuaries and floodplains as well as mangrove and Melaleuca forest and mudflats are the most important wetland ecosystems in the Mekong Delta. The fauna of the delta include 23 species of mammals, 386 species and sub- species of birds, 35 species of reptiles and six species of amphibians. At least 460 species of fish are known from the delta (Vidthayanon 2008). The complex of mudflats and area of open generating mangrove provides excellent habitat for migrating shorebirds, herons, egrets, gulls and terns, with 93 species of birds from 38 families listed, including seven species listed in the IUCN Red Book (MRC 2010).

Mangroves provide a wide range of ecosystem services and products to supplement community livelihoods. Mangroves are also critical to livelihoods in the delta peninsula by providing habitat for fish and shrimp and an important forestry resource supporting local livelihoods for construction materials, firewood other forest products. The Melaleuca forests provide a valuable harvest of honey from wild bees' nests, amounting to five or six liters of honey per ha per year. Mangroves in the coastal areas of the delta and Melaleuca forests in floodplains help to protect against erosion and trap nutrients that contribute to the high agricultural and fisheries productivity of the LMB (MRC 2010). Erosion control and entrapment of sediments is also relevant in coastal ecosystems where removal of mangroves can lead to loss of land, saline intrusion and exposure of coastal populations and assets to increased risk from coastal hazards (FAO 2006).

The destruction of mangrove forests has increased vulnerability to storm surges and coastal erosion. Large areas of coastlines are now eroding or are at risk of erosion in the near future (Duke et al., 2010). This is resulting in the loss of key mangrove resources and

associated ecosystem services, and also directly threatening the livelihoods of local communities through increased vulnerability of coastal communities to storm surges and typhoons. Priority and “no-regret” measures developed in the MDP for coastal zones promote the use of mangrove forests to protect the coastline against flooding and inundation in storms. Mangrove forests also increase sedimentation and accretion, and reduce erosion.

National and provincial authorities are integrating climate resilient policies into wider programs of coastal zone management. Major investments have been committed to upgrading national and provincial dike systems. MARD is carrying out a national plan worth US\$109 million to restore mangroves along Viet Nam’s coastline (MRC 2010). In some areas of the delta, dykes are being strengthened or heightened and mangroves are being planted to improve protection from storm surges and coastal erosion. The GIZ Integrated Coastal and Mangrove Protection (ICMP) programme is supporting Viet Nam to manage its coastal ecosystems in order to strengthen resilience to climate change. The restoration of mangroves is an important component of the ICMP (GIZ 2015).

Efforts are also being made to regenerate the mangrove areas and implement more sustainable shrimp farming practices. Farmers in the coastal areas of Ca Mau province (where at least 70% of farming area is mangrove) are practicing organic shrimp farming (Nguyen and Fisher 2014). The preservation and gradual regeneration of mangrove forests is not only critical for ecology and biodiversity of the delta, but also in terms of natural wastewater treatment for shrimp farming and aquaculture (MDP 2013). Remote sensing will be established under Component 1 to monitor the changes in mangrove area in coastal zones.

2.3.3 Intensive shrimp farming

Aquaculture is no doubt one of the fastest growing sectors in the Delta. Out of 337,614 households in Vietnam engaged in shrimp farming, 292,522 (86%) of households were from the Mekong Delta. Aquaculture area and production increased significantly in Bac Lieu and Ca Mau provinces from 2000 as a result of the agricultural diversification policy by the government (Figure 62). Farmers shifted from rice production to shrimp based farming systems for higher farm-based income.

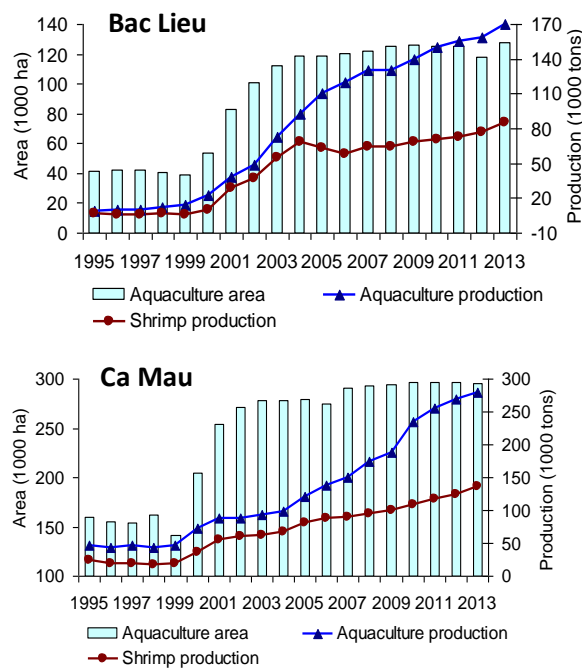


Figure 62: Aquaculture area and production in Bac Lieu and Ca Mau provinces

From 2000 onwards the area of brackish and freshwater farms increased significantly, particularly in the Ca Mau, Bac Lieu and Kien Giang provinces. Shrimp farming has replaced rice in some areas. Figure 63 below shows the areas of brackish and freshwater farming in the Delta peninsula.

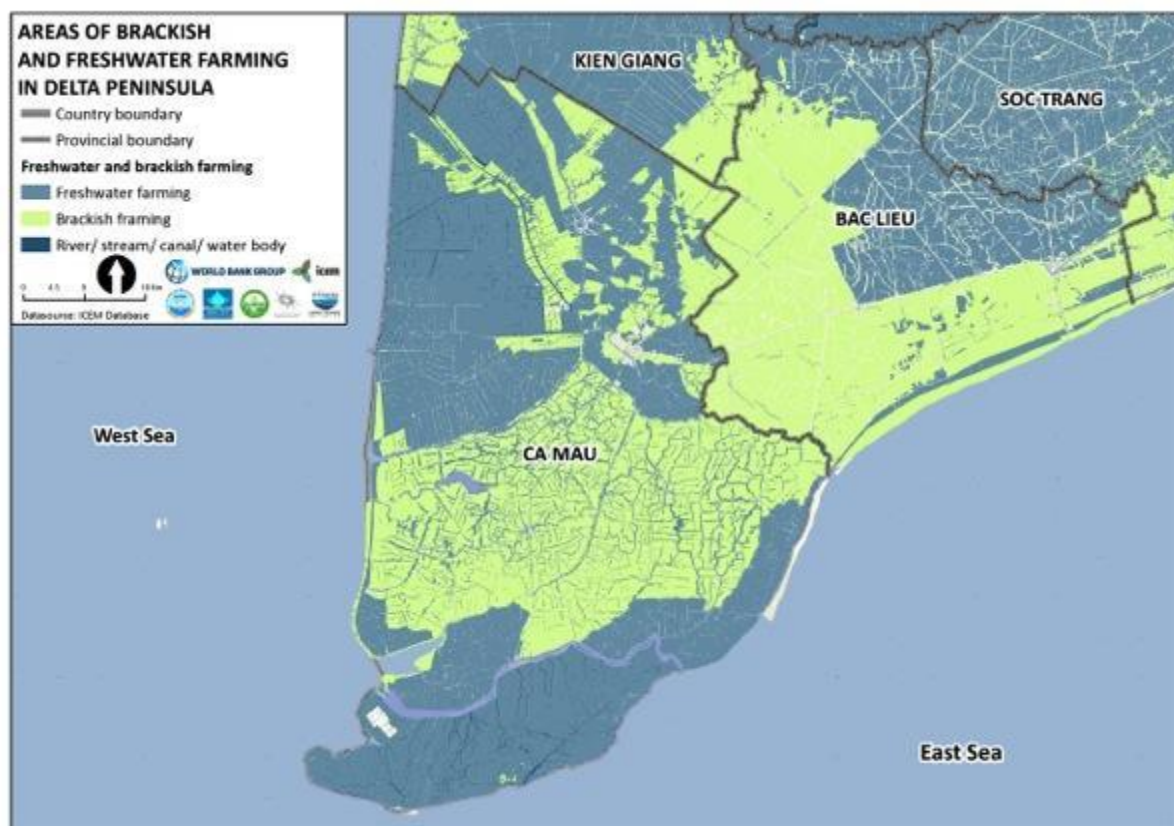


Figure 63: Areas of brackish and freshwater farming in delta peninsula

The shift from traditional rice cultivation to export-oriented shrimp farming has been accelerated in the delta peninsula, and to a lesser extent the delta estuary. Vietnam produces both fresh-water shrimp and brackish-water shrimp, the latter accounts for 97% of the total production. High market demand for shrimp and supportive policies from the government were the key drivers in the rapid expansion of shrimp farming in brackish water zones. Technological advances providing high-productivity plant and animal breeds, new fertilizers and pesticides have also played a crucial role in this transformation (Nguyen & Fisher 2014). Shrimp farming quickly established as an important economic sector that created employment, increased farm-based incomes, and earned foreign currency for the country.

Ca Mau has the largest area (50% of the region's total area) dedicated to shrimp raising. The cultivation area increased from 90,551 ha in 1999 to 257,000 ha in 2008 (Mai Trong Thong et al. 2006; Lan 2013). The area of shrimp farming in Ca Mau and Bac Lieu are shown below in Figure 64.

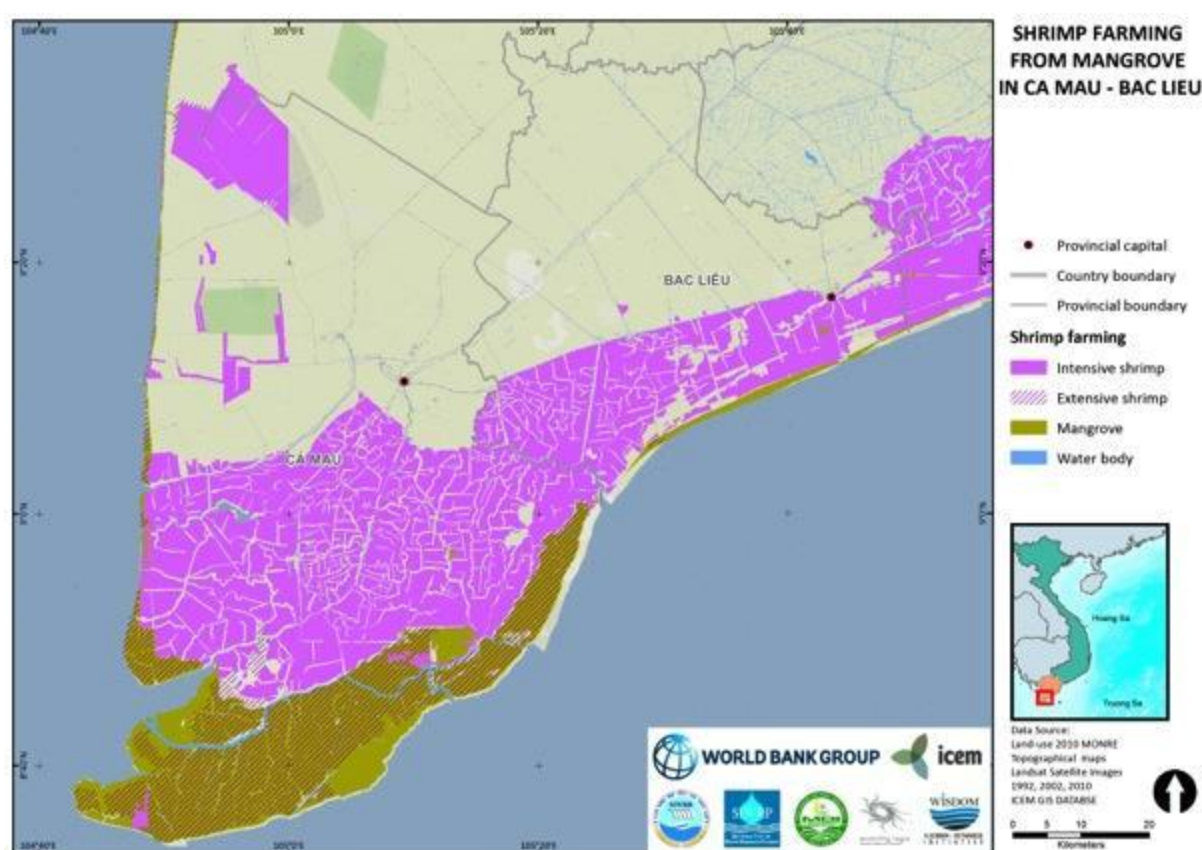


Figure 64: Shrimp farming areas in Ca Mau & Bac Lieu

In recent years, several major shrimp crop failures have occurred from disease and water pollution in the delta peninsula. The large areas of land required for extensive and semi-intensive farming have led to significant natural habitat loss through conversion of wetlands and mangroves into shrimp ponds. However, the negative environmental impacts from shrimp disease outbreaks, natural resource degradation, water use conflicts, food safety problems, and most recently, tariff barriers, are major concerns for the shrimp farming sector (Khang 2008). Globally, environmental problems associated with shrimp farming include destruction of mangroves and wetlands, salinity intrusion, freshwater pollution from chemicals and nutrients and the biological contamination of wild fish and shrimp populations (Lan 2013).

Salinity is a major issue associated with shrimp farming. The system of dykes and dams preventing saline movement was removed, while many canals were enlarged or newly dug. As a result, a dense and vast system of canals characterizes shrimp-farming communities, especially those engaging in extensive shrimp culture (Figure 65). The investment in large water control infrastructure has led to conflicting interests and inflexible water management when local rice farmers sought to benefit their income through the conversion of their farms from rice to shrimp.

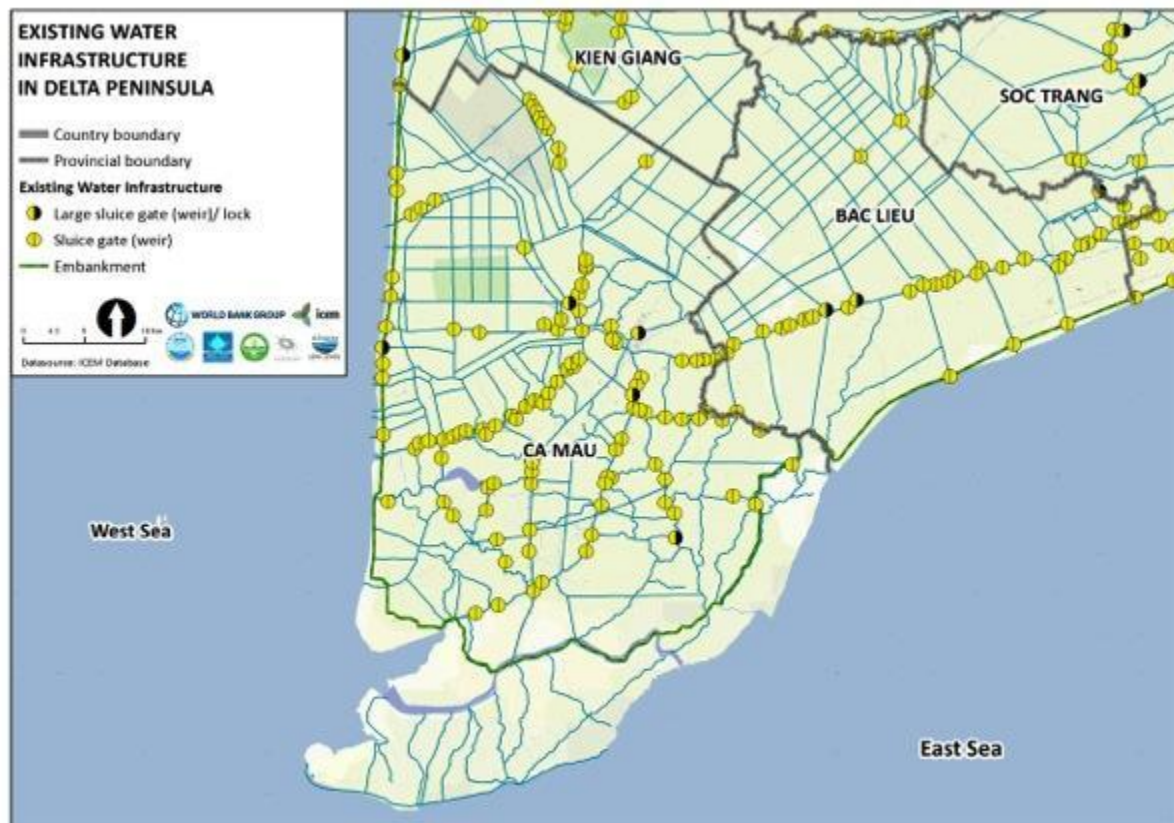


Figure 65: Existing water infrastructure in the delta peninsula

Water quality is essential to shrimp farming. Farmers need to treat water appropriately before releasing water from their shrimp ponds into rivers or canals to avoid water pollution and biological contamination. Water often polluted with unconsumed feed, chemicals, and possibly diseases is released directly into rivers or canals exposing downstream and neighboring shrimp farms to negative impacts. Water quality is a decisive factor for a successful shrimp crop and the water is easily contaminated by the practices of individual shrimp farmers.

Intensive shrimp farming is also affecting groundwater, leading to further land subsidence in the Delta Peninsula. Fresh water is normally used to mix with seawater in order to make up for evaporation in ponds and produce the optimum salinity, especially in the dry season. Using freshwater from groundwater allows saltwater intrusion into groundwater reservoirs and the loss of water supplies for agriculture and domestic purposes (Khang 2008). The social impacts of shrimp farming including the increase of poverty and landlessness, food insecurity, and impacts on health and education will be explored further in the following section.

2.3.4 Natural resource dependency of the poor and landless

Local communities are often excluded from intensive shrimp farming due to its requirement for high capital investment. Instead many local poor people have sold or leased their ponds instead of participating in shrimp farming themselves (Lan 2013). Some farmers were forced to take on shrimp farming as the irrigation systems favored saline water. The Khmer ethnic groups are further disadvantaged as extension services for shrimp farming are often provided only in the Vietnamese language.

Poorer communities are experiencing reduced income and food insecurity in the delta peninsula. Shrimp farming has become the main agricultural activity of the majority of households in Ca Mau. Due to the high risk of shrimp farming which cannot ensure a stable source of income, vulnerable communities have experienced high levels of food insecurity. In the former rice-cultivation period, local farmers also grew rice, fruit, and vegetables and raised, pigs, and poultry for their own consumption. People could also catch various freshwater fish that were abundant in canals prior to the development of shrimp farming (Lan 2013). This has led to increased exploitation of natural resources in the coastal zones and within protected areas in the delta peninsula. Human settlements are growing threats to the biodiversity and natural resources of the delta peninsula (MRC 2011).

High levels of rural to urban migration are occurring in the delta peninsula. The problems of high population density, low educational levels, underdeveloped infrastructures and the scarcity of economic opportunities have led to unemployment and labor excess in coastal areas (Khang 2008). Shrimp farming provides less employment opportunities for unskilled labor than rice production. Most young people are migrating from coastal areas to urban areas for employment and economic opportunities. The proportion of in-migration and out-migration for Bac Lieu and Ca Mau provinces are shown below in Figure 66.

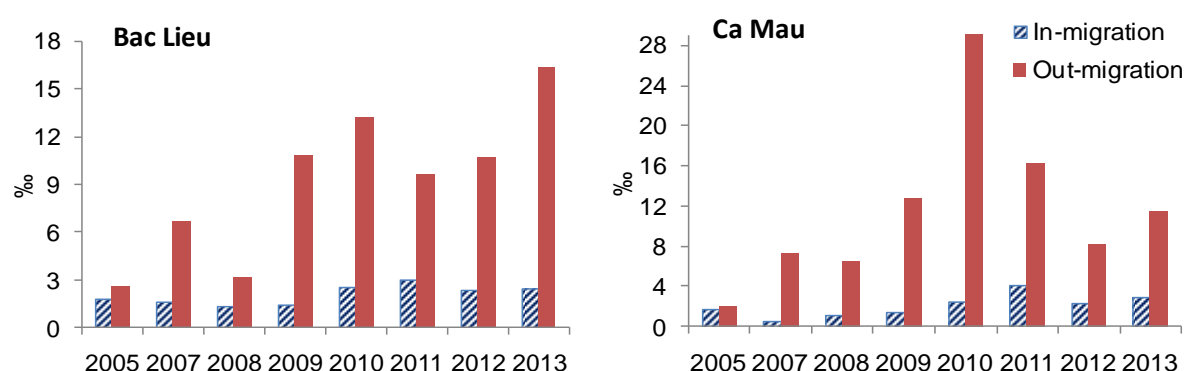


Figure 66: The proportion of in -migration and out-migration in Bac Lieu & Ca Mau provinces

2.3.5 Loss of peat soil environments

The peat soils environment of the U Minh region has been declining rapidly due to land clearing and the development of canals. In 1962, the extent of peat soil environments in the U Minh region (including both U Minh Thuong and U Minh Ha) was estimated to be 60,000 hectares. Land clearing for agriculture and the development of the canal network following the war destroyed most of the peat layer in the U Minh area. In 1978, a detailed survey concluded that the total area of peat was 32,000 hectares. After 1989, the remaining area of peat is about 20,000 hectares based on remote sensing images and has been declining further (Nguyen Sieu Nhan 2009).

The current remaining peat soils in the U Minh area in the Ca Mau province only are estimated at only 13 million tons. The U Minh Ha National Park (Figure 67), 25km from Ca Mau, near the coast of the West Sea, was established in 2006, merging the Vo Doi Nature Reserve and a part of U Minh III and Tran Van Thoi State Forestry Enterprises. The total area is 8,527 hectares, of which 3,600 hectares of the previous Vo Doi Nature Reserve is strictly protected and the remaining area is a restoration zone. The park has 1,664 hectares of peat land of 0.5 to 1.0 meter thick. Most of the area of the core zone is covered with natural or semi-natural *melaleuca* forest. The core zone has about 30 hectares of open area, which was created by forest fires that took place some years ago. The park is surrounded by a buffer zone of 25,000 hectares, encompassing 4 communes in 2 districts of U Minh and Tran Van Thoi, with a total of 5,000 households most of them, poor farmers relying on agriculture and natural resources for income and livelihoods.

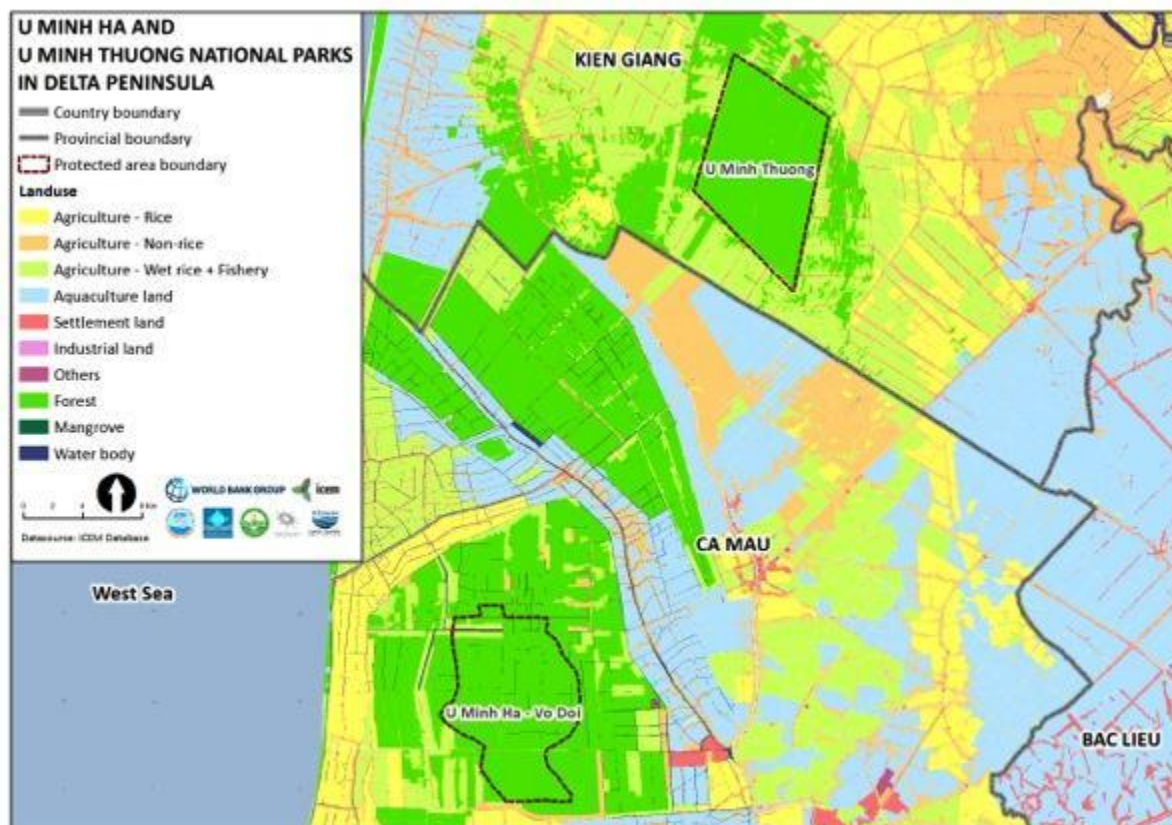


Figure 67: U Minh Ha & U Minh Thuong National Parks

Peatlands are critical for water regulation. Peat soils are generally meters deep and they store and maintain large quantities of water. Therefore, peatlands play an important role in protection against floods after heavy rainfall and storm surges. The peat soil environments in the Mekong Delta support *melaleuca* forests and wetland ecosystems providing natural resources and non-timber forest products for local livelihoods.

The key management issue of the park is the risks of the loss of its vast storage of peat soil, which is essentially carbon storage. The peat storage of the park is being lost through two major causes namely fire and oxidation. The park is surrounded by a vulnerable population who depend on the exploitation of natural resources inside the park. The poaching activities increase fire risks in-the park. In 2000, fires destroyed large areas of peat soils and approaches were taken to submerge the entire park under water all year round. This resulted in the loss of hydrologic seasonality of the system that shaped and supported the ecosystem, destroying

melaleuca trees and wetland vegetation in the core zone. Since 2007 a dense network of around 120km of canals were installed as a firebreak and to provide access to fire fighting services.

Unfortunately, the canals installed for fire control have significantly increased the fire risks in the peat zones. The canals have increased surface evaporation and lowered the water table, which is normally maintained naturally by the peat soil environments. In the dry season, the water levels in the canals are below ground level so the water drains out and dries of the peat, dramatically increasing fire risk. Even if fire control measures are effective the excessively dry conditions under the current management approach will exhaust the peat layer through oxidation, the peat naturally decomposes when exposed to oxygen.

The main threats to the peat layer in the buffer zone are proposed peat extraction projects, oxidation and fire. In 2009, the Ca Mau Department of Environment and Natural Resources (DONRE) proposed a peat extraction project in the U Minh Ha area. The project document provides an estimate of a total harvestable stock of 4.273 million tons out of the remaining 13 million tons. The main use of the extracted peat is for making microbial fertilizer. The project was proposed to take place in 3 phases with a total harvest of 1.856 million tons of peat and total expected revenue from peat sale of USD 40 million. The peat harvest project is currently due to concerns raised by scientists. However, the project is likely to be revived in the future due to the potential revenue from peat sales and real threat to the existence of the remaining peat layer.

Farmers provided land in forested areas of the buffer zone also want to remove the peat layer to improve cultivation. About 5,833 households who live in the forested area of the buffer zones have been allocated forestry land with a total area of 30,000 ha. Farmers indicated that they want to remove the peat layer to improve cultivation as in the dry season the peat layer is too dry to plant anything so they are limited to one crop per year. Although farmers are not permitted to extract peat to sell, they reported that they have been extracting and selling some peat to private companies for making microbial fertilizers.

Peat soils are also being washed away during the rainy season. In the land plots allocated to farmers, there is no infrastructure for holding water during. In the rainy season, water flows horizontally on the surface and through the peat soil environments to the rivers and the sea. This process is destroying the peat layer through washing the layers of peat soil away. At the end of the rainy season, no water is retained in the peat layer resulting in drying out of the peat layer making it impossible for cropping and increasing oxidation rates.

3 PROJECTED CHANGES IN THE MEKONG DELTA

3.1 External drivers of change

The Mekong Delta is governed by two major forcings: the fluvial processes of the Mekong River Basin and the coastal processes of the East and West Sea. The interaction of these two processes produces a wide range of hydro-ecological conditions and habitats that underpin the high productivity of the delta's agro-ecology and the central role the region has played in driving the national agricultural economy and securing national food security.

The success of the Mekong Delta's agro-economy has largely been a result of how farming systems in the delta control and/or work with these characteristics. Typically the scoping and design of investments is made based on a historic understanding of these hydro-ecological characteristics; however, each of them is highly dynamic changing over time in response to rapid internal and external drivers of change. There is growing evidence that changes in these characteristics are fundamentally changing the delta system.

From upstream, the fluvial processes of the Mekong River are changing in response to rapid development of the basin by upstream countries over the past 20 years. The proliferation of large hydropower projects, deforestation and expansion of agricultural land and irrigation infrastructure coupled with climate change has seen the Mekong's hydrological regime exceed the natural bounds of variability captured in the long-term gauging station records of the basin available since the early 1900s (ICEM, 2010). The timing, nature and magnitude of the Mekong's important flood pulse and hydro- biological seasons are changing, and most importantly for the delta, the supply of sediments and nutrients from the upstream catchment has been reduced dramatically from an average load of 160MT/year in the early 2000s to 86Mt/y in 2014 (DHI, 2015).

From downstream, sea level rise and climate change are combining to change the relative balance between land and marine environments. Groundwater abstraction coupled with the areas unique geology, and natural land consolidation processes of a young delta like the Mekong have resulted in rates of land subsidence in the order of 0.5 – 3.3cm/year (Erban et al, 2014), with hotspots centered on the Cau Mau peninsula and the central floodplain areas of Can Tho, Vinh Long, and Tien Giang. At the same time, sea levels have been rising. The rate of global sea level rise has tripled in the past 100 years, with long term rates for the twentieth century ranging between 1.9 – 3.4mm/year (Rahmstorf, 2007; Cazenave, 2010; Church, 2008). Analysis of sea levels at Vung Tau gauging station indicates that sea levels have risen by an average 3.0mm/yr between 1979 – 2006 (SIWRR, 2010). The combination of rising sea levels and sinking delta land mass has resulted in a period of net erosion over the past two decades – the first period in 6,000years in which the delta is no longer prograding (WWF, 2013).

Continued changes in the timing and magnitude of the Mekong's flood pulse; reductions in the Mekong's sediment load and the net reversal of delta building processes will redefine the future hydro-ecological characteristics. This section will consider four basin-wide drivers as external drivers of change for the Mekong Delta:

1. Hydropower development;
2. Land use change (deforestation);
3. Climate change; and
4. Sea level rise and land subsidence.

These external drivers of change occurring at the basin-scale are transforming the characteristics of the Mekong Delta by altering the timing and magnitude of sediment, nutrient and water inflows into the delta system. Each driver is described below, and then combinations of drivers that reflect the range of potential forcings on the delta system are shown in Section 3.2, with the remaining sections focused on describing the impacts for this range.

3.1.1 Hydropower development

Rapid expansion of hydropower in the Mekong Basin will alter timing of downstream hydrology during regular operations and could lead to large emergency releases during storm events. At present more than 140 large hydropower projects exist or are under development in the Mekong Basin (Figure 68). The largest of these, Nou Zhadu and Xiao Wan, are amongst some of the largest reservoirs in the world. Hydropower reservoirs will trap sediments and reduce the rates of natural fertilization in the floodplain as well as tip the balance between natural accretion and erosion processes. A reduction in flow reversal volume, brought about by delayed flow reversal, also has impacts on the volumes of flow, sediments and nutrients released from Tonle Sap during the end of the flood season and the early part of the dry season, potentially diminishing the productivity of the floodplains in the Mekong Delta that benefit from these flows (MRC 2011).

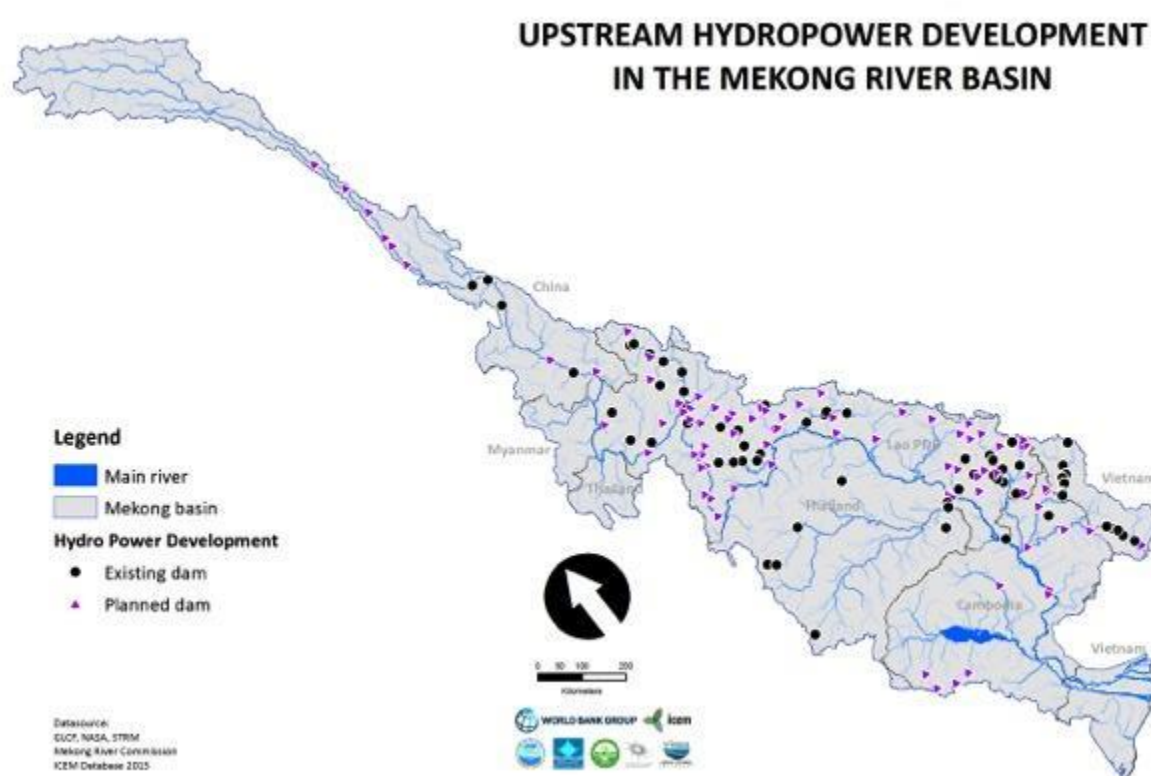


Figure 68: Upstream hydropower development in the Mekong Basin

Upstream hydropower development can be characterized by the project's location on the Mekong River network:

- **LMB Tributary projects:** In total more than 110 large tributary hydropower projects exist or are under consideration in the Lower Mekong Basin. The majority of these projects are in Lao PDR, on the short, high flow-yield rivers draining the Annamite

mountain ranges. LMB large tributary hydropower can be characterized as large reservoirs with a high capacity for regulation relative to the flow in the hosting tributary. In addition to these large projects there are also hundreds of small and medium scale reservoirs – primarily for irrigation – but little information is known on these projects;

- **Chinese mainstream projects:** In total 7 mainstream hydropower projects have been built on the Lancang River of the upper Mekong, at least an additional 10 projects are under consideration for this stretch of River extending from the Tibetan plateau, through Yunnan province to the border with Lao PDR. These Chinese mainstream projects are some of the largest projects in the Mekong basin (and in some cases the world). In Yunnan province the dams take advantage of the steep valley formations of the Lancang to build high-head projects with reservoirs that have very large storage capacities. The development of a cascade of six hydropower projects on the Lancang River since the mid-1990s has already begun reducing sediment loads entering the LMB; and
- **LMB mainstream projects:** In total 11 LMB mainstream projects are under consideration in Lao PDR and Cambodia, with two projects Xayaburi and Don Sahong under construction. These are large projects with very large reservoirs that will transform more than 50% of the LMB mainstream¹² from riverine to reservoir environment. Though the reservoirs are large, they have limited capacity to regulate wet season flows given the size of wet season flow in the Mekong.

Upstream hydropower development has two main impacts on the Mekong system with the scale of impact dependent on the type of hydropower project. First the reservoirs have a regulating affect on flow, which allow the projects to store water from the wet season for release during the dry season. This regulation of flow dampens the flood-pulse signature of the Mekong, which has been identified as the main driver behind the productivity of the Mekong's floodplain and delta environment (Kummu et al, 2006). In the Mekong the regulatory affects is highest in the Chinese mainstream projects and the LMB tributary dams where reservoirs have the capacity to store up to 70% of the mean annual flow of their host rivers. The reservoirs with the most significant regulatory capacity are Nuozhadu and Xiaowan both Chinese mainstream projects.

Second, the reservoirs have a barrier effect on the transport of sediment, nutrients and biological organisms. In addition to the flow of water, the Mekong also transports vast quantities of sediments, nutrients, fish and other aquatic productions. Sediments and nutrients are transported from the hillsides of the Mekong uplands to the floodplains, delta and coastal environment of the Mekong. These sediments play an important role in both building and fertilizing the delta environment. The barrier effect on fish impacts on both upstream and downstream migrations. Fish migrate along the Mekong River all year round, with the main migrations focused on the start and end of the wet season. During these periods adult fish having fed in the rich wetland environments of the floodplain and delta move upstream to find spawning grounds and nurseries. The fingerlings then travel downstream with the current reaching maturity in the floodplain and delta environments. In the Mekong the barrier effect on sediment transport is highest for projects downstream of the basin's high sediment yield areas. This includes the Chinese mainstream projects (in the order of 50% of the Mekong's natural sediment load originates from the Lancang catchment), the LMB mainstream projects

¹² LMB mainstream is taken as the section of the Mekong River between the Lao-China border and Kratie in Cambodia, after which the river enters its floodplain and is no longer confined to the mainstream channel.

(especially those in Cambodia) and the large tributary hydropower in the Sesan, Srepok and Sekong catchments (3S) where in the order of 22% of the Mekong's natural sediment load originates. In terms of fish migration, the barrier effect is highest for projects on the mainstream and for those closest to the floodplain environment. These include the LMB mainstream projects and the tributary projects in the 3S basin.

3.1.2 Land use change and deforestation

Deforestation and expansion of agricultural land and irrigation infrastructure coupled with climate change has seen the Mekong's hydrological regime exceed the natural bounds of variability captured in the long-term gauging station records of the basin available since the early 1900s (ICEM, 2010). Rapid trends of deforestation, urbanization and agricultural expansion will continue to alter the hydrological balance between surface run off and infiltration (MDP, 2011). The Mekong has some of the highest rates of deforestation in Asia with more than one quarter of the total forest cover lost between 1973 and 2009 and rates of deforestation increasing over the past 10 years (Figure 69).

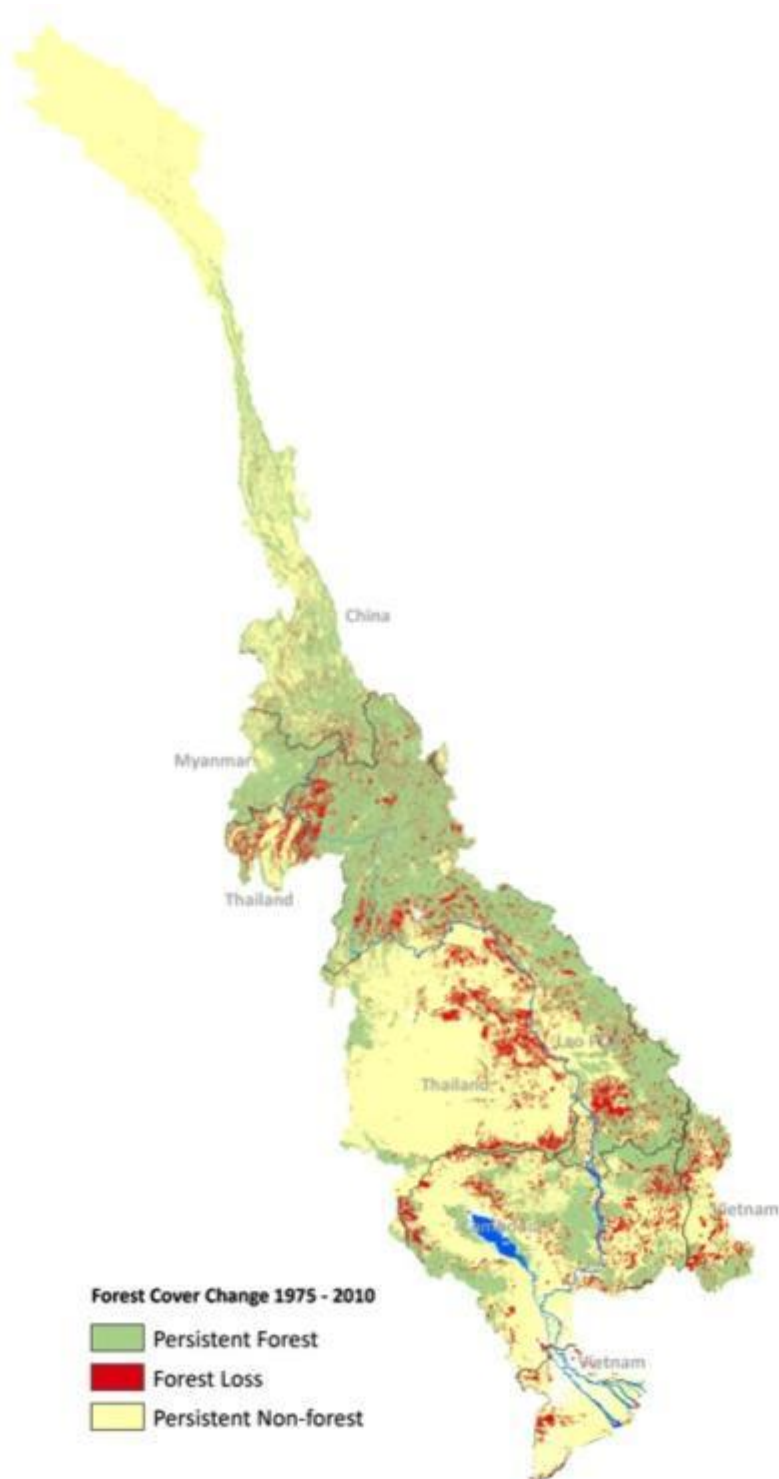


Figure 69: Forest cover change in the Mekong Basin from 1975-2010

3.1.3 Climate change

Analysis of daily data for historical and future climate data at six mainstream stations in the LMB indicates that the nature of change is consistent along the Mekong and can be summarized by four key changes:

- **Increase in flood magnitude and volume:** The dominant feature of the Mekong flood pulse is a single flood peak during August and September. Climate change will increase the flow during the flood season and the size of the flood peak. In terms of the percentage change in volume, a 25% increase in flow at Chiang Saen, approximately 20% between Vientiane and Pakse, and 15% from Pakse to Kratie (ADB 2014; MRC 2011);
- **Increase in flood duration:** Across all stations, climate change will increase the duration of the flood season;
- **Shortening of transition seasons and onset of flooding:** Climate change will shorten the transition seasons at all stations and increase the rate of increase of discharge. This will accelerate the rate of transition from dry to flood and vice-versa (ADB 2014); and
- **Increase in dry season water levels:** Climate change will increase dry season flows in response to increases in dry season rainfall for most areas of the Mekong catchment. All the simulated flood pulse characteristics indicate that the average and dry hydrological years are likely to be wetter in the future (Keskinen et al. 2014).

The Mekong Delta is particularly vulnerable to the impacts of climate change due to the impacts of increased flooding and sea level rise. The population of more than 17 million people in the Mekong is directly impacted by changes in upstream flow and water quality conditions. The delta area is also the most vulnerable part of the basin to the impacts of climate change, particularly potential sea level rise (MRC 2011).

3.1.4 Sea level rise and land subsidence

Rising sea levels compounded by a shrinking delta land mass will alter the delicate balance between freshwater and estuarine conditions in the delta. This will pump salinity further into the delta interior, affecting ground and surface water quality in the dry season and exacerbating flooding duration through backwater effects. Sea level rise is expected to have a huge impact on the physical conditions of the Mekong Delta, leading to a range of effects on people, their health, livelihood and prosperity. The MDP predicted that in the flat areas of the delta, the predicted sea level rise may result in large areas of permanent and more frequently inundated coastal plains.

Groundwater abstraction coupled with the area's unique geology and natural land consolidation processes of a young delta like the Mekong have resulted in rates of land subsidence in the order of 0.5 – 3.3cm/year (Erban et al, 2014), with hotspots centered on the Cau Mau peninsula and the central floodplain areas of Can Tho, Vinh Long, and Tien Giang. At the same time, sea levels have been rising. The rate of global sea level rise has tripled in the past 100 years, with long term rates for the twentieth century ranging between 1.9 – 3.4mm/year (Rahmstorf, 2007; Cazenave, 2010; Church, 2008). Analysis of sea levels at Vung Tau gauging station indicates that from 1979-2006 sea levels have risen by an average 3.0mm/year (SIWRR, 2010).

3.2 Future Scenarios for 2050

3.2.1 Baseline scenarios

A set of three reference baseline years was established as a comparison for these future scenarios. Analyzing long-term records for discharge, flooding and saline intrusion revealed that the year 1998, 1999 and 2000 represent statistically dry, average and wet conditions for the delta. These years are also routinely used as representative years by the Government of Viet

Nam and the MRC. Modelled and calibrated with observed data, these baseline years give users the option to visualize data according to a low flood year (1998), an average flood year (1999), and a high flood year (2000).

3.2.2 Future scenarios

In order to understand the likelihood of these risks, we need credible projections of how the future might change consolidated into an efficient set of scenarios. Definition of the scenarios starts with the use of historic trends in the four drivers and other studies to extrapolate low, medium and high conditions for each driver separately. All possible permutations between these drivers were then mapped in a 3D space, with each axis representing one driver of change (image). SLR and basin climate change were grouped together as they are not mutually exclusive. Through this process, 27 scenarios were identified as bounding the limits of realistic change for the four delta drivers:

- **Low Flood/High Salinity:** Based on 27 scenarios combining low, medium and high changes in each of the four drivers, this projection identified the scenario which would result in the greatest change in salinity intrusion for the delta and presents the extent and duration of salinity intrusion under dry, average and wet years for the selected scenario. The scenario represents the upper bound of the maximum risk of salinity intrusion by 2050 and when compared to baseline data allows delta planners to compare the maximum level of change which could be realistically expected in the delta system; and
- **High Flood/Low Salinity:** Based on 27 scenarios combining low, medium and high changes in each of the four drivers, this projection identified the scenario which would result in the greatest change in flood risk for the delta and presents the extent, depth and duration of flooding under dry, average and wet years for the selected scenario. The scenario represents the upper bound of the maximum risk of flooding by 2050 and when compared to baseline data allows delta planners to compare the maximum level of change that could be realistically expected in the delta system.

By defining high, medium and low estimates for future conditions in these parameters and exploring the full range of possible combinations of these variables, scientists and engineers, are able to estimate the total range in future hydro- sediment inputs to the delta system. In the worst case scenario, by 2050:

1. Sediment inflows to the delta will be reduced by 94%;
2. Dry season flow volumes will reduce by 18%;
3. Average annual flood flow volumes will decrease by 22%; and
4. Peak daily flood flows will increase dramatically with the historic 1 in 100year flood event becoming a 1 in 20 year event and the 1 in 10 year flood event becoming a 1 in 5 year event.

Given the dynamic nature of the Mekong delta and the rapid changes in the delta's hydro-ecological characteristics in response to external basin and global drivers of change as well as unsustainable internal practices of water management, there is a need to present delta-planners with a realistic estimate of how the delta system is changing. This estimate was made for a 25 year period centered on the year 2050 which presents a snap-shot of the future delta conditions 35 years from now – a time horizon which encompasses the design life of most water resource and agricultural investments The scenarios are a systematic

characterization of the magnitude and range of realistic change in the four future drivers of change identified as having the most significant impact on basin hydrological and sediment transport processes:

1. **Rainfall and Temperature Changes:** Climate change will increase the variability in seasonal rainfall, making the wet seasons wetter and the dry season drier and polarizing the seasonal conditions of the Basin with more severe and frequent flood and drought incidence;
2. **Hydropower development in the Mekong Basin:** Rapid expansion of hydropower in the Mekong Basin will alter timing of downstream hydrology during regular operations and could lead to large emergency releases during storm events. Hydropower reservoirs will also sever sediment transport processes, trapping sediments and reducing rates of natural fertilization in the floodplain and offshore environments as well;
3. **Land use change:** Rapid trends of deforestation, urbanization and agricultural expansion will continue to alter the hydrological balance between surface run off and infiltration; and
4. **Sea level rise (SLR):** Rising sea levels will alter the delicate balance between freshwater and estuarine conditions in the delta, pumping salinization issues further into the delta interior affecting groundwater and permanently inundating large areas of the Mekong Delta.

The scenarios use the historic trends in the four drivers and other studies to estimate low, medium and high conditions for each driver separately. All possible permutations between these drivers were then mapped in a 3D space, with each axis representing one driver of change. SLR and basin climate change were lumped together as they are not mutually exclusive. Future projections take the hydrographs for the three baseline representative years and then superimpose the future dry, average and wet conditions based on a realistic estimation of low, medium and high change in the key external drivers of the delta's hydro-ecology.

3.3 Regional threats to the Mekong Delta

For the Mekong Delta the scenarios have been used to model the future impacts of changes in temperature and rainfall, flooding and saline intrusion

3.3.1 Temperature and rainfall

Of the four drivers considered, climate change is the only driver to modify the basin climate conditions. Climate change will increase the variability in seasonal rainfall, making the wet seasons wetter and the dry season drier and polarizing the seasonal conditions of the Basin with more severe and frequent flood and drought incidence. Average annual temperatures are expected to increase by 3-5°C by mid-century with average wet season precipitation increasing by 3-14% (USAID, 2013). For the floodplain areas of The Mekong Delta increases in wet precipitation will be coupled with increased peak daily precipitation events and drier dry seasons, compounding water availability issues by making wet seasons wetter and dry seasons drier (USAID, 2013).

The yearly average rainfall in the Mekong Delta is 1733 mm and is mainly concentrated in the rainy season. October has the highest rainfall and it is the period of flood peaks in the Mekong Delta and also of water level rise due to strong winds. From January to March, average rainfall in this area is very low. The highest average rainfall (2200-2500 mm) occurs in Ca Mau and Kien Giang provinces. Provinces with the lowest rainfall, ranging from 1300-1500 mm, are

Dong Thap, Tien Giang and Ben Tre (MDP 2011). Figure 70 below shows the changes in precipitation in the wet season for 2050.

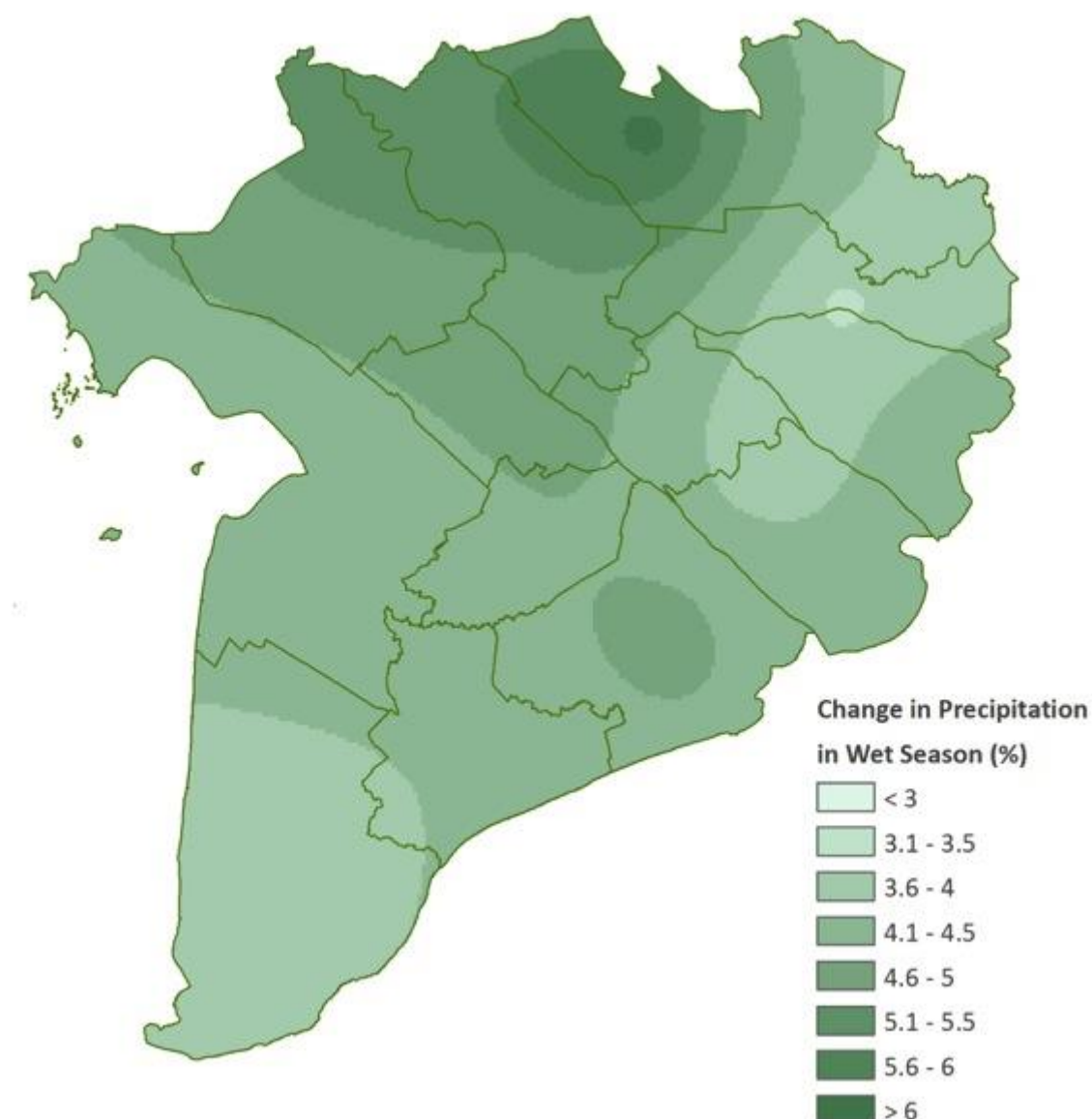


Figure 70: Changes in precipitation in Wet Season (%)

3.3.2 Flooding

Floods are a dominant feature of the Mekong Delta during the wet season. Historically during large flood events, such as the year 2000 flood, in the order of 40% of the delta is inundated to a depth of 1.0m or more. Maximum flood depths of 5-6m will be felt in An Giang, Dong Thap and Long An provinces where as much as 60-75% of these freshwater zone provinces will be inundated. Of the external drivers assessed, climate change and its influence on both basin discharge and sea levels will have the strongest influence on future delta flood dynamics. Under a 2050 scenario with high climate change and low hydropower and land use change, eight of the 13 delta provinces will experience at least a 50% increase in flooded area.

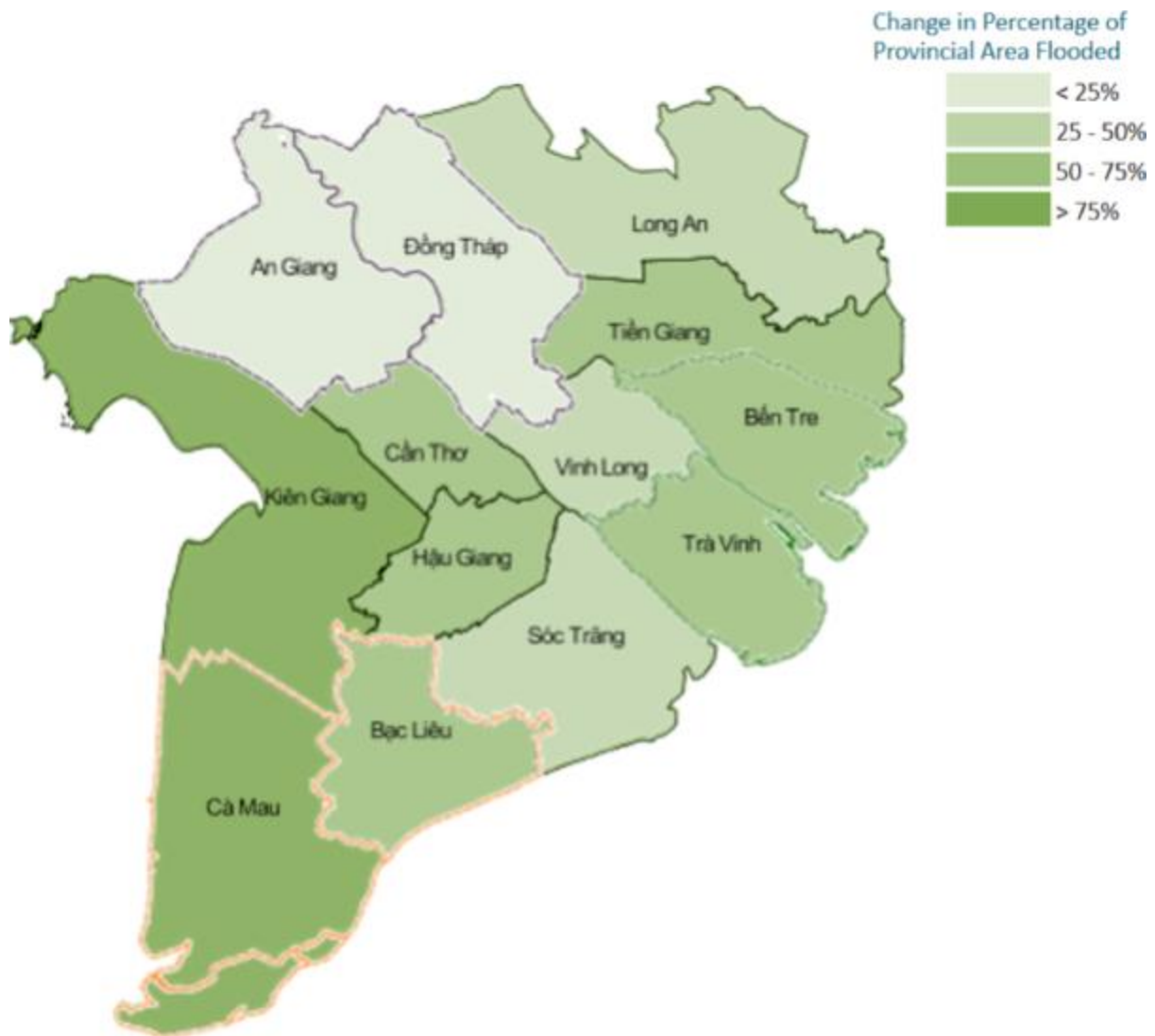


Figure 71: Change in percentage of provincial area flooded (%)

Importantly the largest increases are not in the freshwater flood zone where flooding is an existing problem, but in the coastal provinces of the delta peninsula and estuary where Ca Mau and Kien Giang will experience an 84% and 76% increase in provincial area flooded and Ben Tre, Tra Vinh and Tien Giang will experience 64-67% increases in flooded area. These changes will elevate the importance of flood risk in these coastal provinces and highlight the need for a revised strategy for flood management. Maximum flood depths will also increase in all delta provinces by approximately 1.0m above the year 2000 peak flood level, with the exception of An Giang where the increase in peak flood level is only 0.5m. Figure 72 below shows the changes in in maximum flood depth (m) for 2050 across the delta, and Figure 73 shows the changes in flood depth (m). Flooding combined with sea level rise will have the most impact on the coastal regions of the delta.

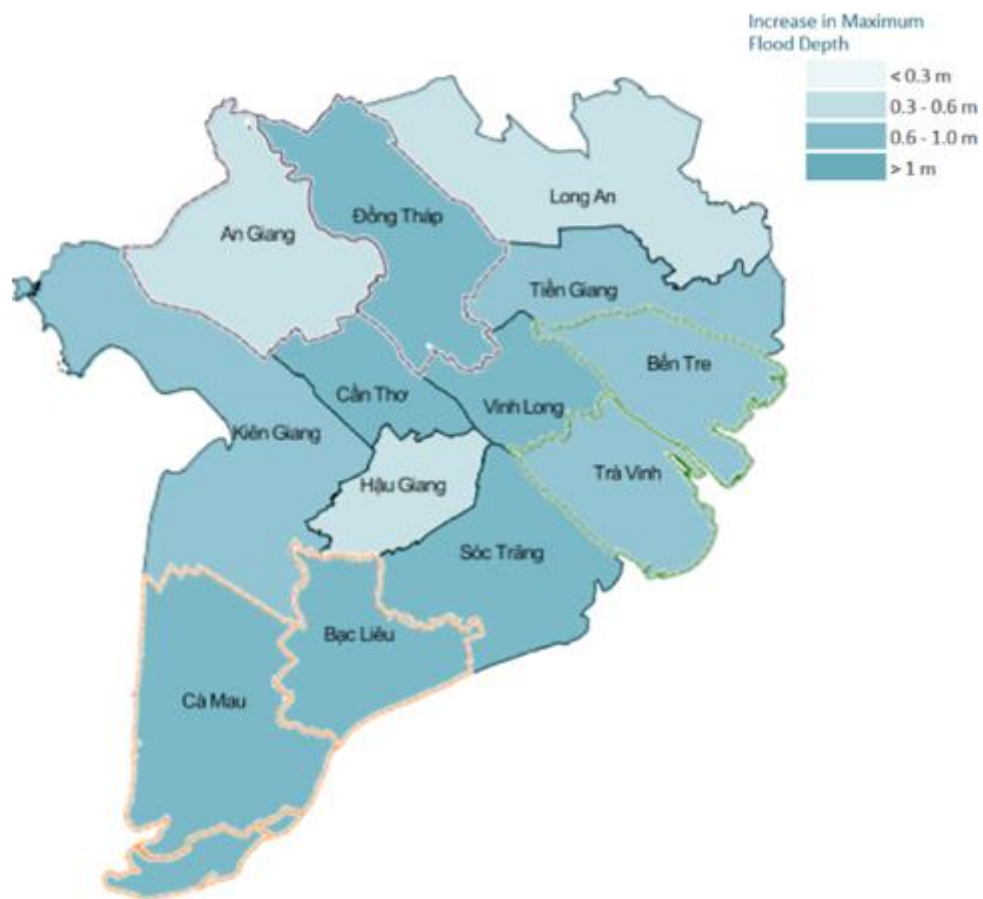


Figure 72: Increase in maximum flood depth (m)

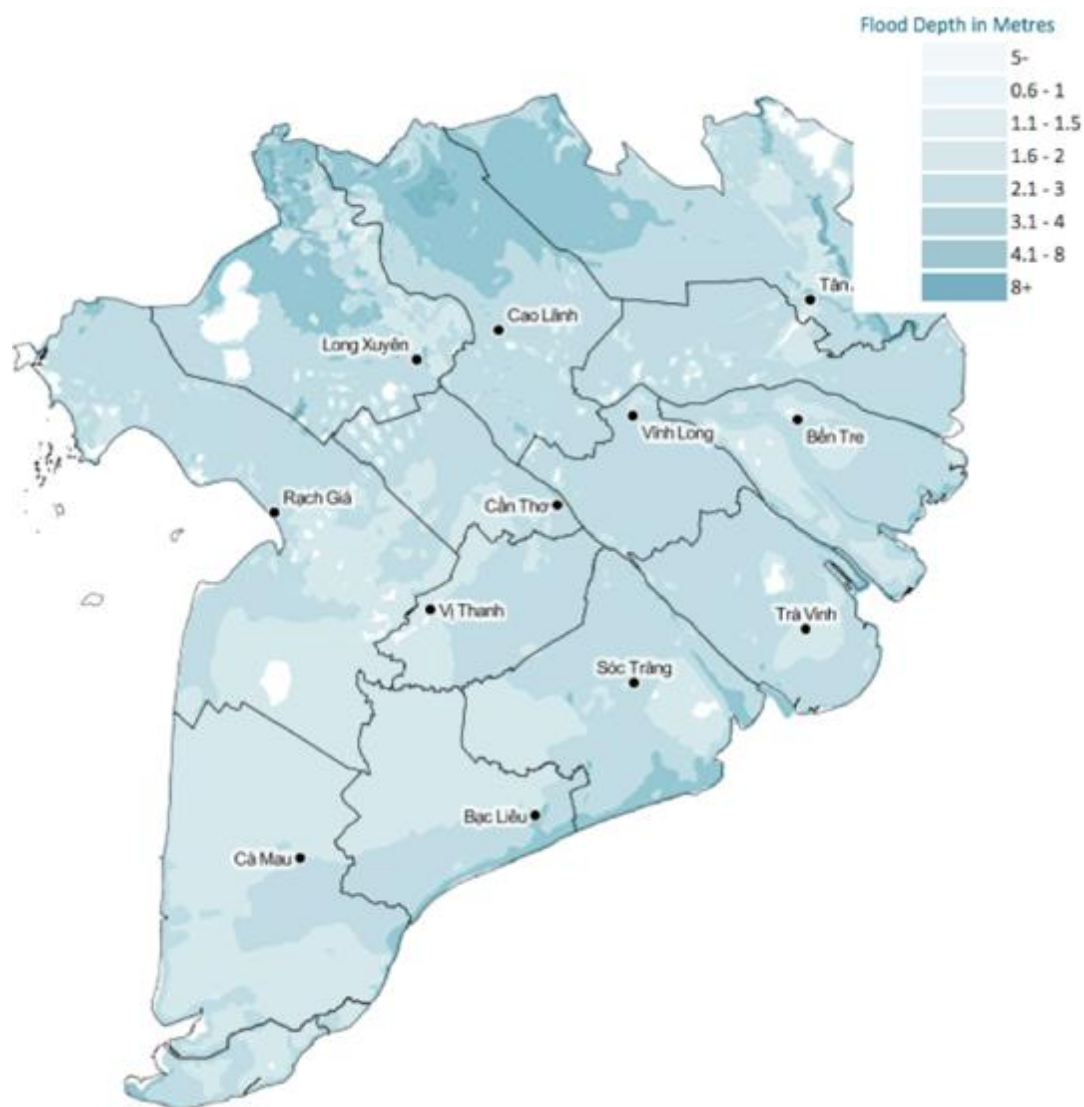


Figure 73: Flood depth in meters

Figure 74 below shows the flood duration during a High flood year in a High Land Use Change/High Hydropower Development/High Climate Change scenario. The delta estuary and peninsula will have increased flood duration during the wet season impacting on agriculture and aquaculture productivity.

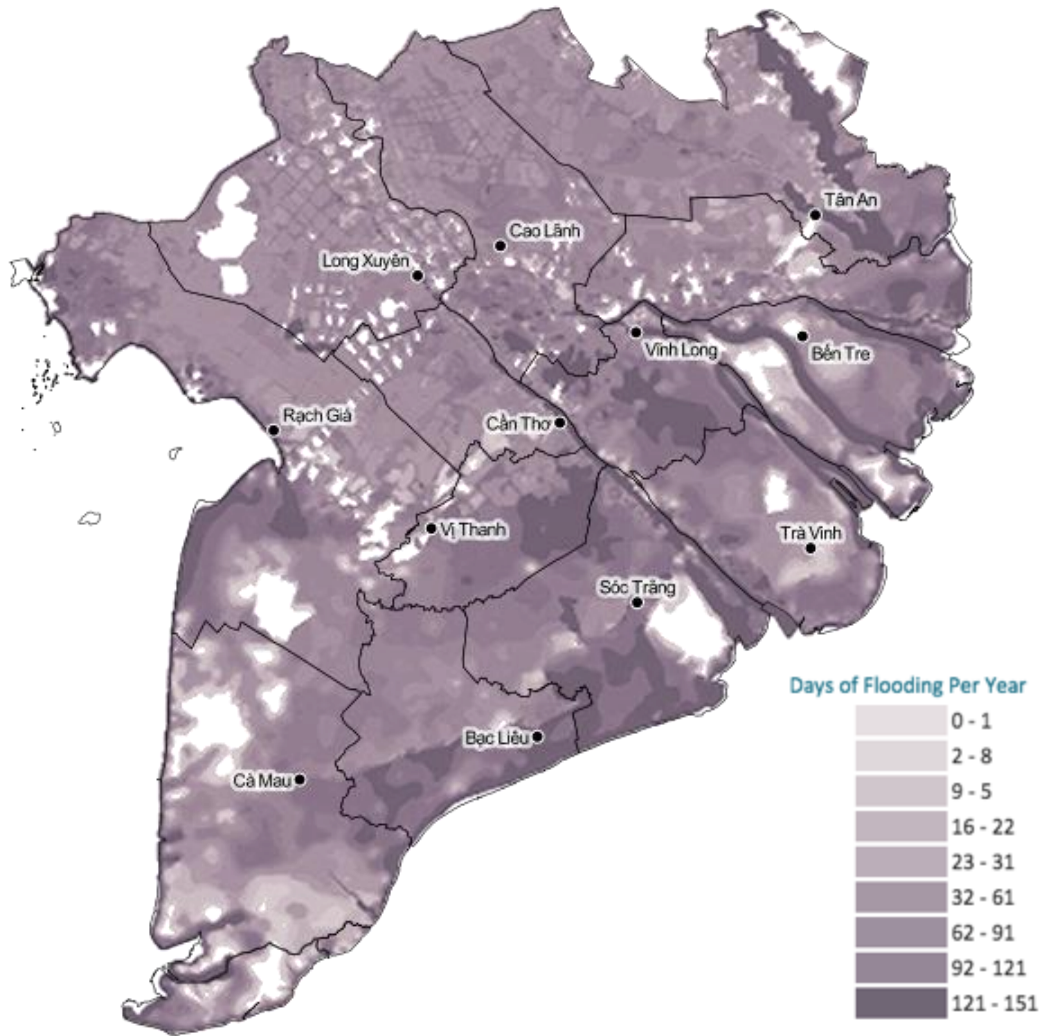


Figure 74: Day of flooding per year in the Mekong 2050

3.3.3 Saline intrusion

In dry years, such as 1998, salinity intrusion can be pervasive in the coastal and intertidal zones of the delta, with as much as 35% of the delta experiencing salinity levels greater than 4g/l. Ca Mau is the most affected province in the delta with 90% of the province area affected in dry years, followed by the delta estuary provinces of Ben Tre, Bac Lieu and Soc Trang (60-79%). In these provinces saline conditions can persist for more than 40 days during the year and up to 100 days in Ca Mau, with maximum salinity concentrations reaching ocean-levels of 30-35g/l. Of the external drivers assessed, climate change and its influence on both basin discharge and sea levels will have the strongest influence on delta salinity dynamics. Under a 2050 scenario with high climate change and low hydropower and land use change, three of the 13 delta provinces will experience at least a 20% increase in saline area. The percentage change of area experiencing salinity intrusion by province is shown below in Figure 75.

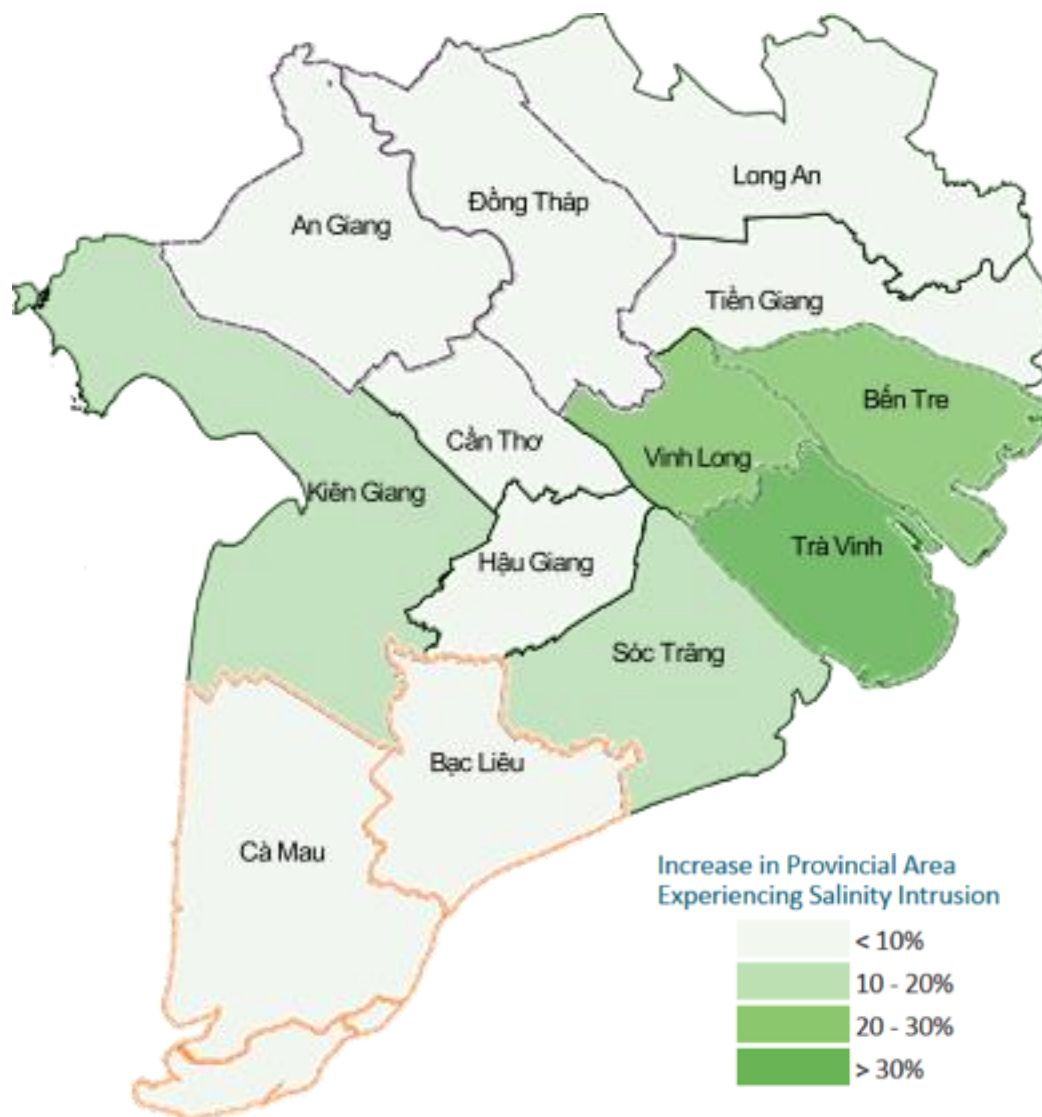


Figure 75: Increase in provincial area experiencing salinity intrusion

These largest increases are focused on the delta estuary provinces of Tra Vinh, Ben Tre and Vinh Long where salinity duration will also increase by 1-3 weeks. Figure 76 below shows the expected days of salinity intrusion in future scenarios.

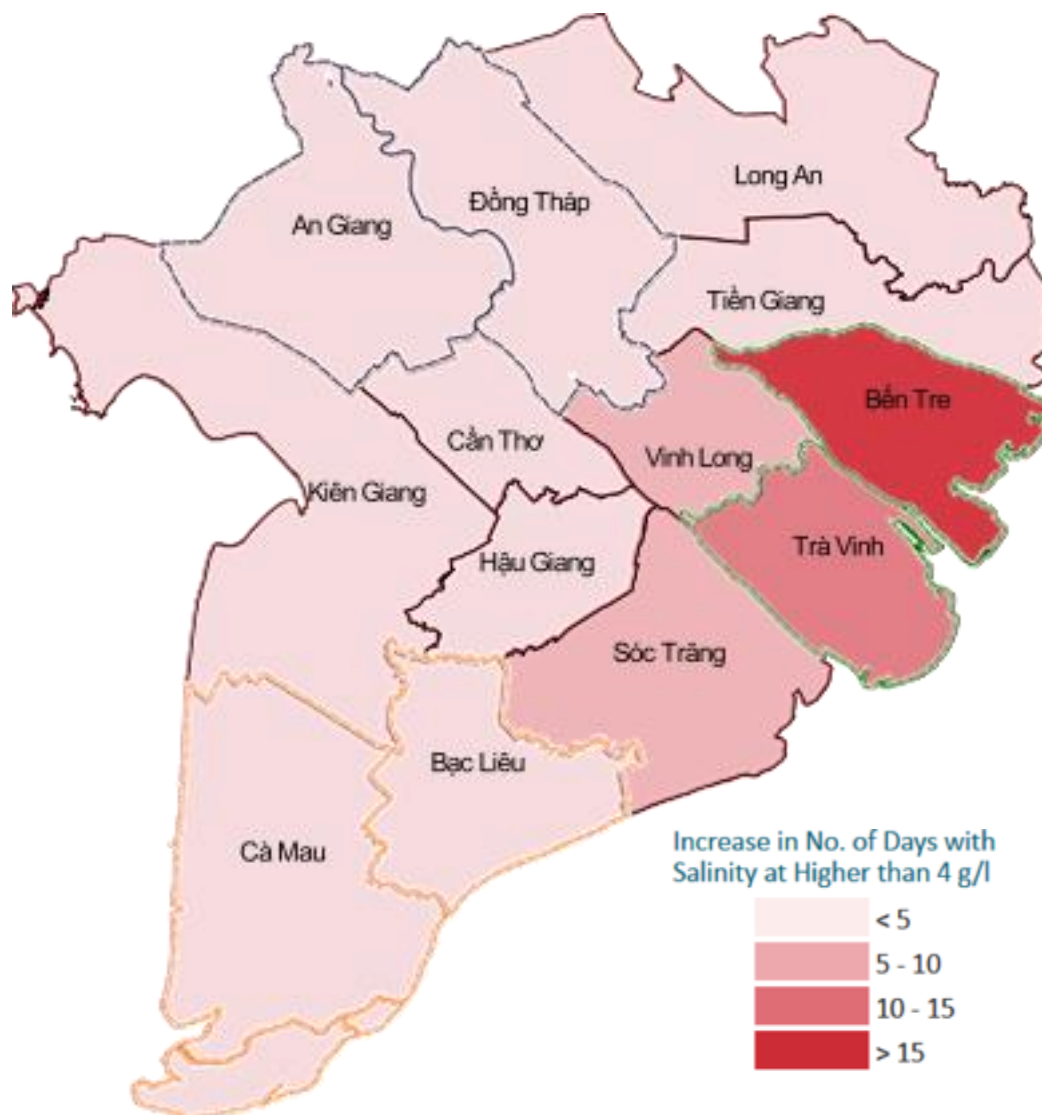


Figure 76: Increase in number of days with salinity at higher than 4g/L

While salinity is a major existing problem for Ben Tre and Tra Vinh, the results for Vinh Long point to a deeper penetration of the salt-wedge up the Tien and Hau River channels elevating the importance of salinity as an issue for the province where historically only 3% of the province was affected compared to 26% under future worst- case conditions.

3.3.4 Coastal erosion

Coastal erosion is caused by the inter-play of three main drivers: 1) Sea level rise, 2) Land Subsidence, and 3) Reduced sediment Influx from upstream catchments. Marine and fluvial processes of the delta maintain a balance between accretion and erosion of the delta land mass. For the past 20 years the East Sea provinces of Ben Tre, Tien Giang, and Tra Vinh have been growing with net accretion rates of 1-10m/ year. Ca Mau has experienced net erosion over the past 20 years with rates increasing from 1m/year to 16m/year during that period. The provinces of Bac Lieu and Soc Trang, aggrading before 2002 at rates of 16 – 24 m/year, are now eroding at rates of 11-16m/year. Of the external drivers assessed, climate change coupled with the impact of hydropower on sediment inflows will have the strongest adverse impact on coastal erosion. Under a 2050 scenario with high climate change and high hydropower expansion, all six of the coastal provinces along the East Sea will experience rates of erosion between 34 to

44m/year, representing rates of erosion double anything experienced over the past 40 years. The rates of coastal erosion in the East Sea are shown below in Figure 77.

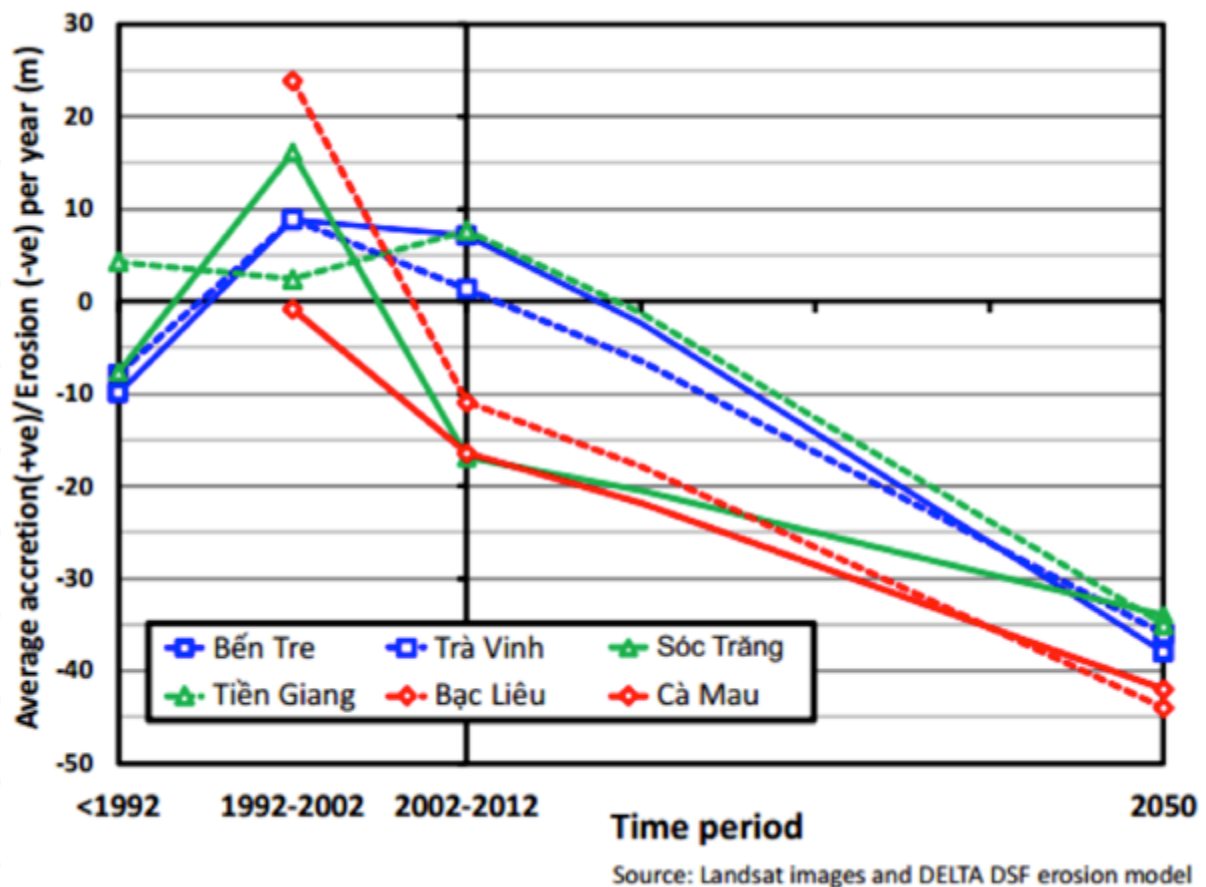


Figure 77: Rates of coastal erosion in the East Sea

These increases in rates of coastal erosion are alarming and require an enhanced management in provinces like Ben Tre, Tra Vinh and Tien Giang. In the peninsula provinces of Ca Mau, Bac Lieu and Soc Trang high historic rates that are projected to continue increasing indicate that the business-as-usual approach to coastal protection is not working and a new approach is needed to protect coastlines and valuable agriculture and aquaculture areas. The increasing erosion rate/year is shown below in Figure 78.

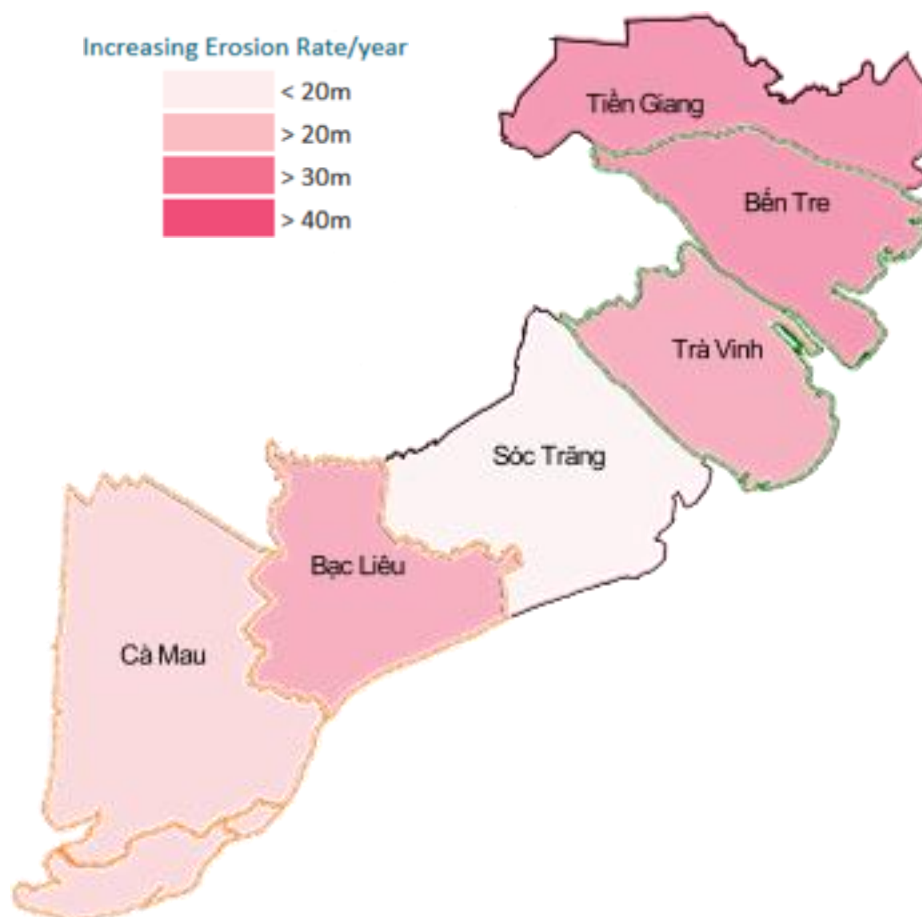


Figure 78: Increasing erosion rate/year

A less acknowledged factor, but often at least as important as climate change, is land subsidence, due to sustained, long-term drainage and groundwater extraction. Very little data are available, but 1 to 2 cm/year is a common figure. Recent studies for the Cà Mau region confirm these figures¹⁵. Land subsidence has a strong relationship to groundwater. Figures for Can Tho range from 0.30 – 0.70 m/year already 10 years ago. Deeper wells more than 100 m, extract (very old) groundwater that is not replenished at all. The relation between water supply, groundwater extraction, land subsidence and flood protection is not well known in its integrated context.

3.4 Regional threats in the hydro-ecological zones

This section will explore the specific threats of temperature and rainfall, flooding, saline intrusion and coastal erosion and land subsidence on the upper delta floodplains, delta estuary and peninsula. For each zone the baseline, future scenarios (2050) and projected changes as shown for:

- Temperature and rainfall;
- Flooding;
- Saline intrusion; and
- Coastal erosion.

3.4.1 Component 2: Upper delta floodplain

3.4.1.1 Temperature and rainfall

In 2050, the dry season temperatures are expected to increase by 2.5-2.75°C in An Giang and Kien Giang, with changes of 1.75-2.5 °C for the rest of the upper delta floodplain (Figure 79).

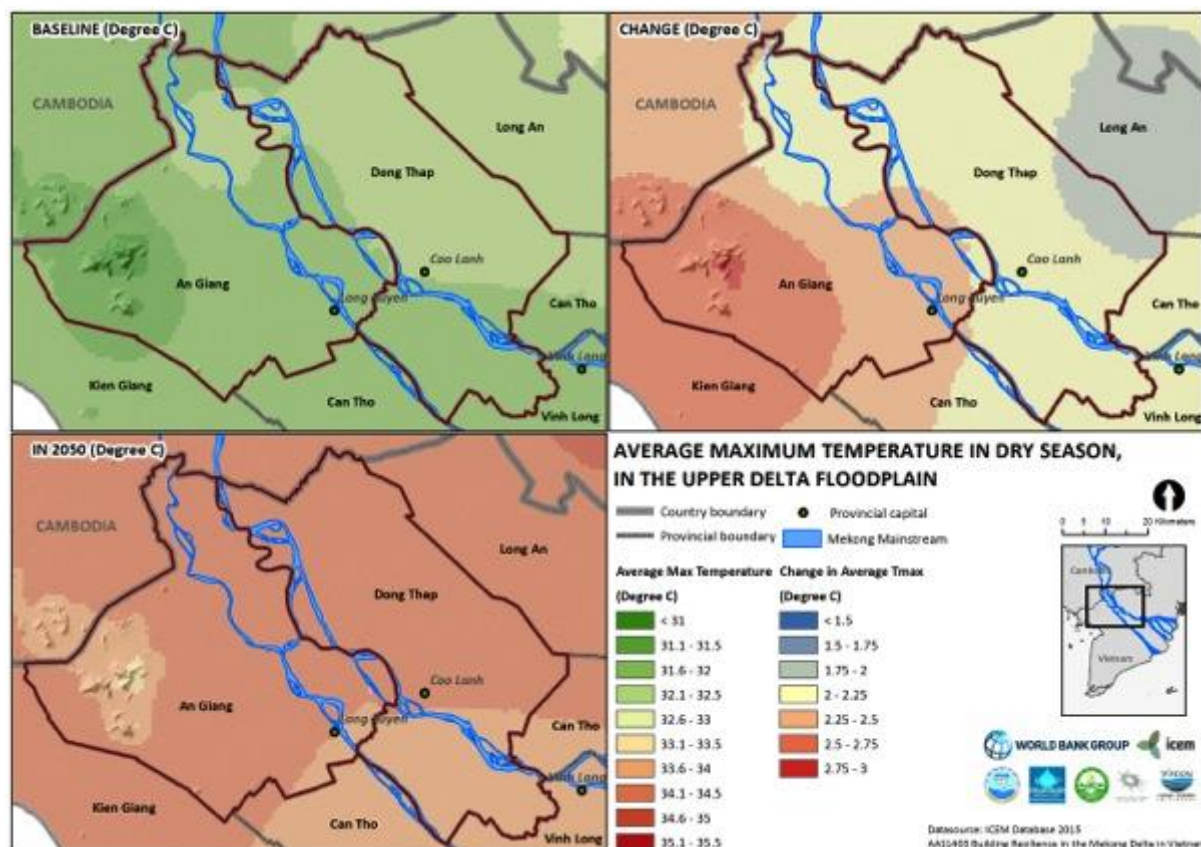


Figure 79: Changes in average maximum temperature in the dry season in the upper delta floodplain

Rain in the dry season is expected to decrease in the upper delta floodplain. In 2050 the average dry season rainfall is expected to decrease by -3.5-3.9 in An Giang and by -4.5-4.9 in Dong Thap (Figure 80). Some areas of the LXQ near the An Giang and Kien Giang provincial border are already experiencing freshwater shortages in the dry season. In 2050 the average wet season rainfall in the upper delta floodplains will increase by 9.1-9.5% in An Giang and Dong Thap (Figure 81).

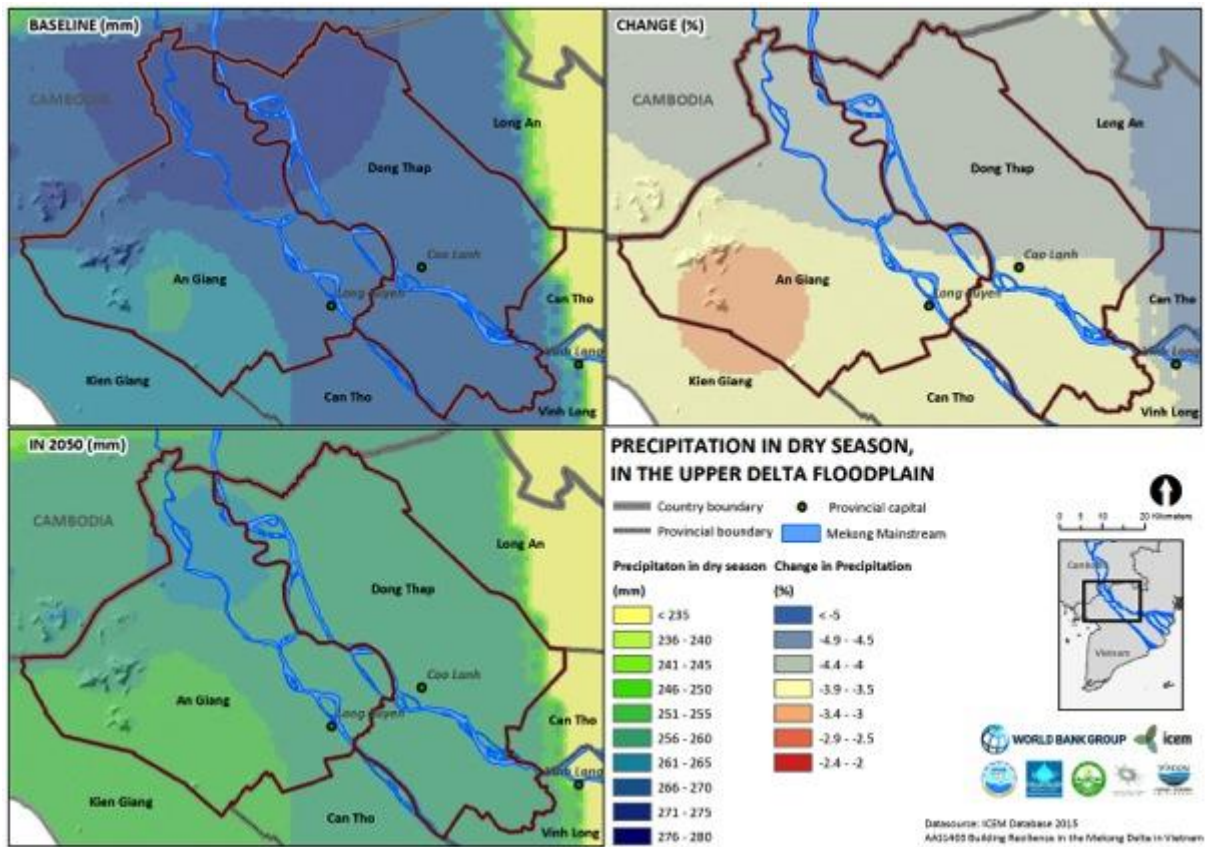


Figure 80: Changes in dry season rainfall in the upper delta floodplain

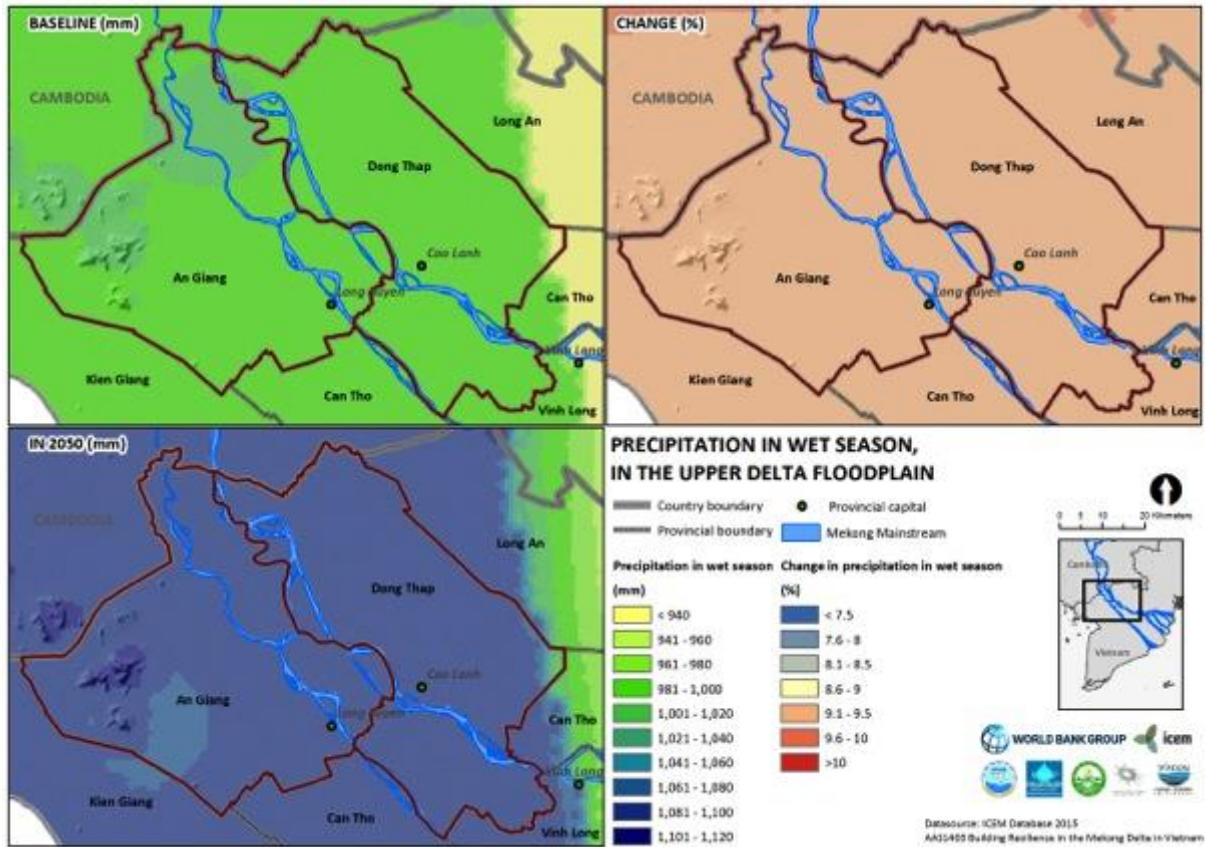


Figure 81: Changes in wet season rainfall in the upper delta floodplain

3.4.1.2 Flooding

In 2050 changes in maximum flood depth (meters) under extreme high conditions will increase flood depth by 0.1-0.5 m and 0.6-1.0 in areas of the upper delta floodplain (Figure 82). The floodplains are inundated annually and existing flood-control systems developed to protect infrastructure. The flood inundation (days) will increase by up to 1-10 and 11-20 days in areas of An Giang and Dong Thap (Figure 83). This map also highlights the impacts of increased flooding on Can Tho province downstream of the upper delta floodplain that will experience increased of 31-40 and 41-50 days of flood inundation (days).

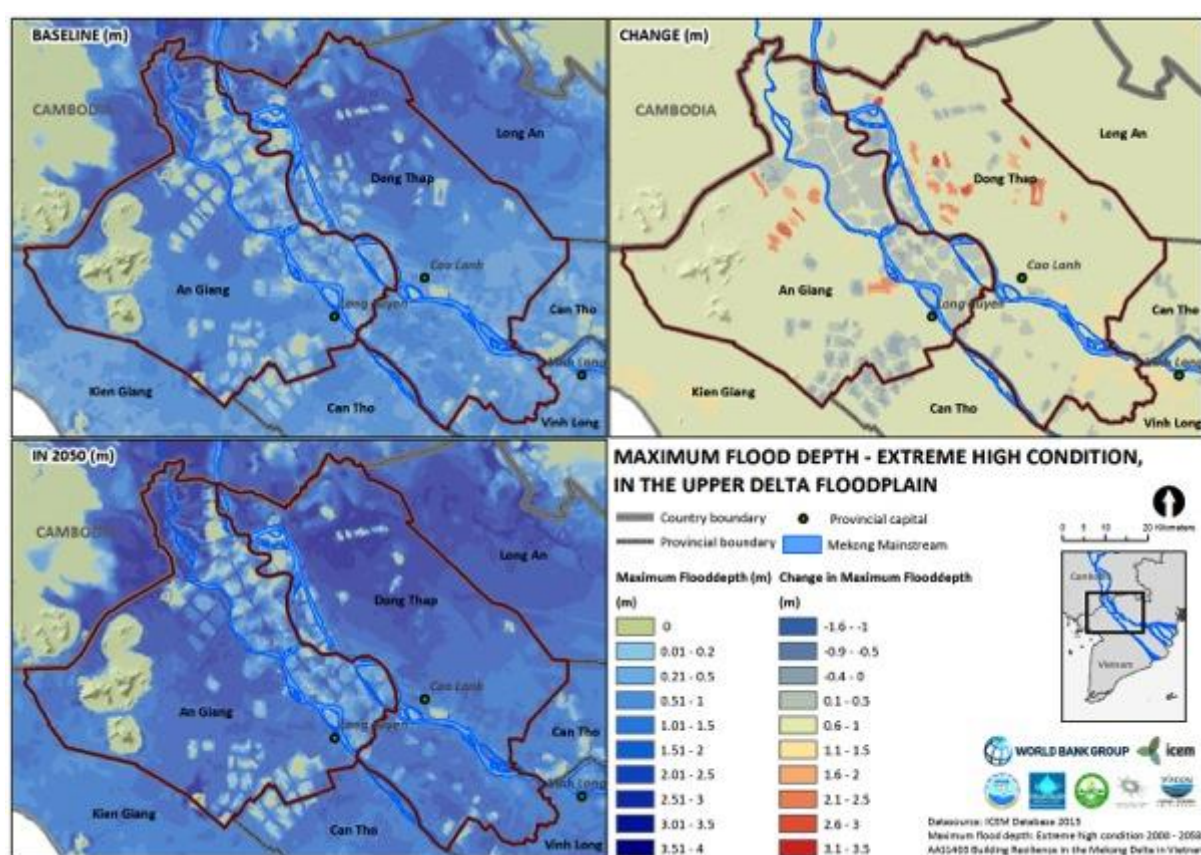


Figure 82: Changes in maximum flood depth under extreme high condition in the upper delta floodplain

The changes in flood duration (<1m) under extreme high conditions will increase flooding inundation from 21-30 and 31-40 day in areas of the delta floodplain (Figure 83).

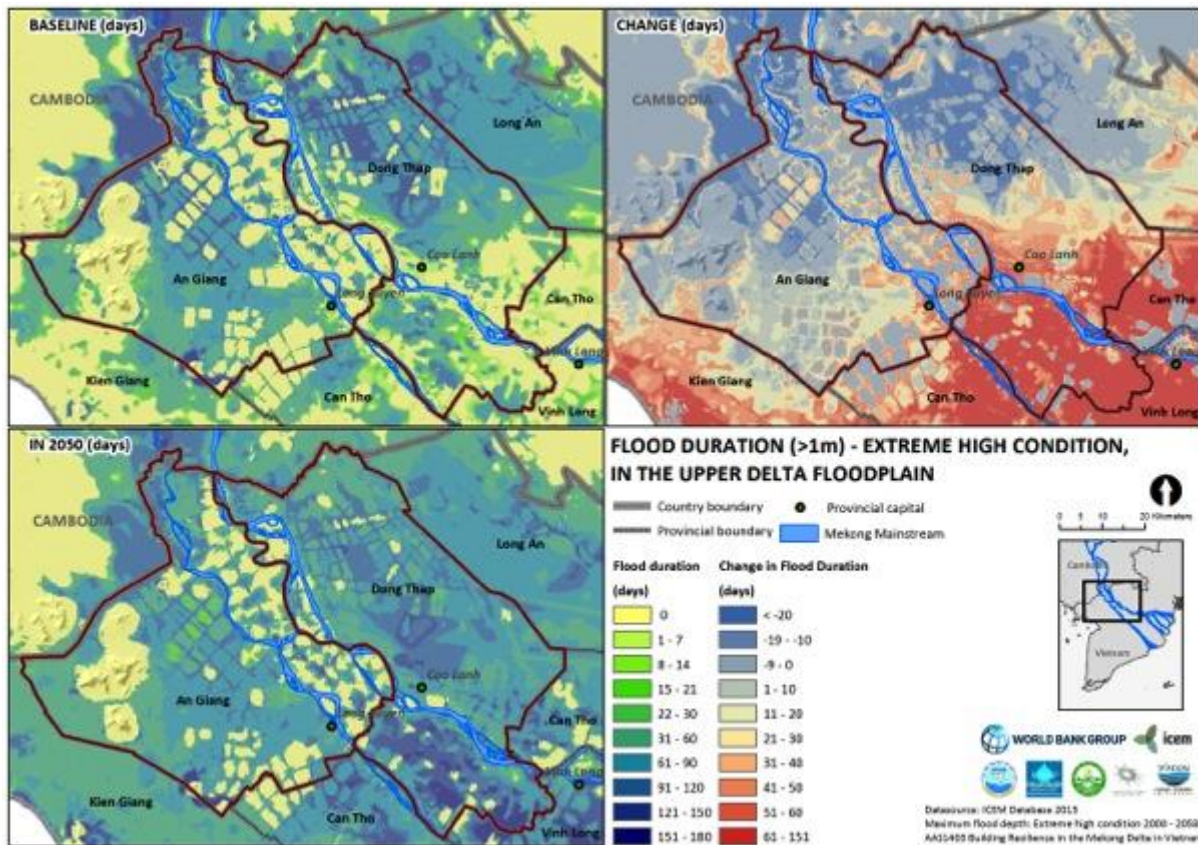


Figure 83: Flood duration (>1m)- Extreme High Condition in the Upper Delta Floodplains

3.4.1.3 Saline intrusion

Under the freshwater influence of the Tau and Hien rivers the upper delta floodplain has low concentration of salinity (g/L). In 2050 under future worse case scenarios salinity concentration (g/L) may increase by 0.1-1g/L in areas of An Giang and Dong Thap (Figure 84). This may impact of freshwater agriculture and the extensive floodplains of the POR and LXQ.

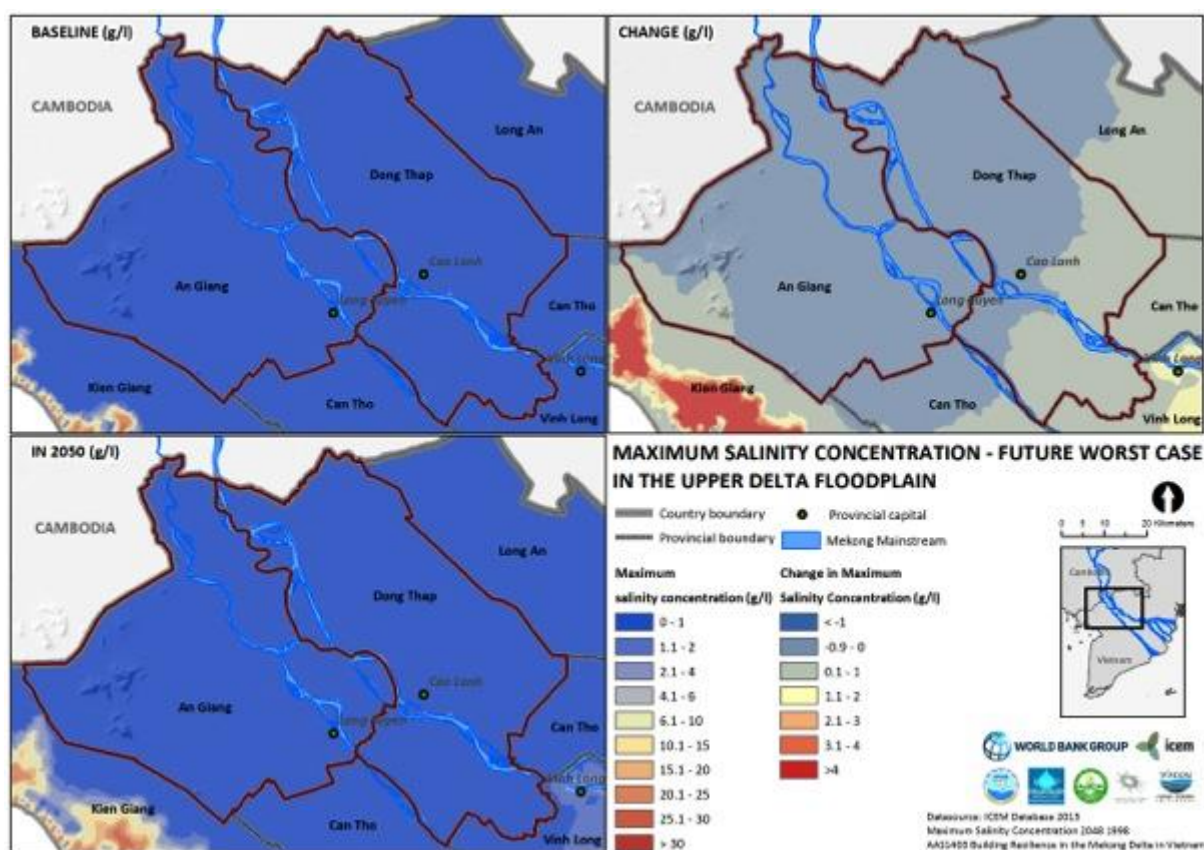


Figure 84: Changing maximum salinity concentration under future worst case in the Upper Delta Floodplain

3.4.2 Component 3: Delta estuary

3.4.2.1 Temperature and rainfall

In 2050 the average maximum temperatures in the dry season will increase by 2-2.5°C in the delta estuary and up to 2.25-2.55°C in some areas of Soc Trang and Ben Tre (Figure 85). The maximum average wet season temperatures will increase by 2.26-2.5°C in the coastal areas and up to 2.51 to 2.75°C further inland in the delta estuary (Figure 86).

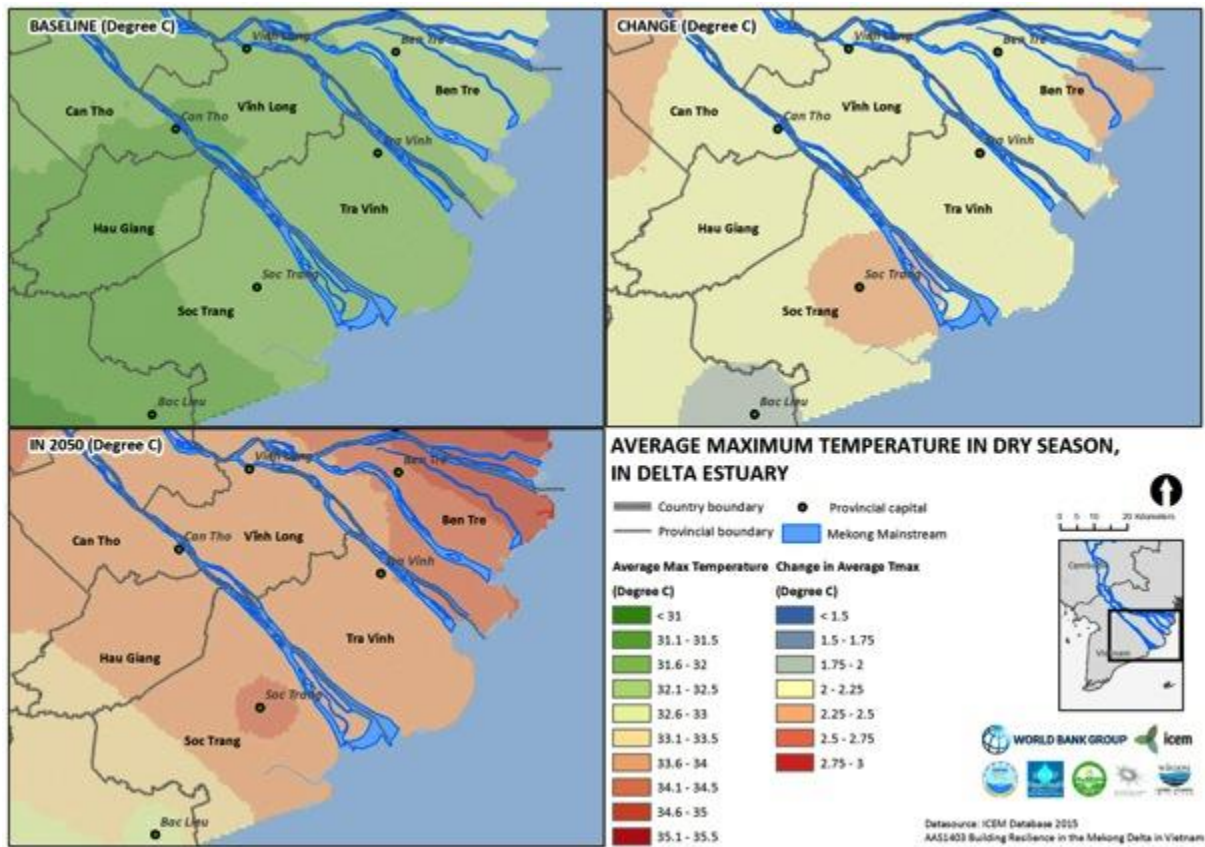


Figure 85: Changes in average maximum temperature in the dry season

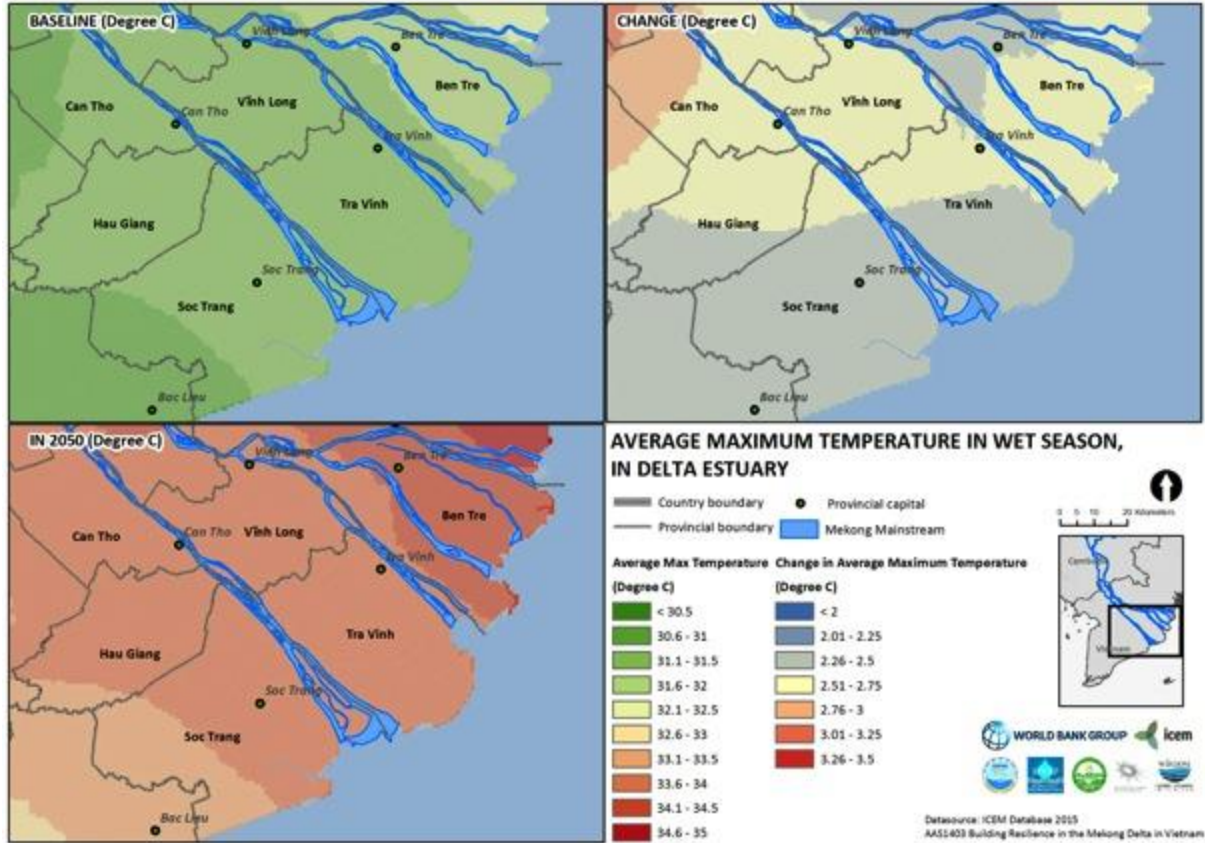


Figure 86: Changes in average maximum temperature in wet season for delta estuary

In 2050 the average dry season rainfall is expected to reduce by -4.4-4% and -4.5-4.9% in Soc Trang and up to a -5.5.4% reduction in wet season rainfall in Tra Vinh and Ben Tre provinces. These provinces are already experiencing freshwater shortages in the dry season, a further drop in rainfall will have significant impacts on land use and domestic water supply (Figure 87).

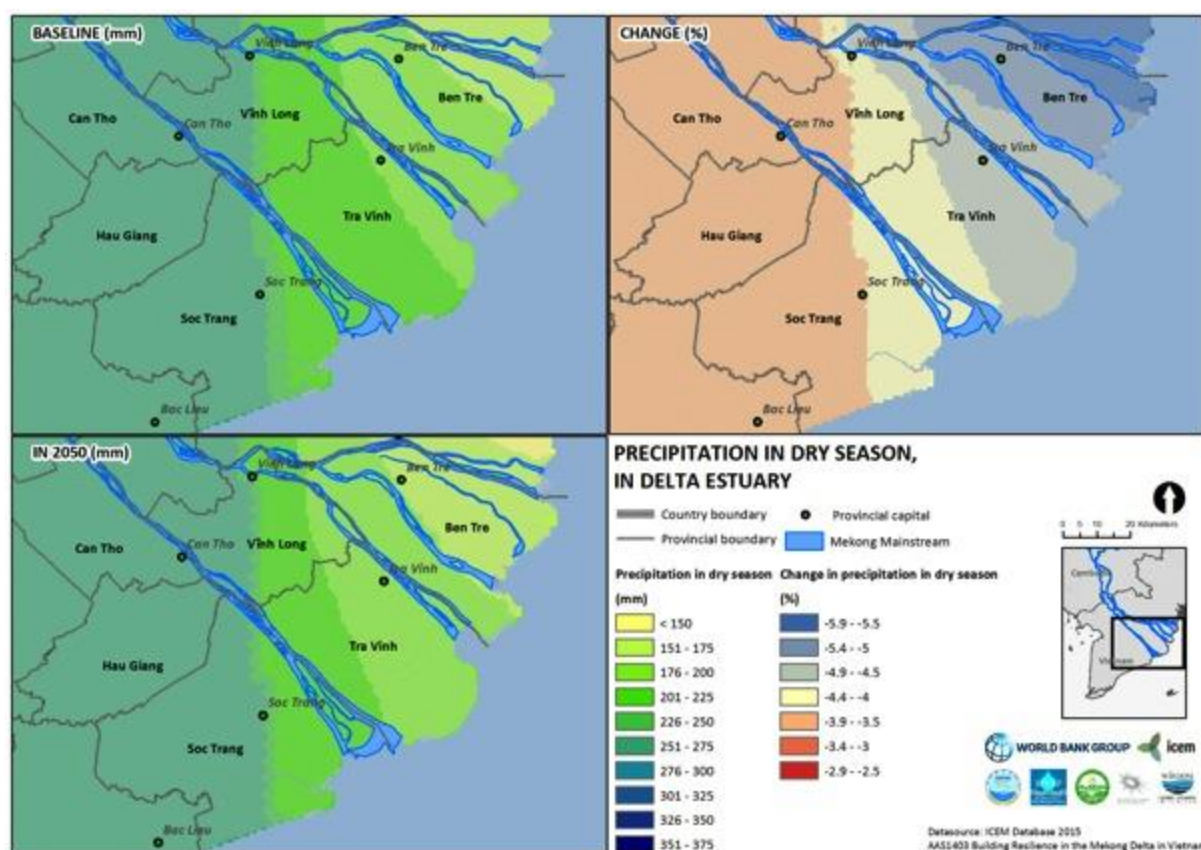


Figure 87: Changes in dry season rainfall in the delta estuary

In 2050 the average wet season rainfall in the delta estuary will increase by 9.1-9.5% in Soc Trang and Tra Vinh and up to a 9.6-10% increase in wet season rainfall in parts of Tra Vinh and Ben Tre (Figure 88).

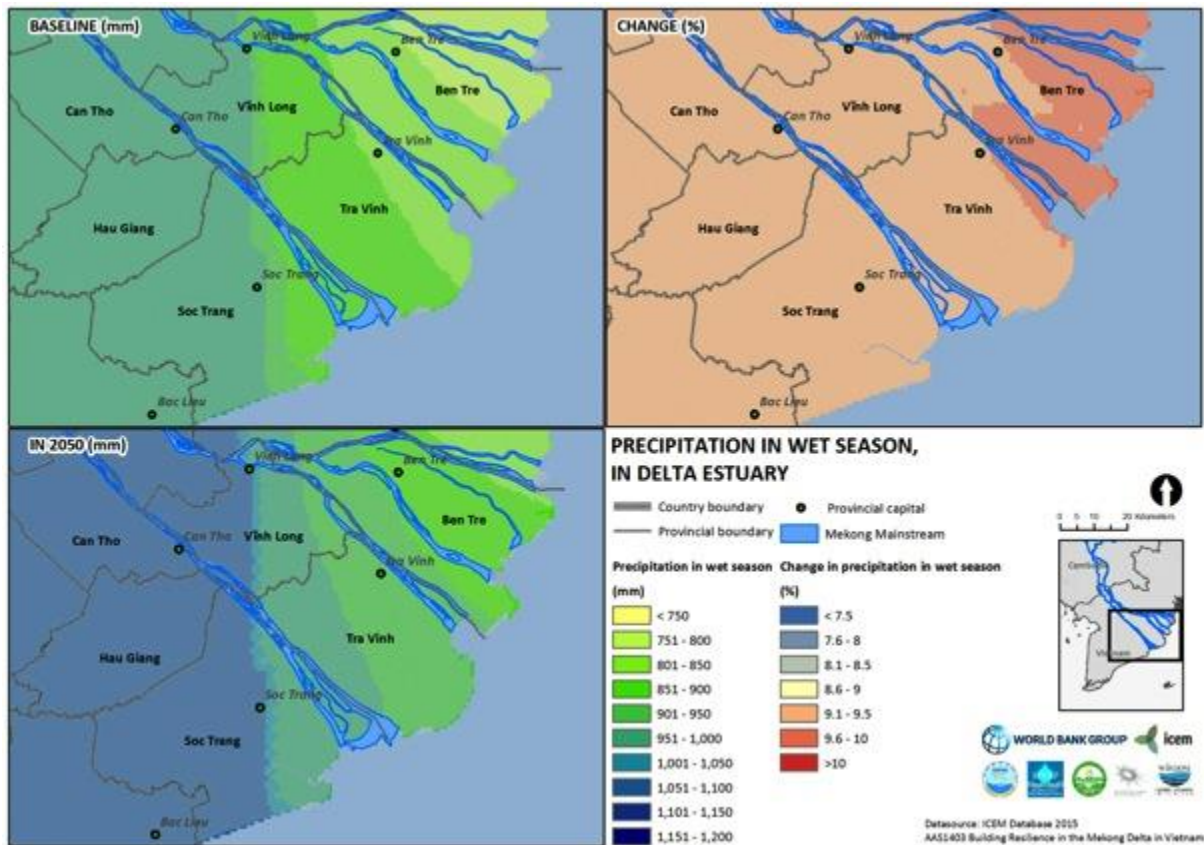


Figure 88: Changes in wet season rainfall in the delta estuary

3.4.2.2 Flooding

In 2050 changes in maximum flood depth (meters) under extreme high conditions will increase flood depth by 0.6-1m and 1.1-1.5m in areas of Ben Tre, Tra Vinh and Soc Trang (Figure 89). Combined with the impacts of flood duration (days) this will have significant impacts on the delta estuary. The changes in flood duration (<1m) under extreme high conditions will increase flooding inundation from 21-30 and 31-40 day in areas of the delta estuary (Figure 90). Depending on the scenario the percentage of inundated delta ranges from 12.8 – 37.8%. The MDP indicated that rice production will be affected through excessive flooding in the tidally inundated areas and longer flood periods in the central part of the delta.

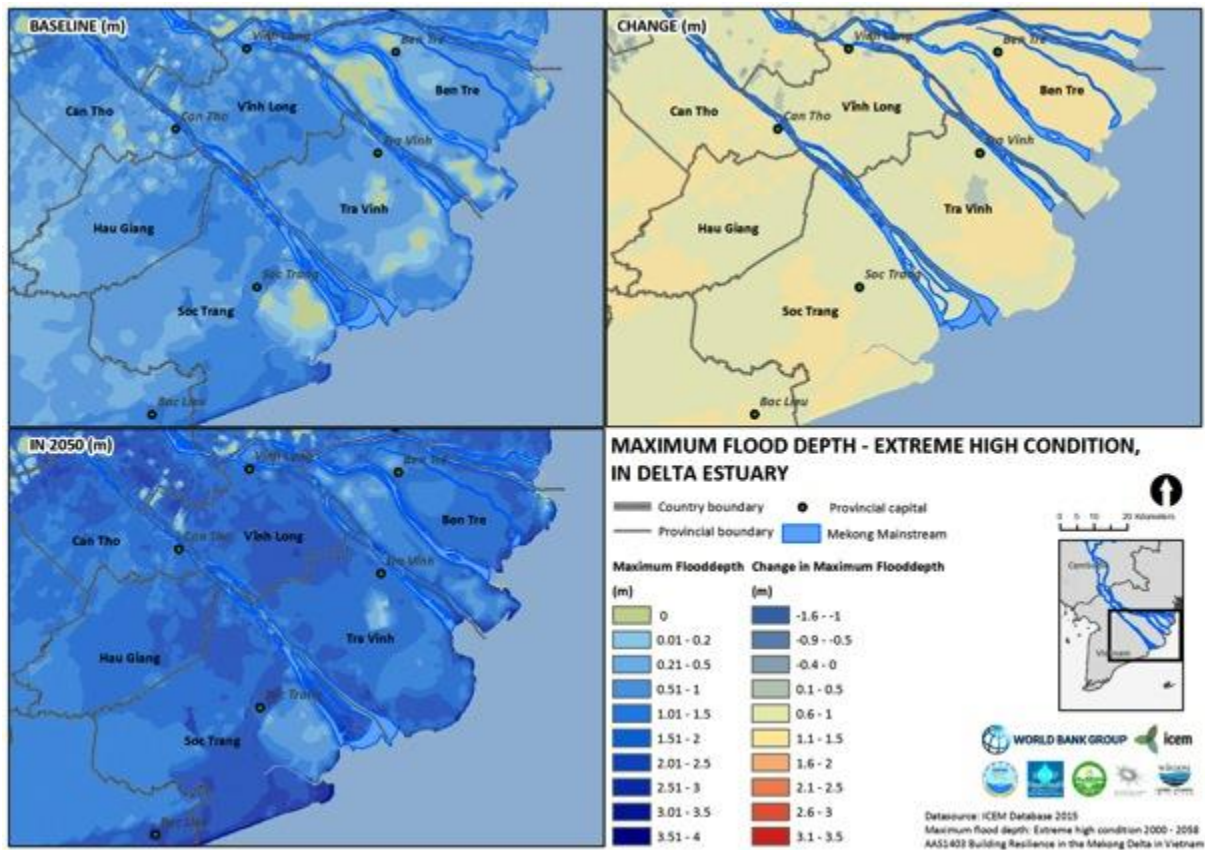


Figure 89: Changes in maximum flood depth under extreme high conditions in delta estuary

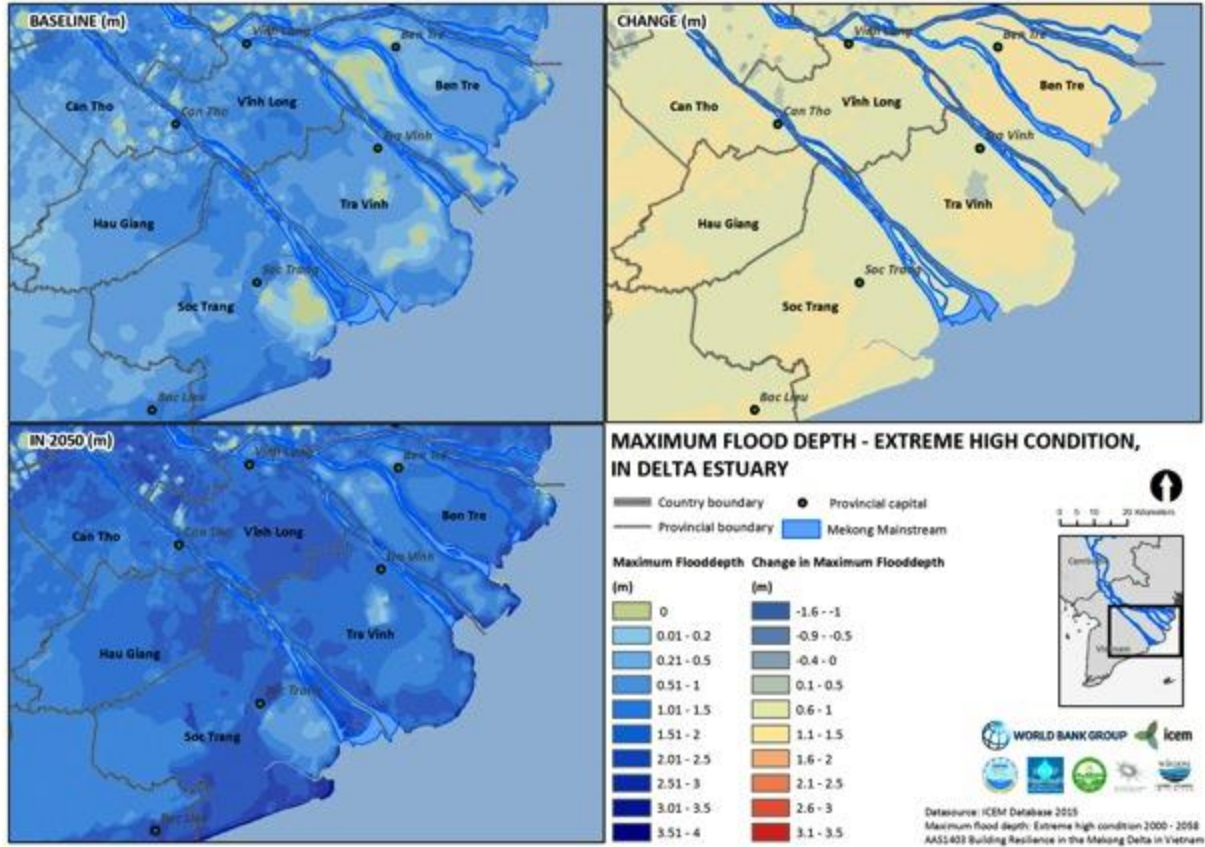


Figure 90: Changes in flood duration (<1m) under extreme high conditions in delta estuary

3.4.2.3 Saline intrusion

In 2050 under future worse case scenarios salinity duration ($>4\text{g/L}$) will increase by up to 45-60 days in Soc Trang, Ben Tre and Tra Vinh (Figure 91). Increased saline intrusion put further pressures on land use, balancing brackish and freshwater aquaculture and dry season water shortages.

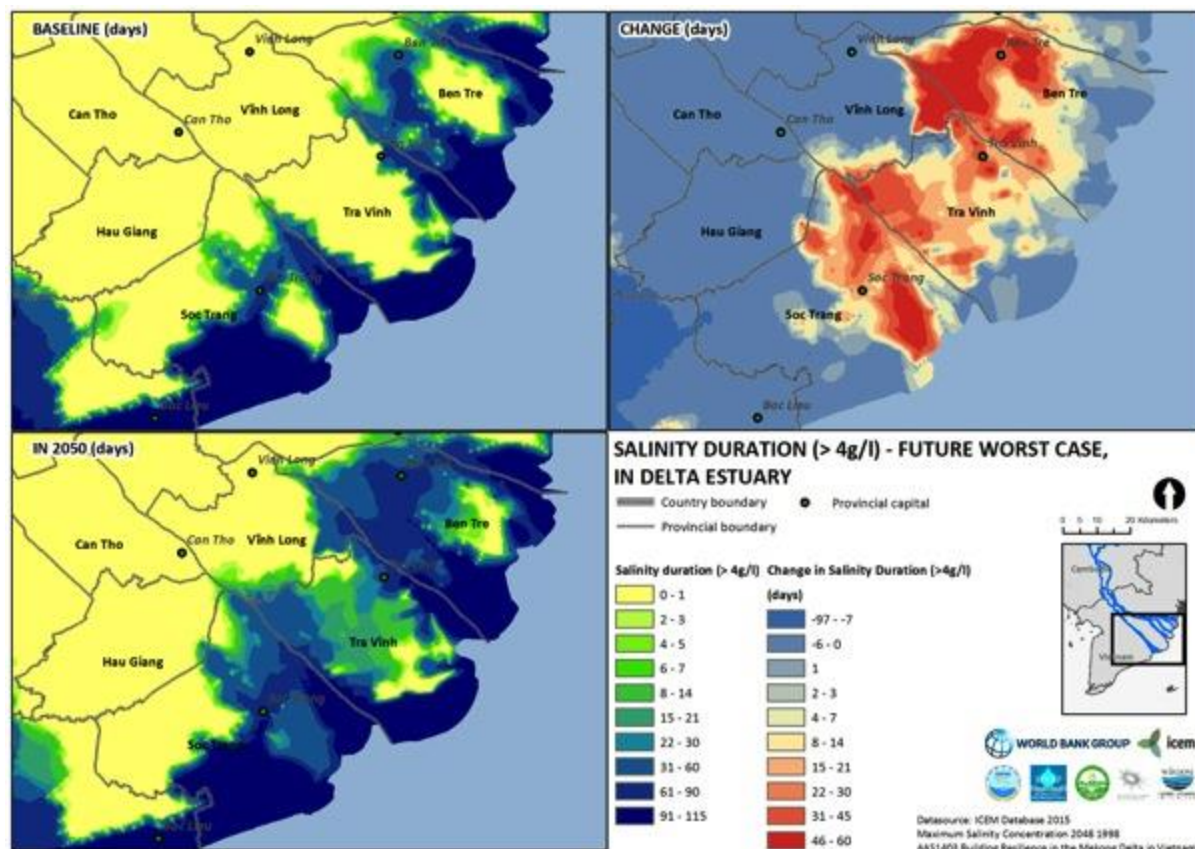


Figure 91: Changes in salinity duration ($>4\text{g/L}$) under future worst-case scenario in the delta estuary

3.4.2.4 Coastal erosion

The coastal lines for Ben Tre and Tra Vinh are shown below in Figure 92 and 93 respectively. The coastal from 1992-2011 show increasing erosion rates. In 2050, under a worst-case scenario the increasing erosion rates (m/year) in Ben Tre and Tra Vinh will lead to further coastal erosion.

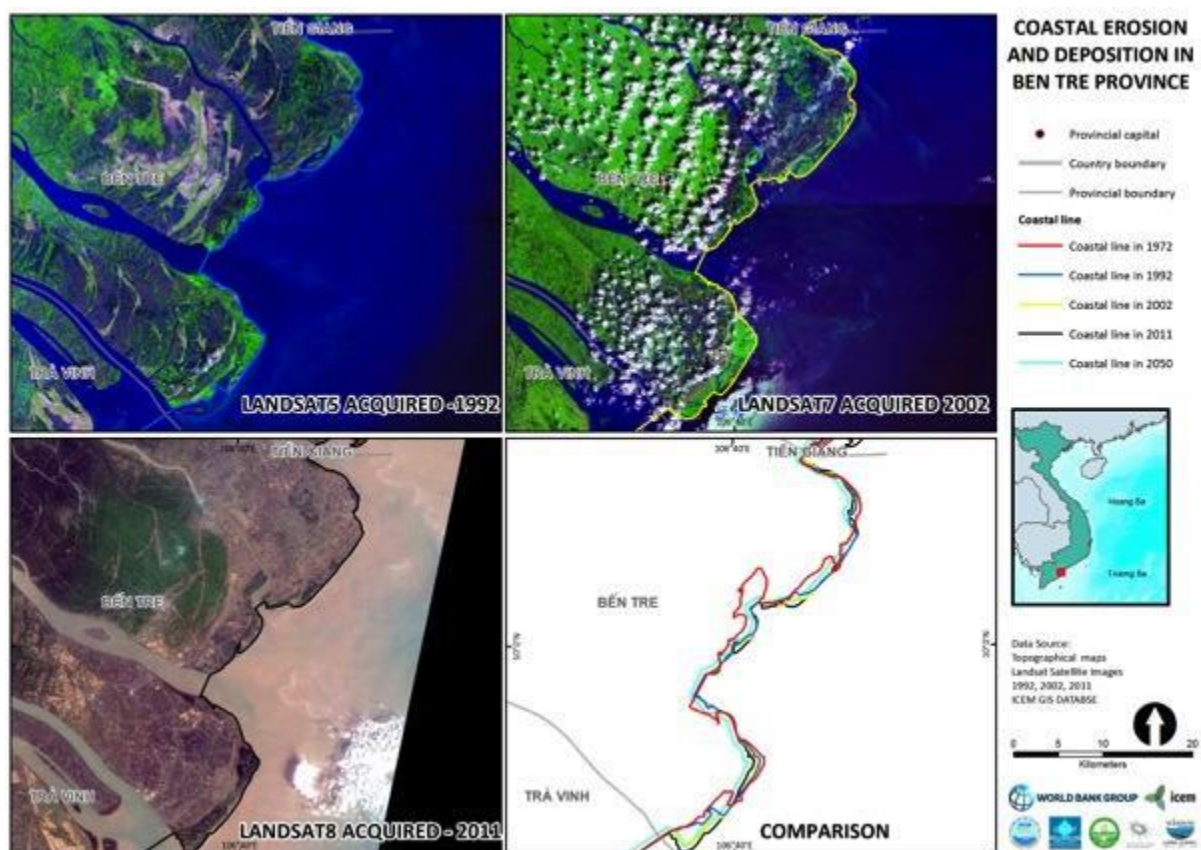


Figure 92: Changes in coastal erosion and deposition in Ben Tre province

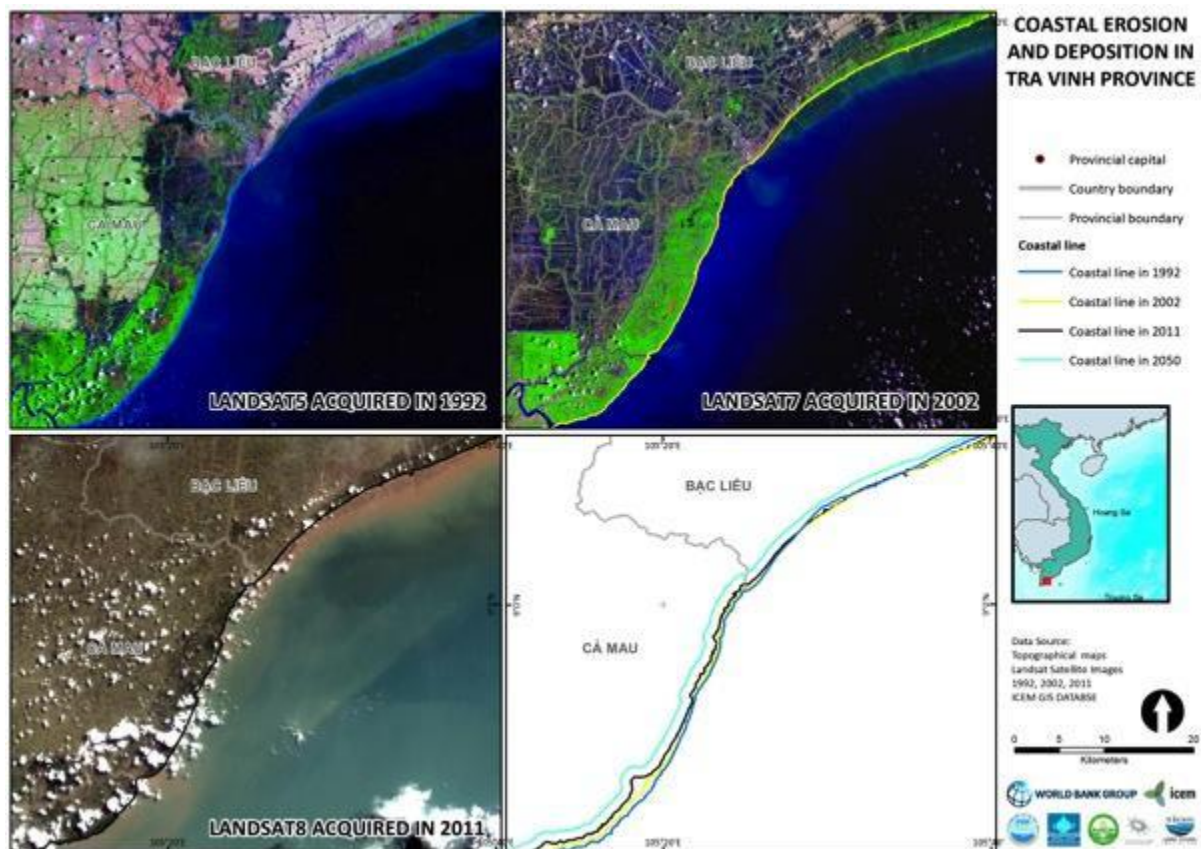


Figure 93: Changes in coastal erosion and deposition in Tra Vinh province

3.4.3 Component 4: Delta peninsula

3.4.3.1 Temperature and rainfall

In 2050 the average maximum temperatures in the dry season will increase by 2-2.5°C in most areas of Ca Mau and Bac Lieu (Figure 94). The maximum average temperatures in the dry season in Bac Lieu are expected increase from around 30.6°C to 32.6°C. The maximum average wet season temperatures will increase by 1.75-2°C in the Ca Mau peninsula to 2.0-2.25°C further inland in Bac Lieu (Figure 95).

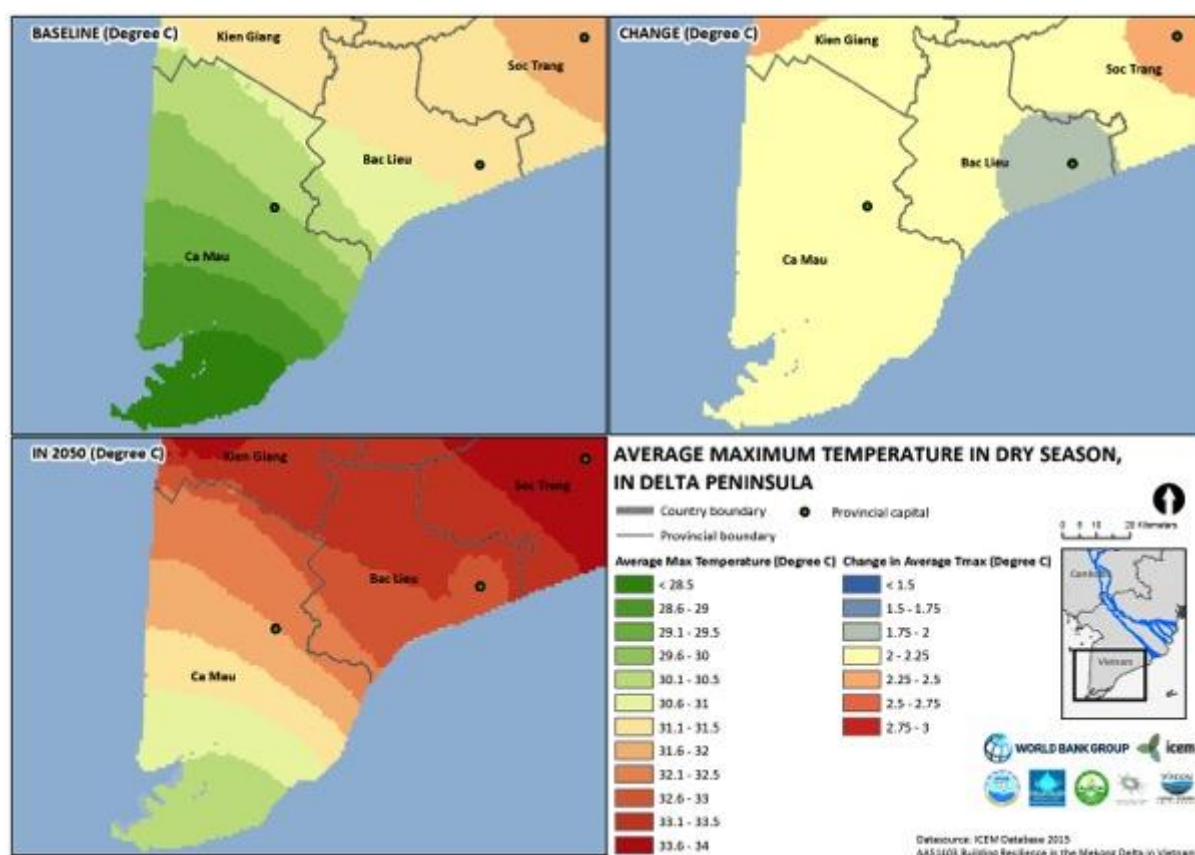


Figure 94: Changes in dry season average maximum temperatures

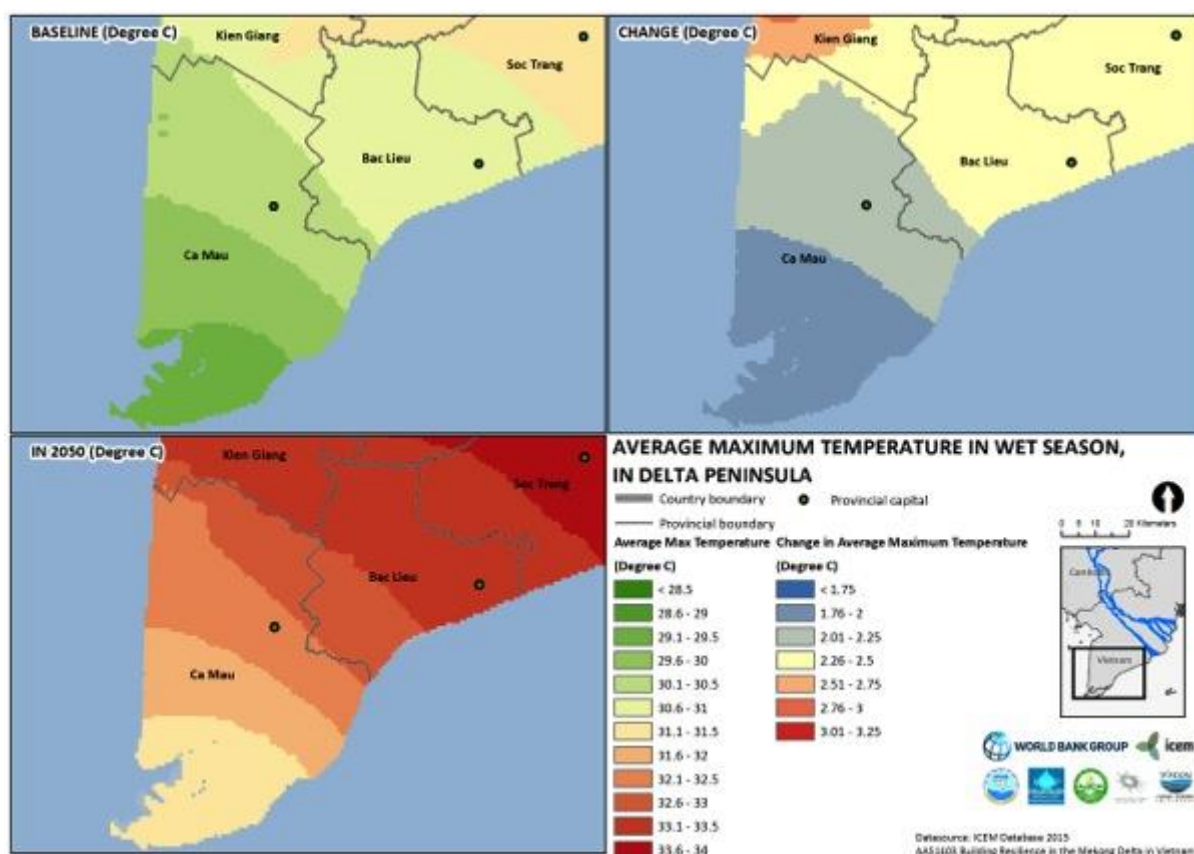


Figure 95: Changes in wet season average maximum temperatures for delta peninsula

In 2050 the average dry season rainfall is expected to reduce by -3.5-3.9%. Some areas of Ca Mau are already experiencing freshwater shortages in the dry season, a further drop in rainfall will have significant impacts of water supply for agricultural and domestic uses (Figure 96).

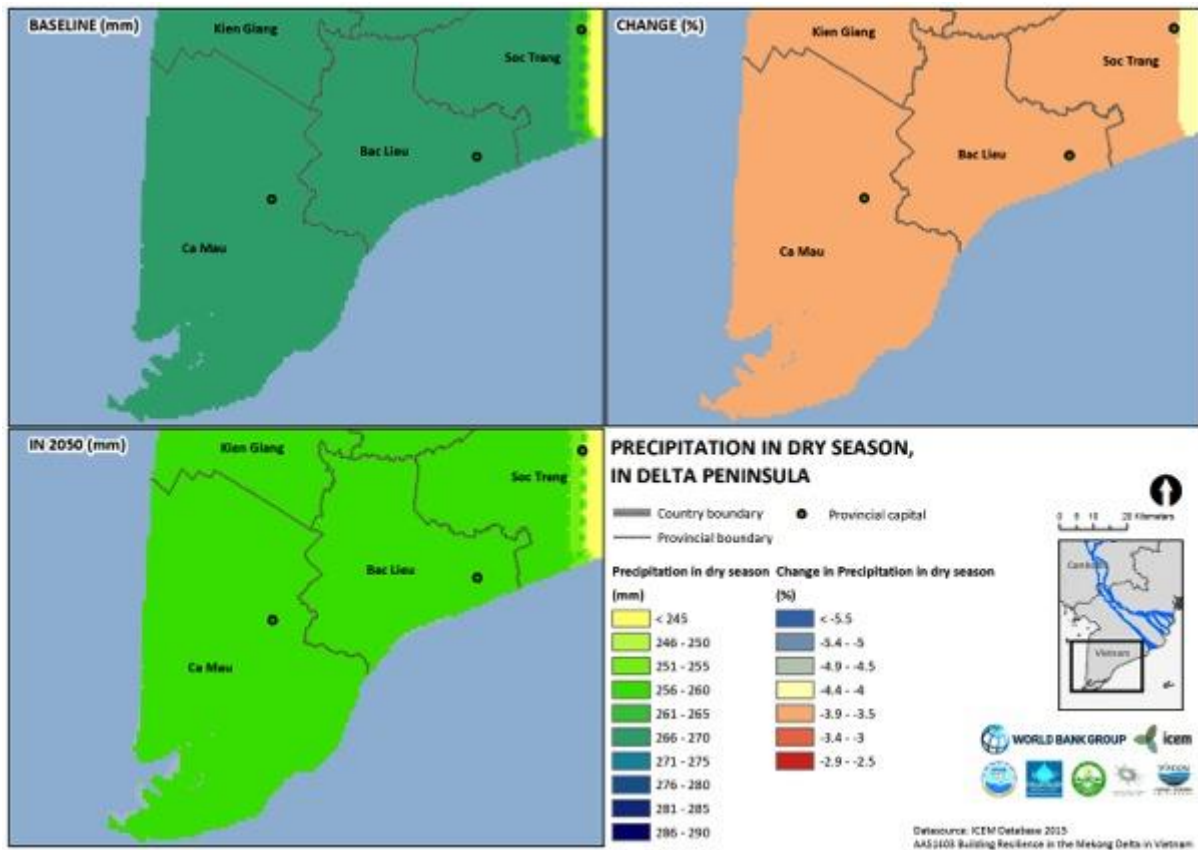


Figure 96: Changes in dry season rainfall in the delta peninsula

In 2050 the average wet season rainfall in the delta peninsula will increase by 9.1-9.5% from the current baseline of around 981-1000mm of rainfall, this could increase annual wet season rainfall up to around 1100mm (Figure 97).

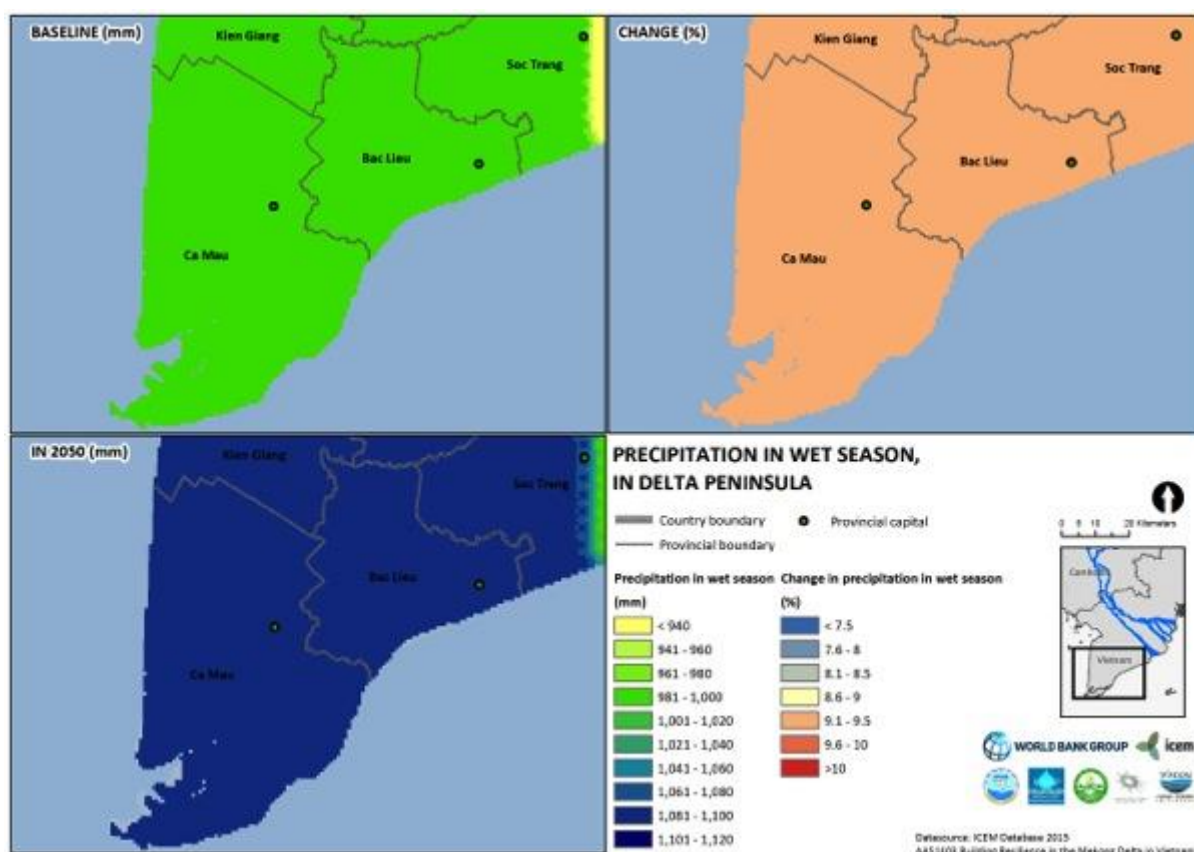


Figure 97: Changes in wet season rainfall in the delta peninsula

3.4.3.2 Flooding

In 2050 under extreme high conditions the maximum flood depth (meters) will increase by 0.6-1m and 1.1-1.5m in the delta peninsula (Figure 98). The delta peninsula is highly vulnerable to flooding with the combination of sea level rise and increased wet season rainfall. In 2050 under extreme high conditions, coastal areas of Ca Mau, Bac Lieu will experience an increase of flood duration by up to 101-140 days (Figure 99). The baseline only some areas of Bac Lieu experience flood duration (days) of 8-21 days.

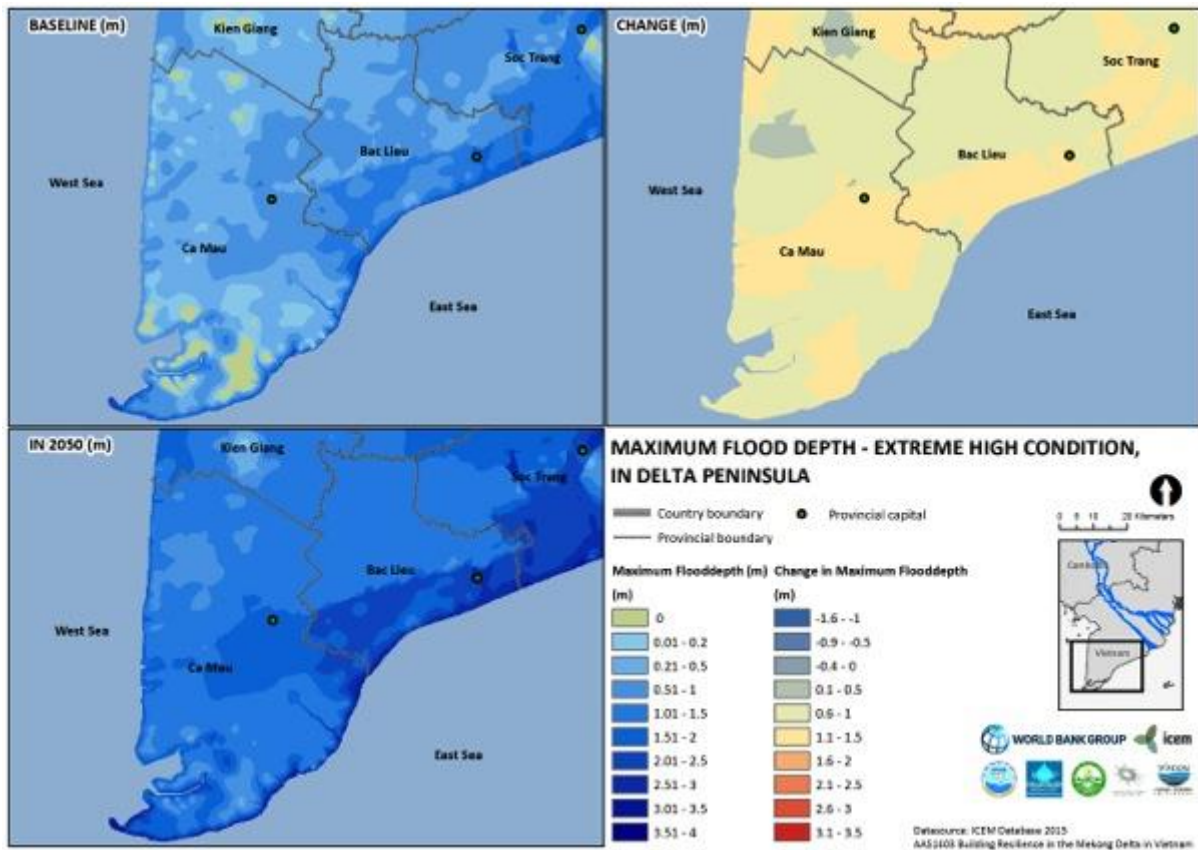


Figure 98: Changes in maximum flood depth under extreme high conditions for delta peninsula

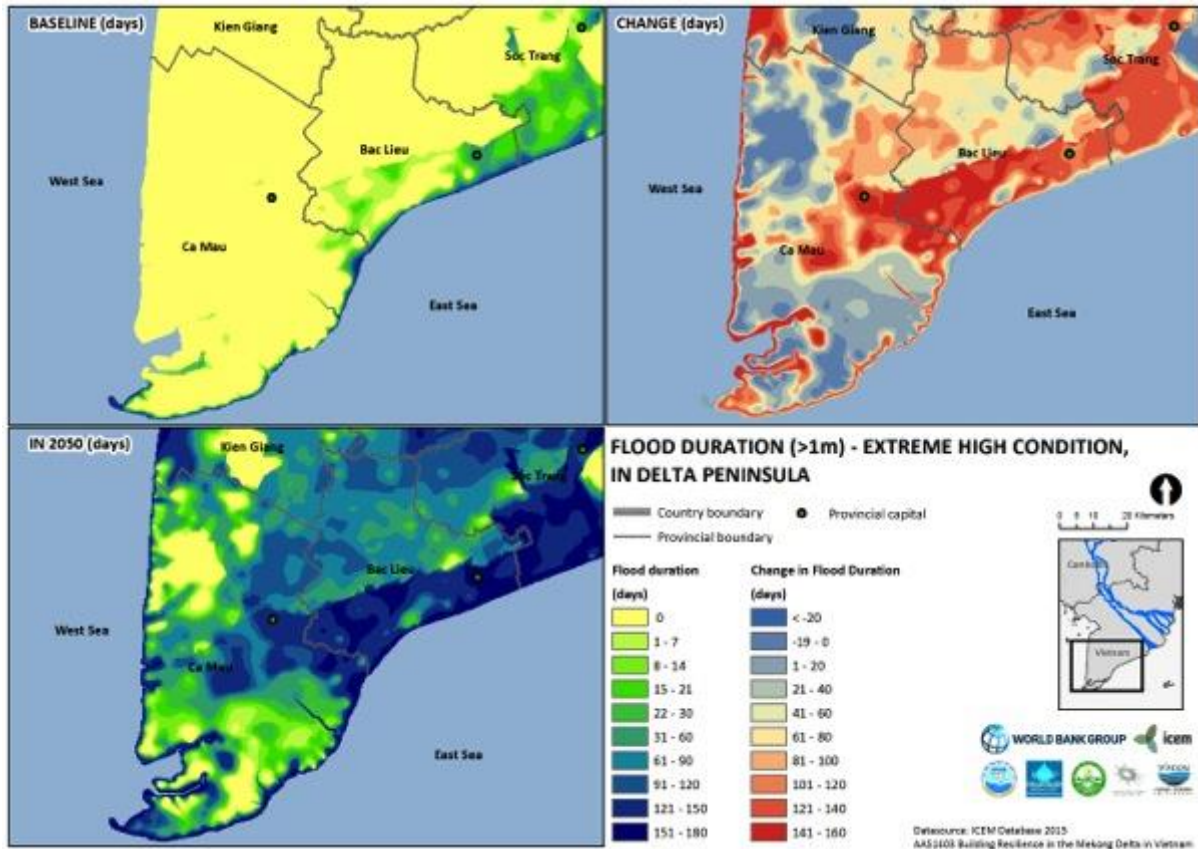


Figure 99: Changes in flood duration (>1m) under extreme high conditions for delta peninsula

3.4.3.3 Saline intrusion

Salinity concentration in the delta peninsula is already elevated, around 35g/L in some areas in Ca Mau. In 2050 under future worse case scenarios salinity concentration (g/L) will increase by 0.1-1g/L in some areas of Ca Mau and Bac Lieu, and will reduce by <-3g/L in Ca Mau and Kien Giang (Figure 100).

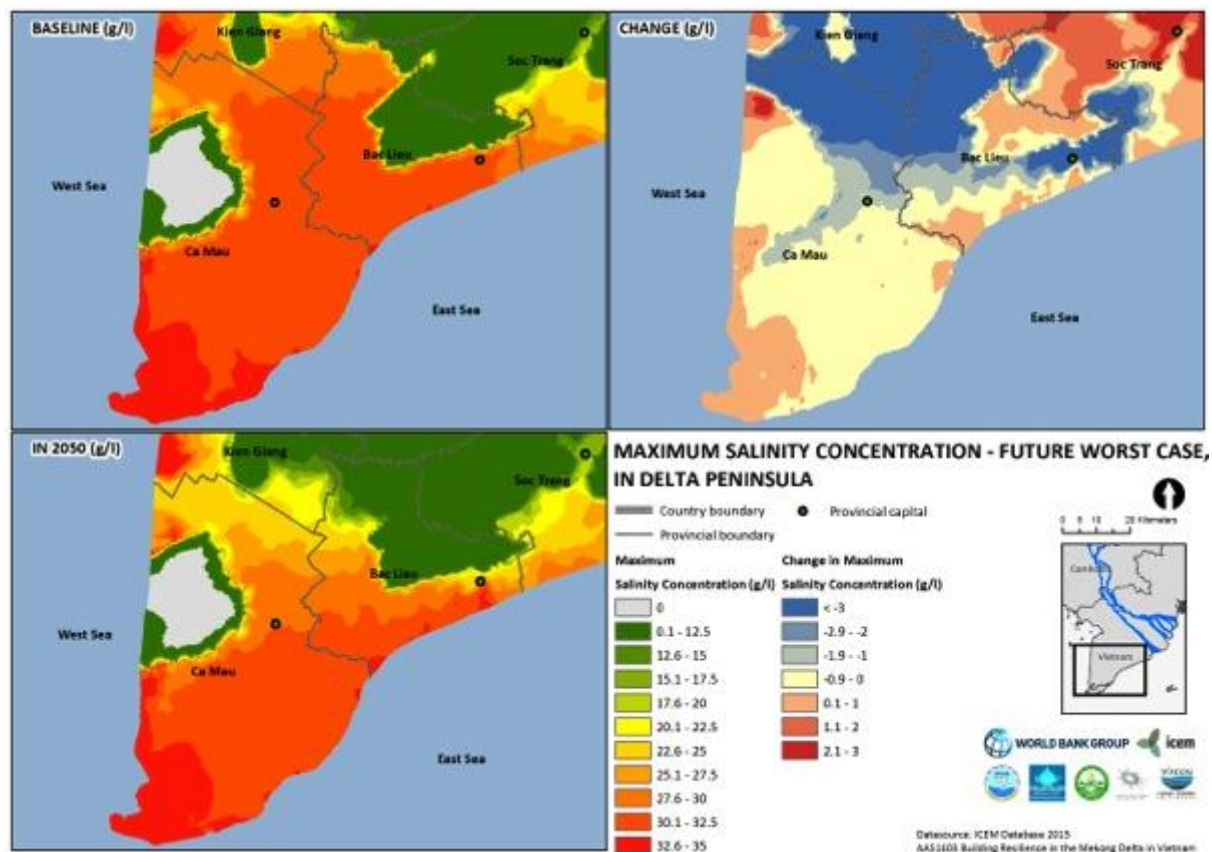


Figure 100: Changes in maximum salinity concentration under future worst-case scenario for the delta peninsula

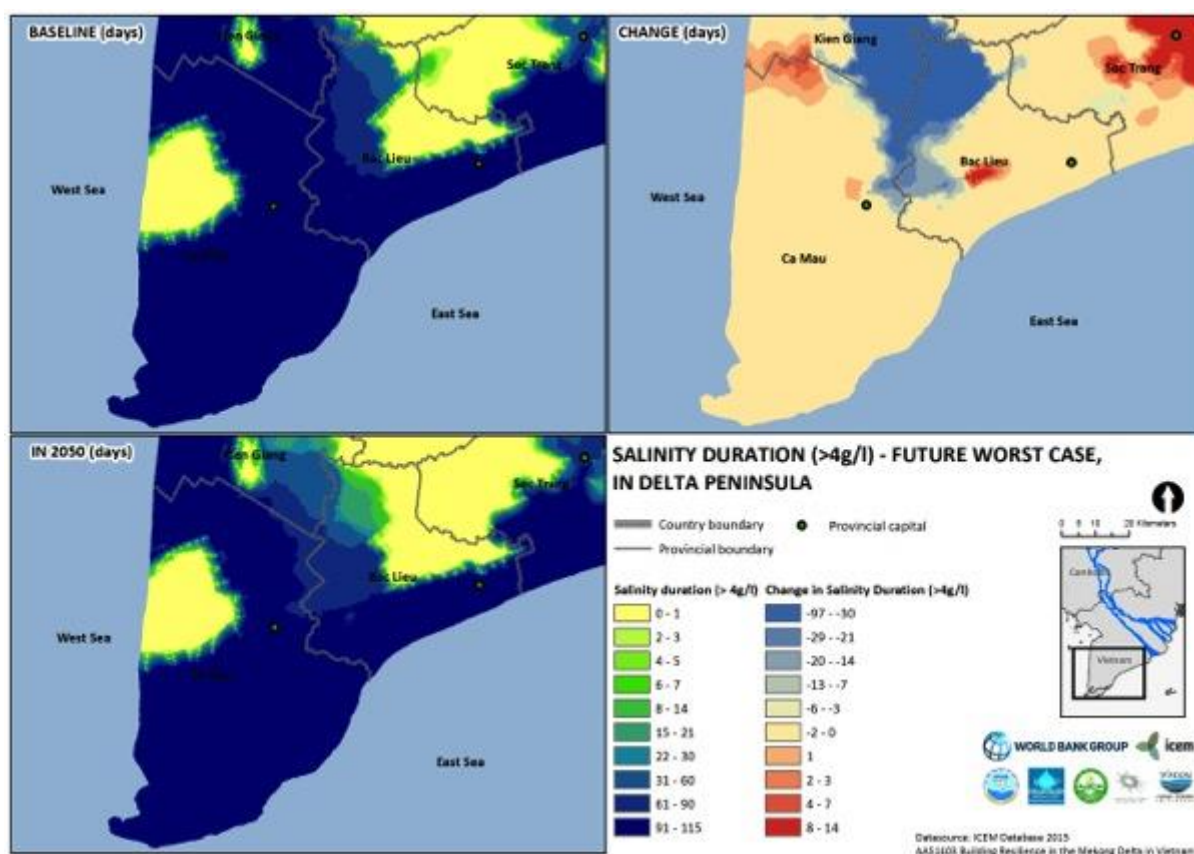


Figure 101: Changes under salinity duration (4g/L) under future worst-case scenario in the delta peninsula

3.4.3.4 Coastal erosion

The coastal lines for Soc Trang and Bac Lieu (Figure 102) and Bac Lieu and Ca Mau (Figure 103) show increasing rates of erosion from 1992-2011. In 2050 under a worst-case scenario the increasing erosion rates (m/year) will lead to further coastal erosion in the delta peninsula, especially the Ca Mau peninsula that is influenced by both the East and West Sea.

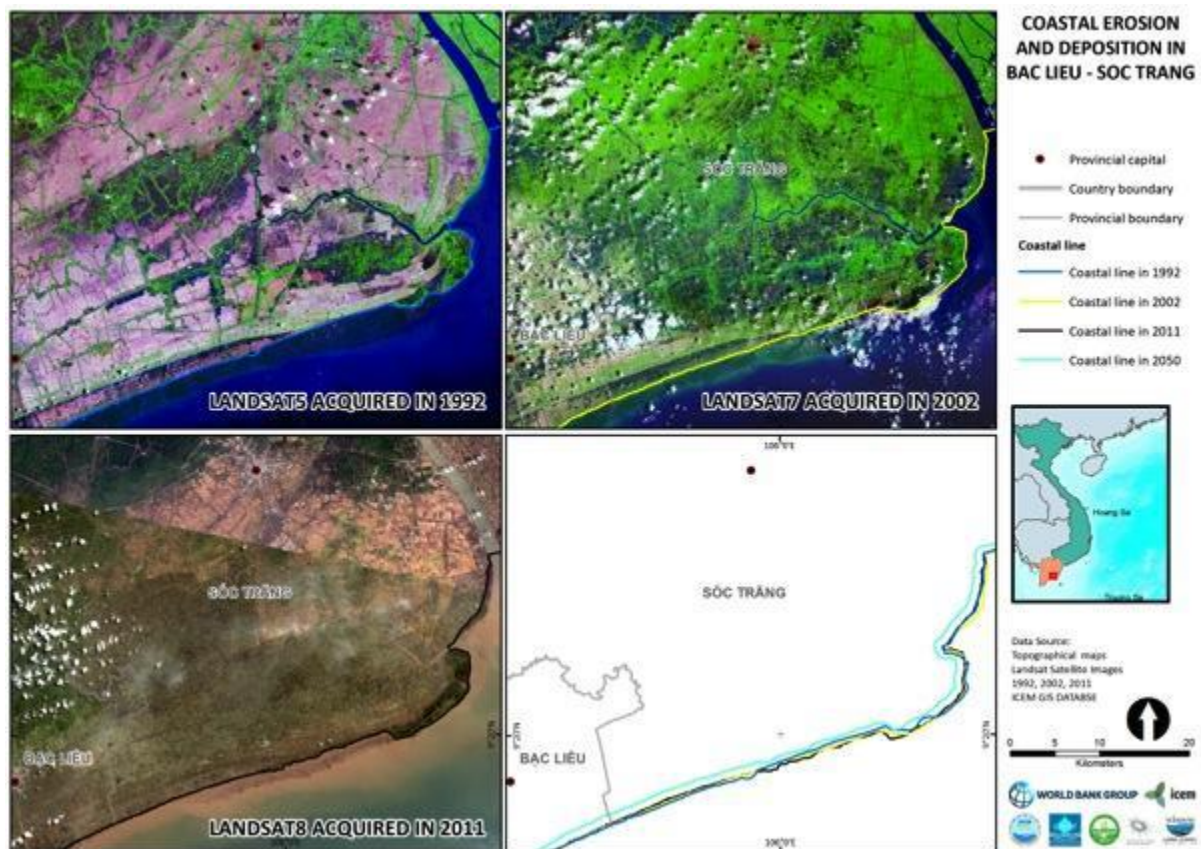


Figure 102: Changes in coastal erosion in Bac Lieu and Soc Trang

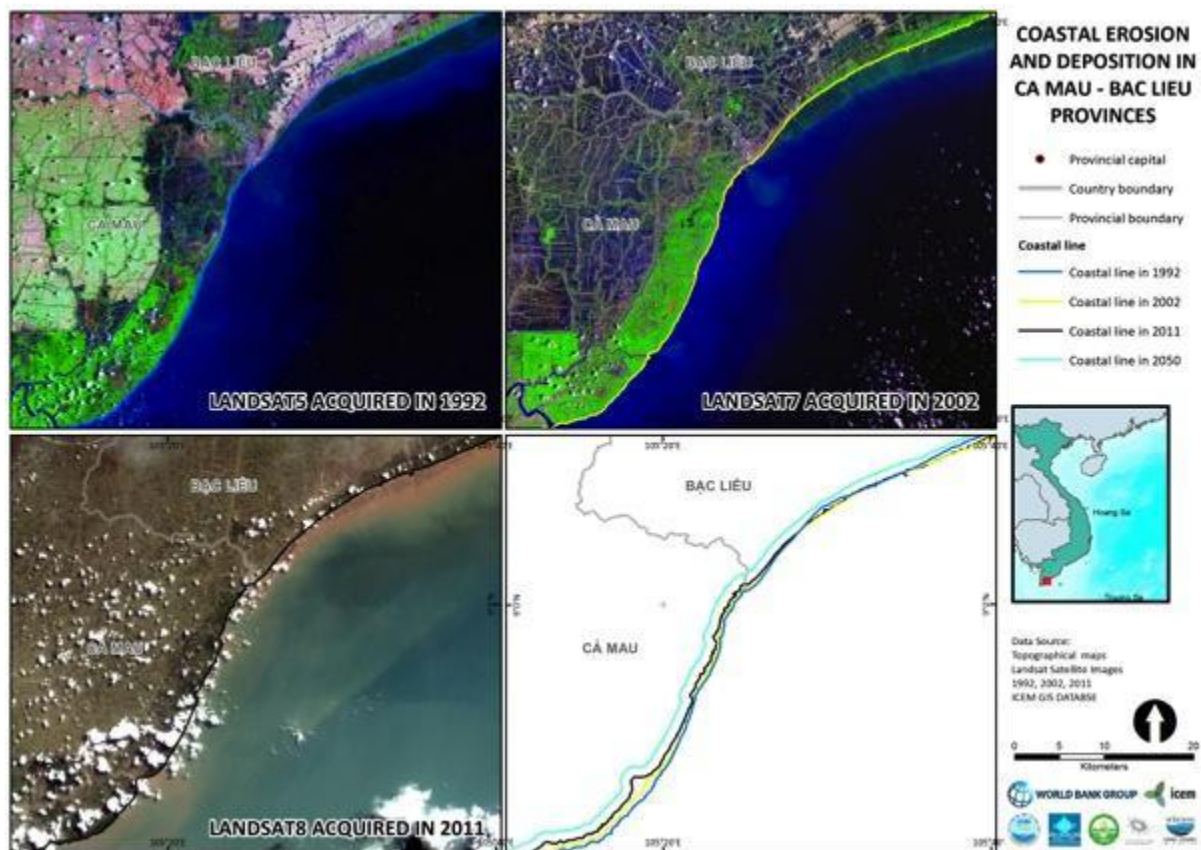


Figure 103: Changes in coastal erosion in Ca Mau and Bac Lieu

4 LEGAL AND INSTITUTIONAL ASSESSMENT

This section examines at the legal and institutional framework in Vietnam for climate change adaptation and mitigation and recommendations for improving environmental management in the water resources management and agricultural sectors.

Globally, climate change is expected to seriously impact production, livelihoods and the environment. Rising temperatures, sea level rise, flooding, dry season water shortages and salinity intrusion will affect agriculture, posing a major risk to economic growth and livelihoods. The global average temperature and sea levels rose rapidly in the last 100 years, especially in the last 25 years. El Niño, La Niña had increasingly strong impact. Climate change has increased the prevalence and severity of natural disasters, including storms, flooding and drought (IPCC 2012).

4.1 Projected climate change impacts in Vietnam

Vietnam is likely to be highly impacted by climate change, due to a very long coastline, dependence on agriculture, largely rural population (70 percent), low levels of development in rural areas, and the location of Ho Chi Minh City- the largest urban center in a low-lying coastal zone. Vietnam has been identified as one of the top 15 countries in the world already vulnerable to natural hazards like drought and storms, in terms of number of people and scale of exposure (Dilley et al. 2005). Forecasted temperature increases will exacerbate this condition to levels previously not experienced. The increase in temperature would be in the range of 1.6 to 2.8°C in different climate zones. Temperatures in Northern and Northern Central climate zones of Vietnam are predicted to increase faster than those in Southern zones.

Vietnam has already begun to feel the effects of climate change: average surface temperature has risen 0.7°C since 1950, prolonged typhoon and flood seasons, droughts in areas previously not vulnerable to aridity have been recorded, increased incidences of heavy rainfall and flooding; and storms are tracking into new coastal areas (Carew-Reid 2008; Ho Long Phi 2008). Further, the season for storms will likely extend, meaning that areas that have not typically experienced severe storms (the southeastern portion of the country and HCMC) may become increasingly vulnerable

The forecasted climate changes impacts to 2100 predicted; increased wet season rainfall, reduced dry season rainfall of around 10% or more, higher intensity and frequency of storms and floods and sea level rise of at least 1 meter (GOV 2008). Different regions of Vietnam are likely to have unique climate impacts, making a single national policy for adaptation difficult. Climate changes impacts will be experienced amid a host of ongoing national trends that can increase vulnerability to change, including:

- extensive losses of mangroves to shrimp farming for global export;
- declines in agricultural crop diversity;
- household livelihoods that are becoming less diverse;
- privatized natural resource commons; and
- eroded public social safety nets.

4.1.1 Social aspects of climate change

A recent study on social aspect¹³ aims to highlight how vulnerability to climate change is socially differentiated and what elements are needed to strengthen the adaptive capacity of poor people and regions, and how governments can support adaptation that addresses the needs of the poorest and most vulnerable, while maximizing co-benefits with development goals. In addition, the study draws attention to 'soft' or institutional and policy measures of adaptation that is well placed to complement 'hard' infrastructure investments. Vietnam was among the five countries studied. Among the key findings, the most relevant to Mekong delta are summarized below:

- Vulnerability to climate change is socially differentiated and exposure to climate risk will pose different risks to different groups of people. Those who are most vulnerable to climate risk were those already socially vulnerable (elderly, women, children, sick, disabled); ethnic minorities; indigenous peoples; people dependent on natural resources for their livelihoods; and migrants.
- The poor were identified as particularly vulnerable, this finding highlights the target groups that need priority attention for adaptation measures and development interventions in order to build local resilience;
- ‘*One size fits all*’ adaptation planning does not work; different communities among different regions will have different ideas about how to match their development objectives to the realities of climate change impacts on these development trajectories.
- Experience with climate events to date and past coping measures hold valuable lessons for the future; but future adaptation requires new knowledge and improved access to information to reduce the risk.
- Decisions to invest in hard adaptation measures may be “high-regrets” options in social and economic terms and require careful review while investing on “soft investment” such as increasing knowledge and building response capacity (i.e. investing in disaster risk management; having yearly evacuation drills, providing weather data to local authorities, etc.) could be more cost-effective given the level of future uncertainties.

Interventions therefore need to be designed in an integrated and cross-sectoral manner in order to address risks and benefits of adaptation options for different stakeholders across scales.

4.2 Governance arrangements for responding to climate change

4.2.1 National Target Programme to Respond To Climate Change (NTPRCC)

The Government of Vietnam has ratified the UNFCCC and the Kyoto Protocol. In response to climate change, the government has created a legal framework for the prevention and mitigation of natural disasters. The National Target Programme to Respond to Climate Change (NTPRCC) was approved in December 2008 and the National Strategy on Climate Change was approved in December 2011. These are important achievements of the Government with the support of international donors and development partners in response to respond to climate change in Vietnam.

The Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment (MONRE) MONRE in co-ordination with other agencies are responsible for the implementation of the NTPRCC and have implemented

¹³ *The Economics of Adaptation to Climate Change (EACC): Social Component (draft May 27, 2010).*

core tasks on institutional development, policy and planning, building scenarios of climate change and sea level rise and assessing the impact of climate change on different sectors and regions and building science and technology.

Vietnam has adopted a strategy of ‘no regrets’ for climate change mitigation. The Government is balancing the priorities of economic development and energy with social and environmental issues. Investments in the technology industry and other sectors will significantly reduce the amount of waste and wastewater on a national scale. Policies on reducing energy use in combination with economic instruments such as charges and taxes is slowly changing habits to reduce emissions in the industry and manufacturing sectors to promote more sustainable use of energy and resources.

4.2.2 Climate change adaptation

Adapting to climate change is the core strategy of the Government of Vietnam climate policy. The IPCC reported that sea levels will rise 19-59cm by 2100, however many scientists predict sea levels will rise by at least one meter by 2100 and will generate serious costs to the coastal areas of Vietnam, especially the Mekong Delta. This will require investments in infrastructure for flood and salinity control and coastal protection. The environmental and social concerns related to the construction of dike and water control structures need to be considered in detail prior to any new investments. The policy for the development of structural measures is necessary and focused on protecting urban areas and key economic zones, including agriculture.

In recent years, nine participating national target programs have been implemented across a number of sectors to cope with climate change development and 122 policy actions, led by: MONRE, MARD and the Ministries of Industry and Trade, Construction, Communications and Transport, Health, Planning and Investment, Education and Training, and Finance. Within this policy framework, 122 policy actions on climate change have been approved.

4.2.3 Implementation of climate change program

MONRE was responsible for leading and coordinating the implementation of the climate change program. The following results have been achieved:

- Developed and issued the guidance framework to build an action plan to respond to climate change and help the ministries, branches and localities to study and develop a plan of action to respond to climate change;
- Formulated and submitted to the Prime Minister the assessment criteria for priority projects under the Support Programme to Respond to Climate Change (SP-RCC) (*Decision No. 1719 / QĐ-TTg dated 04/10/2011 of the Prime Minister*);
- Issued guidelines for the construction of priority projects proposed under the SP-RCC (*Document No. 3939 / BTNMT -KTTVBĐKH day in November 2011 to the ministries, branches and localities*);
- The Council established interdisciplinary evaluation and determined the list of priority projects under the SP-RCC (*Decision No. 1985 / QĐ-BTNMT, October 27, 2011*);
- Working Regulation issued by the Interagency Council (*Decision No. 1986 / QĐ-BTNMT October 27, 2011*); and

- Coordinated with the Ministry of Finance (MOF) and Ministry of Planning and Investment (MPI) to issue ‘*Joint Circular No. 07/2010 / MPI TTLT BTNMT-BTC guiding the management and use of State budget implementation National Target Programme to Respond to Climate Change 2009-2015*’.

4.2.4 Regional coordination of LMB countries

Climate change also poses a new challenge to the countries in the LMB countries. While the models predict overall temperature increases, predictions regarding precipitation are less certain. However extreme weather events, both floods and droughts, are likely to become more frequent and there is likely to be less predictability in weather patterns. Longer term climate forecasting must be an essential building block in decision-making regarding development of new water related developments including hydropower. The MRC has started a regional analysis on climate change impacts on the hydrology of the LMB using a modeling approach. However, existing data and information collection systems are still largely inadequate to capture the complexities of the basin. At the same time, the LMB countries have recognized the need to upgrade their own hydro-meteorological (hydro-met) networks to address the risks posed by both present and future weather events and to share information among riparian countries and develop improved regional and national systems for flood and drought forecasting and warning.

4.3 Results of CC adaptation action plan in Vietnam

Based on the results of the climate change impact assessment, there are seven Ministries that have issued 7 action plans to respond to climate change. A number of key activities have been implemented.

4.3.1 Natural resources and environment

Based on the National Strategy on Climate Change, MONRE in collaboration with other Ministries and the construction sector, the PM issued the ‘*National Action Plan on Climate Change 2012-2020*’, which included the following objectives:

- Strengthening climate monitoring, early warning of natural disasters;
- Ensuring food and water security;
- Proactively responding to natural disasters to protect against flooding and strengthening of river dykes, sea dykes and reservoir safety;
- Reducing greenhouse gas emissions through low carbon development;
- Strengthening management and policy mechanisms to respond to climate change;
- Mobilizing the participation of all economic sectors, scientific institutions and NGOs in responding to climate change and improving community resilience to climate change; and
- Raising awareness and develop human resources.
- Developing science and technology as the basis for policy development, impact assessment and identifying measures to adapt to and mitigate climate change impacts;
- Promoting international cooperation, empowerment and role of Vietnam in international activities on climate change; and
- Mobilizing financial resources and coping with climate change.

4.3.2 Agricultural sector

Vietnam needs to focus on building sustainable agriculture through the application of advanced technologies to maintain and develop the quality and quantity of agricultural products in the context of climate change. MARD develops the technical solutions for the management and

sustainable development of agriculture to respond to climate change in the Mekong Delta, including:

- protecting mangrove forests;
- modelling greenhouse gas emissions by water saving irrigation techniques in rice cultivation;
- building early warning systems for flood and drought risk of food insecurity in the Red River and the Mekong Delta in 2030; and
- Assessing the impacts of climate change on safety and efficiency of reservoirs and response solutions.

4.3.3 Land use planning

The GoV issued land use planning to 2020, on the implementation of the Land Law 2013 this plan was superseded by the development of the 2016-2020 land use planning that focused on meeting requirements in socio-economic development, national defense and security, protecting natural resources and adapting to climate change and sea level rise. MONRE other ministries, relevant agencies and People's Provincial Committees (PPCs) also reviewed land use plans. The MPI also forecasted the country's socio-economic development in the 2016-2020 period, making it easier for adjustments to be made to land use planning from 2016-20. This forecasting included a review of the planning of industrial zones, golf courses, coastal and border economic zones to 2020. MARD reviewed forest and agricultural development planning and recommended a list of projects for land use, as well as adjusting the area for rice planting at provincial administrative level.

4.3.4 Agricultural Restructuring Plan

Recently, the Government has issued an instruction to accelerate the implementation of the 'Agricultural Restructuring Plan' towards higher added value and sustainable development. The new instruction targets close cooperation in value chains from production to consumption among farmers, collectives, and enterprises. Further research on scientific and technological advances, market information and especially trade commitments for the agro-forestry and fishery sectors was undertaken to improve market development, appropriate protection of domestic production, the enhancement of brand names and removal of trade barriers.

At the Provincial level, local authorities were required to effectively implement the 'Agricultural Restructuring Plan', renew projects, programs, and action plans in socio-economic development plans in the 2016-2020 period. The new instruction aims to establish interdisciplinary steering committees on agricultural restructuring and new rural area building at the local level. The instruction also promotes effective models of production and encourages enterprises to boost investment and to connect with local communities in favor of large-scale value production.

4.3.5 Forestry sector

The GoV has been implementing afforestation programs and biodiversity conservation in order to strengthen the resilience of forest ecosystems to protect the environment and for carbon storage to improve socio-economic development of the community forest areas (e.g. REDD and REDD +). This is a concrete example of the combination of adaptation and mitigation, taking advantage of the support mechanisms and strong international growth to ensure sustainable socio-economic development of local communities. These projects are in the preparatory phase, but the lessons in the implementation should be extended to other areas such

as agriculture and land use to leverage the investment of the private sector and international community.

The Plan on coastal forest protection and development to response the climate change in the 2015-2020 phase also has been approved. The Plan aims to expand the coastal forest area to 356,753 ha, and achieve coastal forest coverage of 19.5% by 2020. It will enhance the protective function of the coastal forests in response to climate change, sea-level rise, and disaster risk management and biodiversity conservation. The plan will implement five solutions on land, investment, science and technology, communications, education, capacity enhancement and policy completion.

The GoV allocated VND3,000 billion in the 2015 State budget towards 16 transition projects under the SP-RCC in Vietnam to support mangrove forest projects, riverhead protective forest projects and other urgent projects in the SP-RCC list. MARD will host and cooperate with other relevant agencies to assess and assume technical responsibilities for these projects and the investment levels of afforestation projects. The PPCs will launch the projects after completing investment procedures.

4.3.6 Carbon market

Vietnam is making preparing for the carbon market, implementing new projects to:

- build database son greenhouse gas emissions;
- develop roadmaps on participating in carbon market for solid waste;
- pilot the NAMA and develop roadmaps for steel production; and
- supervise and investigate operation of NAMA and carbon credits.

Of US\$3.6 million of investment, the project gets US\$3 million of non-refundable funds. The government contributes the rest of money (US\$600,00) the implementing agencies include: MONRE (US\$1.26 million), MOIT (US\$760,000), MOC (US\$700,000), MPI (US\$140,000) and MOF (US\$140,000). The carbon market is an important tool for cutting greenhouse gas emissions and offering substantial economic benefits to participating countries.

4.3.7 Construction sector

The Ministry of Construction (MOC) was assigned to review the master plan on developing the country's urban system to 2020 and plans on developing urban areas, hi-tech parks, economic and processing zones nationwide to 2020 and other projects under its management in the 2016-2020 period. Construction and urban planning has to incorporate solutions for coping with climate change and rising sea levels and adjust and supplement standards for planning investments in response to climate change.

4.3.8 Transport and energy sectors

The government is encouraging the use of clean energy sources, bio-energy and renewable energy in the transport and energy sector to reduce energy consumption. These polices are been supported by actions to promote public transport use and reduce domestic energy consumption to develop a green pathway in the energy and transport sectors.

4.4 Disaster risk management

Vietnam has a well-established disaster risk management (DRM) mechanism and coordination from the central to local levels that is largely related to hydro-meteorological hazards. Given

the current trends and predictions for climate change, further consideration and improvement of the current DRM set-up is crucial if the Government and civil society are to be able to meet the rising challenges.

This project aims to work in three different provinces with the provincial governments to strengthen institutional capacity and develop greater knowledge and expertise on DRM issues. It supports the objectives of the ‘*National Strategy for Disaster Prevention, Response and Mitigation to 2020*’, the ‘*Action Plan Framework for Adaptation to Climate Change in the Agriculture and Rural Development Sector Period 2008-2020*’ prepared by MARD, as well as the NTPRCC, including to:

- Support to DRM legislation and guidelines to implement the ‘*National Strategy for Disaster Prevention, Response and Mitigation to 2020*’ and ensuring consistency with climate change action plans;
- Support the formulation and issuance of national guidelines and standards to improve emergency response supply and distribution of food and drugs with focus on the most vulnerable groups (i.e. children, women, and the elderly) and recovery;
- Analyze the linkages between poverty and vulnerability and make concrete recommendations on insurance options (financial disaster risk transfer) for improving insurance-related policies and regulation by authorities and enabling implementation by insurance companies;
- Strengthen coordination and collaboration for policy development, early warning, and response
- Design of a central level DRM Centre, and three provincial level DRM Centers;
- Establish a central level DRM Centre, and three provincial level DRM Centers; and
- Strengthen DRM capacities of key staff, of new DRM Centers and local Central Flood and Storm Control (CFSC) partner agencies.

The structure of DRM in Vietnam is shown below in Figure xx.



Figure 104: DRM structure in Vietnam

4.4.1 Integrated Water Resources Management (IWRM) in the LMB

There is broad recognition within the region that the accelerated pace of water resources development in the Mekong Basin needs to be complemented by effective management arrangements for water and related resources to ensure that development of the water resources is sensitive to the maintenance of vital ecosystems and the productivity of capture fisheries, on which many of the poor depend for their livelihoods, and that water resources development becomes a negotiated process, which synthesizes the differing interests both within the different countries and between them.

At this moment, the delta faces two major challenges:

1. growing competition between rice farmers and shrimp farmers, triggered by their competing demands on water resources (freshwater vs. brackish water); and
2. deteriorating water quality resulting from increased levels of pollutants due to rapid urban development.

In the future, the Delta will face further challenges as upstream developments including hydropower and water diversions could change reduce the level of sediments and nutrients that fertilize agricultural lands and changing seasonal flow patterns could increase saline intrusion. In view of the above, the GoV is actively pursuing IWRM planning to tackle present and future water use needs in the LMB. In the Central Highlands, where Vietnam is an upper riparian country to Laos and Cambodia, water management is based on recognising the importance of the hydrological cycle to minimize and prevent conflicts over water utilization. Improved water resources management is also a key to reduce rural poverty. Vietnam is strengthening its hydro-met systems in the LMB to support data sharing with other riparian countries.

4.5 International support

Along with approving and implementing the NTPRCC, the efforts and actions in recent years has confirmed the efforts of the GoV to respond to climate change has been supported by international donors, a number of programs have been implemented.

4.5.1 Program SP-RCC

In 2010, the International Cooperation Agency of Japan (JICA) and the French Development Agency (AFD) signed a loan agreement for the SP-RCC program with a total budget respectively, 10 billion yen (about 110 million US dollars) and 20 million euros (about 28 million US dollars).

Responding to climate change is one of the strategic objectives of AFD's action in Vietnam. Between 2006 and 2014, the agency allocated €471 million to Viet Nam to implement 16 Climate projects for both climate change mitigation (public transport, energy) and for adaptation to its consequences: water infrastructure against flooding, for irrigation and the promotion of conservation and mountain farming. 47% of AFD's total commitments over this period were allocated to climate change. In addition to these investment projects, since 2009, AFD has been co-financing the (SP-RCC) It is in the form of budget support to the Government, co-financed with the other development partners (JICA, World Bank). As much as €100 million have been allocated to the SP-RCC.

In 2011, the Programme Coordinating Board of the SP-RCC implemented procedures for receiving funding including: AFD 25 million Euro, Development Cooperation Agency of Canada (CIDA) 4.45 million (funded non-refundable), JICA \$ 110 million (funded 2nd), Import-Export Bank (Korean Eximbank) \$ 30 million, Australian Department of Foreign

Affairs and Trade (DFAT) \$8 million each year in Australian Aid. There is also technical aid for the sector to perform the duties of the SP-RCC program. Other programs and international support include:

- ‘*Programme to adapt and mitigate the impacts of climate change in Vietnam*’: The Danish government grant in the amount equivalent to US \$ 40 million. Of which 10 million USD for the program to use energy-saving, efficient management by MOIT, \$ 30 million for the National Target Programme to Respond to Climate Change, including the two provinces of Quang Nam and Ben Tre is 20 million USD.
- ‘*Program to adapt to climate change and water management area Mekong Delta*’: the Dutch Government has committed funds for coping with climate change in the Mekong Delta.
- ‘*Program Reducing emissions of greenhouse gases through efforts to reduce deforestation and forest degradation*’: the Government of Norway has pledged about \$ 100 million aid for piloting in some areas of Vietnam to improve and enhance forest carbon stocks (REDD ++)

4.6 Legal and institutional policy on environmental management

The Government has ‘*Decree 18/2015/ND-CP regulating planning on environmental protection and evaluating the environment as well as its effects and environmental protection plans*’. Environmental protection plans will be devised at national and provincial levels in line with the 2021-2030 socio-economic development plan with a vision to 2040. The national plan will focus on managing forest environment, preserving bio-diversity and improving the environment of seas, islands and river basins. The plan will also cover emission and air quality; targets and solutions for planning on development activities producing large quantity of emission; the situation of land pollution and degradation; targets and solutions for preventing land pollution and degradation, recovering polluted and degraded land. In addition, the national plan will also include improving surface water pollution, and solutions to manage sewage and protect water resources.

4.6.1 Vietnam's Environmental and Social Safeguards Policies and Legislations

The ‘*Law on Environmental Protection (No.55/2014/QH13) dated June 23, 2014*’ and ‘*Decree on Environmental Protection Planning, Strategic Environmental Assessment, Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Protection Plans (No. 18/2015/ND-CP) dated February 14, 2015*’ are key legal frameworks for environmental management in Vietnam. The Law on Environmental Protection (LEP) provides statutory provisions on environmental protection activities, measures and resources used for the purpose of environmental protection, the rights, powers, duties and obligations of regulatory bodies, agencies, organizations, households and individuals who are tasked with the environmental protection. The LEP is applicable to regulatory bodies, public agencies, organizations, family households and individuals within the territory of the Socialist Republic of Vietnam, including mainland, islands, territorial waters and airspace. LEP is on regulating strategic environmental assessment, environmental impact assessment and environmental protection commitment. Other related regulations for environmental protection and climate resilience include:

- Law on Disaster Prevention and Mitigation (2013);
- National climate change strategy (2012);
- National Action Plan on Climate change (2012);
- NTPRCC (2008)

- National strategy for natural disaster prevention, response and mitigation toward 2020 (2007 – QD/TTg); and
- Action Plan Framework for Adaptation & Mitigation of Climate Change in the Agriculture and Rural Development Sector Period 2008-2020

The following regulations also apply to construction, land use planning, DRM, construction of dykes, flood protection, forests and water resources:

- Law on Construction (2003);
- Law on Land (2013);
- Law on Dykes (2006);
- Law on Forest Development and Protection (2004);
- Law on Labor (1994);
- Law on Cultural Heritage (2001); and
- Law on Water Resources (2012).

These laws in combination with World Bank safeguards and IFC requirements will need to be complied with during the implementation of the MD-ICRSL project. There are a number of Vietnam Environmental standards developed by MONRE and Ministry of Public Health (*See Annex 2*).

4.6.2 Application of World Bank Safeguard Policies

The MD-ICRSL project is proposed as Category A for Environmental Assessment due to its regional impacts, spatial extent, its focus on adaptive delta management, and civil works. The following World Bank (WB) safeguard policies have been triggered: (a) Environmental Assessment (OP 4.01); (b) Natural Habitat (OP 4.04); (c) Pest Management (OP 4.09); (d) Physical Cultural Resources (OP 4.11); (e) Forests (OP 4.36); (f) Safety of Dams (OP 4.37); and (g) Projects on International Waters (OP 7.50).

4.6.2.1 IFC Environmental, Health and Safety Guidelines

The Environmental, Health and Safety (EHS) Guidelines of the World Bank Group (WBG)/International Finance Corporation (IFC), 2008 is the safeguard guidelines for environment, health and safety for the development of the industrial and other projects. They contain performance levels and measures that are considered to be achievable in new facilities at reasonable costs using existing technologies. These guidelines can be accessed in the following website: <http://www.ifc.org/ifcext/sustainability.nsf/Content/EHSGuidelines>.

When host country regulations differ from the levels and measures presented in the EHS Guidelines, projects are expected to achieve whichever is more stringent. If less stringent levels or measures than those provided in these EHS Guidelines are appropriate, in view of specific project circumstances, a full and detailed justification for any proposed alternatives is needed as part of the site-specific environmental assessment. This justification should demonstrate that the choice for any alternate performance levels is protective of human health and the environment. The section 4 of EHS Guidelines for “Construction and Decommissioning” provides additional, specific guidance on prevention and control of community health and

safety impacts that may occur during new project development, at the end of the project life-cycle, or due to expansion or modification of existing project facilities.

4.6.2.2 World Bank Policy on Access to Information

In addition to the safeguard policies, the Access to Information Policy also relates to safeguards. To promote transparency and facilitate accountability, Bank Access to Information Policy supports decision making by the Borrower and Bank by allowing the public access to information on environmental and social aspects of projects in an accessible place and understandable form and language to key stakeholders. The Bank ensures that relevant project-related environmental and social safeguard documents, including the procedures prepared for projects involving subprojects, are disclosed in a timely manner before project appraisal formally begins. The policy requires disclosure in both English and Local language and must meet the World Bank standards.

4.6.3 Capacity in government environmental organizations

MONRE has been coordinating with other Ministries to improve the capacity of government organizations to implement relevant environmental legislation and standards. The Ministries of Industry and Trade, Public Security, Transportation, MARD, MOH and Science and Technology have developed units responsible for environmental management.

MONRE has also been monitoring the success of legislation introduced to improve SEA, EIA and environmental protection (EP) commitment. Since the implementation of '*Strategic environmental assessment, environmental impact assessment and environmental protection commitment (Decree No. 29/2011/ND-CP)*' the following outcomes have been achieved:

- **SEA:** 14 pilot projects, 40 SEA reports were reviewed in which 27 were submitted to PM for approval;
- **EIA:** 125 – 150 report/ year (from 2011 to now: 470). 95 were not approved and very few approved without adjustment;
- **EP program:** 125.
- **Human resources:** 62 divisions for EP, 1 division for environment management, 1126 officers, 323 work in EIA and SEA
- **Outcomes (57/63 provinces, cities):** 5,623 EIA reports, 1,960 EP programs approved. Number of reports reviewed varies between different provinces, average ~ 33 EIA reports/year /province.
- **EP program:** Data of (57/63 provinces), 1,788 EP programs prepared, 1193 not been prepared; and 27,746 simple EP programs preempted and 83,445 simple EP programs not been prepared.

4.6.4 Improving environmental management in the Mekong Delta

The Government of Vietnam has approved the Law on Environmental Protection 2014 and the Law on Biodiversity 2015 to support improved environmental management at the national and regional level. The law on environmental protection provides the legal framework for strategic environment assessment (SEA), environmental impact assessment (EIA) and environmental management plan (EMP). Relevant sub decrees are being prepared and implemented for managing environmental impacts in the transport, agricultural, industrial and other sectors.

Enhanced coordination between MONRE the provincial Department of Natural Resources and Environment (DONRE) and MARD, MOT and other ministries is being promoted to address environmental issues in the Mekong Delta. For the MD-ICRSL project the environmental management will need to consider regional impacts including flooding, salinity intrusion, surface water quality, groundwater extraction and sea level rise. At the provincial level this will require:

- Enhanced access to data and scientific evidence on the current status and future trends of the key Delta dynamics that shape the system;
- Promotion and awareness of integrated spatial approaches to development; and
- Cooperation between sectors and provinces during delta-wide and provincial planning approaches.

5 STRATEGIES FOR BUILDING RESILIENCE IN THE MEKONG DELTA

This section will discuss the strategies for Components 1-4 of the MD-ICRSL including:

- **Component 1:** Enhancing Monitoring, Analytics, and Information Systems
- **Component 2:** Flood management in the upper delta floodplain;
- **Component 3:** Adapting to salinity intrusion in the delta estuary; and
- **Component 4:** Protecting coastal areas in the delta peninsula.

5.1 Component 1: Enhancing Monitoring, Analytics and Information Systems

Component 1 of the project takes a much more comprehensive and regional approach to building resiliency in the Delta by investing in enhanced monitoring, analytics, and information systems to help guide planning and policy making. This strategy aligns closely with the overall MDP priority and “no-regret” measures to ensure the integrated development of the Delta. Component 1 provides the framework for updating and sharing information, knowledge, and data among stakeholders—researchers, policy makers and decision makers, planners –and between different levels and places are critical for resilient decisions. Component 1 comprised two subcomponents:

- **Sub-component 1.1:** Investing in Monitoring Systems and Related Products to Enhance Mekong Delta Knowledge Base:
- **Subcomponent 1.2:** Infrastructure and Integrated Information Systems for Enhanced Decision-Making

Component 1 supports the following initiatives:

- **Formulation of a Mekong Delta Climate Sustainability Assessment:** This will be comprehensive assessment of Delta sustainability issues, including status, trends, and recommendations on how to adaptively manage the Delta in context of rapidly changing environmental conditions. It will be a document that informs the government’s next five year regional, local, and sectoral planning in the Delta.
- **Upgrading Monitoring Programs:** Including remote sensing, land use, water quantity and quality, groundwater, coastal and river morphology, coastal zone protection, etc. to provide better information
- **Establishment of the Mekong Delta Center:** This will be the Center for data, information, education, knowledge, and advocacy for adapting to climate change and promoting sustainability.
- **MARD Real Time Operations System for Hydraulic Infrastructure:** This will be a decision support center to provide real-time information on salinity, floods, and droughts to allow for better operation of infrastructure to meet real-time conditions and demands.

The summary of costs, activities and further analysis on Component 1 is provided in Chapter 7: Building Adaptive Management Capacity in the Mekong Delta.

This strategy will improve sectoral and inter-provincial coordination in the Mekong

Delta. There is a well-defined legal framework for water management (i.e. the Law on Water Resources) and a network of institutions for water management. There are a number of key actors at the national, provincial and district level and research institutes, civil society, NGOs, regional organizations and development partners that need to be engaged in operationalizing the Mekong Delta Centre (Table 8).

Table 8: Key actors in the Mekong Delta

National	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment (MONRE) • Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Development (MARD) • Vietnam National Mekong Committee (VNMC) • Ministry of Construction (MOC) • Ministry of Transport (MOT) • Ministry of Planning and Investment (MPI)
Provincial	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 13 People's Provincial Committees (PPC) • Department of Natural Resources and Environment (DONRE) • Department of Agriculture and Rural Development (DARD)
Academic and research institutes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Institute of Meteorology, Hydrology and Environment (IMHEN) • Southern Institute of Water Resources Research (SIWRR) • Southern Institute of Water Resources Planning (SIWRP) • Division for Water Resources Planning and Investigation for the South of Vietnam (DWRPIS) • Sub-national Institute of Agricultural Planning and Projection (Sub-NIAPP), • Sub-institute of Hydrometeorology and Environment of South Vietnam (SIHYMETE) • Southern Regional Hydro-meteorological Center (SRHC), and • Can Tho University (CTU)
Civil society	Water users organizations (WUOs)
NGOs	WWF, Oxfam Australia
Development partners	World Bank, ADB, JICA, UNDP, IFAD, IUCN, Australian DFAT, USAID, NL, GIZ
River basin organizations (RBOs)	Mekong River Commission (MRC)

The MDP identified that delta planning and coordination mechanisms are needed to ensure that sectoral master plans consider flood management, irrigation, land use and cropping in an integrated manner. Understanding the policy context and the overlapping and competing priorities of sectoral and provincial master plans in the Mekong Delta is critical for implementing future investments. National policies and master planning have been strong drivers for rice intensification, flood and salinity-control control structures, agricultural diversification (i.e. encouraging transition from rice to aquaculture, horticulture and shrimp farming), mangrove restoration, sea dykes and water resources management. The existing Vietnamese strategies and master plans for the Mekong Delta are outlined below in Table 9.

Table 9: Vietnamese Strategies and Master Plan for the Mekong Delta

Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Development	Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment	Ministry of Transport Ministry of Construction	Ministry of Planning and Investment / Mekong Delta provinces
Masterplan for Agriculture Mekong Delta 2020-2030 Masterplan for Irrigation Mekong Delta Restructuring program Strategy for Agriculture Strategy for Fisheries Strategy for Forestry Climate Change program	NTP for Climate Change Masterplan for Water Resources Planning (Mekong Delta Plan) Strategy for Water Resources Planning	Masterplan for Transportation Mekong Delta Masterplan for Construction Mekong	SEDP Mekong Delta Provincial masterplans (13x) incl. landuse

The MDP recognized that improving governance and planning would assist in implementing futures strategies for climate resilience and livelihoods. A coordination effort should focus in particular on an overall master planning, which takes into account specific provincial characteristics and provides sufficient detail and guidance, infrastructure development, capacity building (for institutions and people) and monitor and evaluate activities in the Delta.

Investments proposed within the hydro-ecological zones need to consider both regional and sub-regional impacts. The MDP recommended that measures for flood control, fresh (surface) water, salinity intrusion and the regulation and management of freshwater and brackish farming systems need to be considered at the delta level as the impacts and influences go beyond district and provincial boundaries. Further assessment of regional and sub-regional impacts is detailed in Chapter 6: Assessing Regional Project-Financed Impacts.

The investments also consider the existing and proposed projects being implemented by development partners in the Mekong Delta. Table 10 below provides an example of on-going and proposed investments in the focal provinces An Giang, Ca Mau, Ben Tre and Soc Trang.

Table 10: Agriculture and water management investments in An Giang, Ca Mau, Ben Tre & Soc Trang

Province	Key investments	Development partners
An Giang	AGRICULTURE <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On-going investments in alternative agricultural and use and farming systems in the LXQ– in particular floating rice, winter cash crops, fruit trees, freshwater aquaculture and shrimp farming Proposed investments in enhancing rice-value chain WATER MANAGEMENT <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Proposed investments in community-based flood risk 	ADB, GIZ

Province	Key investments	Development partners
	and disaster risk reduction <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ongoing investment in canal refurbishment and new canals as well as salinity control sluice gates • Proposed investments in river bank protection works to manage bank collapse issues 	
Ca Mau	AGRICULTURE <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On-going investments in extensive and intensive shrimp farming and silvo shrimp farming • On-going investments in value-added organic shrimp farming • Proposed investments in agricultural water supply and alternatives to groundwater sources for aquaculture WATER MANAGEMENT <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On-going investments in mangrove restoration coastal protection. • Proposed coastal dyke investments for coastal Protection • On-going investments in managing land subsidence issues 	ADB, GIZ, IUCN, Government of Norway
Ben Tre	AGRICULTURE <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On-going investments in alternative agricultural land use and farming systems) – in particular fruit trees, vegetables but also salt-tolerant farming systems WATER MANAGEMENT <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On-going and proposed investments in river dykes to protect river mouth banks and islands • On-going and proposed investments in sluice gates and water control infrastructure to manage salinity issues. 	JICA, IFAD, World Bank
Soc Trang	AGRICULTURE <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ongoing investments in extensive and intensive shrimp farming and silvo shrimp farming WATER MANAGEMENT <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On-going investments in mangrove restoration and coastal protection • On-going investments in dyke building and refurbishment for coastal protection • Ongoing investments in coastal resource protection 	GIZ

5.1.1 Integrating with on-going assessments in the Mekong Delta

Since 2012, the Government of Viet Nam has self-financed a USD 9 million assessment of the impact of the proposed Mekong River mainstream hydropower cascade on the natural, social, and economic systems of downstream floodplains of Cambodia and Viet Nam with a particular focus on impacts in the Mekong Delta. The MDS is being implemented by MONRE Dept. of Water Resources and Viet Nam National Mekong Committee (VNMC) and now has financial and technical support from DFAT, the US State Department and the World Bank Group. Through the study the VNMC has developed its own Mekong basin-wide modelling system, which complements the MRC's modelling tools, as well as a model of the Delta's coastal zone. This modelling will be further enhanced under Component 1 of the MD-ICRSL project.

The Delta Study explored how physical changes in flow regime, sediment loading, water quality, and longitudinal connectivity (barrier effects) associated with upstream hydropower development will impact on fisheries, biodiversity, agriculture, navigation and livelihoods. The projected economic consequences of these changes were evaluated for commercial activities in agriculture, fisheries, and navigation as well as for ecosystem services.

Capture fisheries and agriculture are expected to be the hardest hit from upstream hydropower development. For example, the study predicts total losses of capture fishery and other aquatic animals of 366,470 (t) in Vietnam and 267,428 (t) in Cambodia mainly due to the barrier effect of dams and, to a lesser extent, from reduction in sediment loading and nutrients. The reduced sediment and nutrient load is predicted to decrease rice and maize production by 2.3% and 10% respectively in Vietnam, with greatest impacts in An Giang and Dong Thap provinces. In Cambodia, rice and maize production is also expected to also decrease by 3.7% and 21% respectively.

5.1.2 Summary of trends, challenges and regional changes for Components 2, 3 and 4

The existing trends and challenges for the hydro-ecological zones were analyzed in Section 2 and 3, a summary of the trends and challenges for the three zones is shown below in Figure 105.

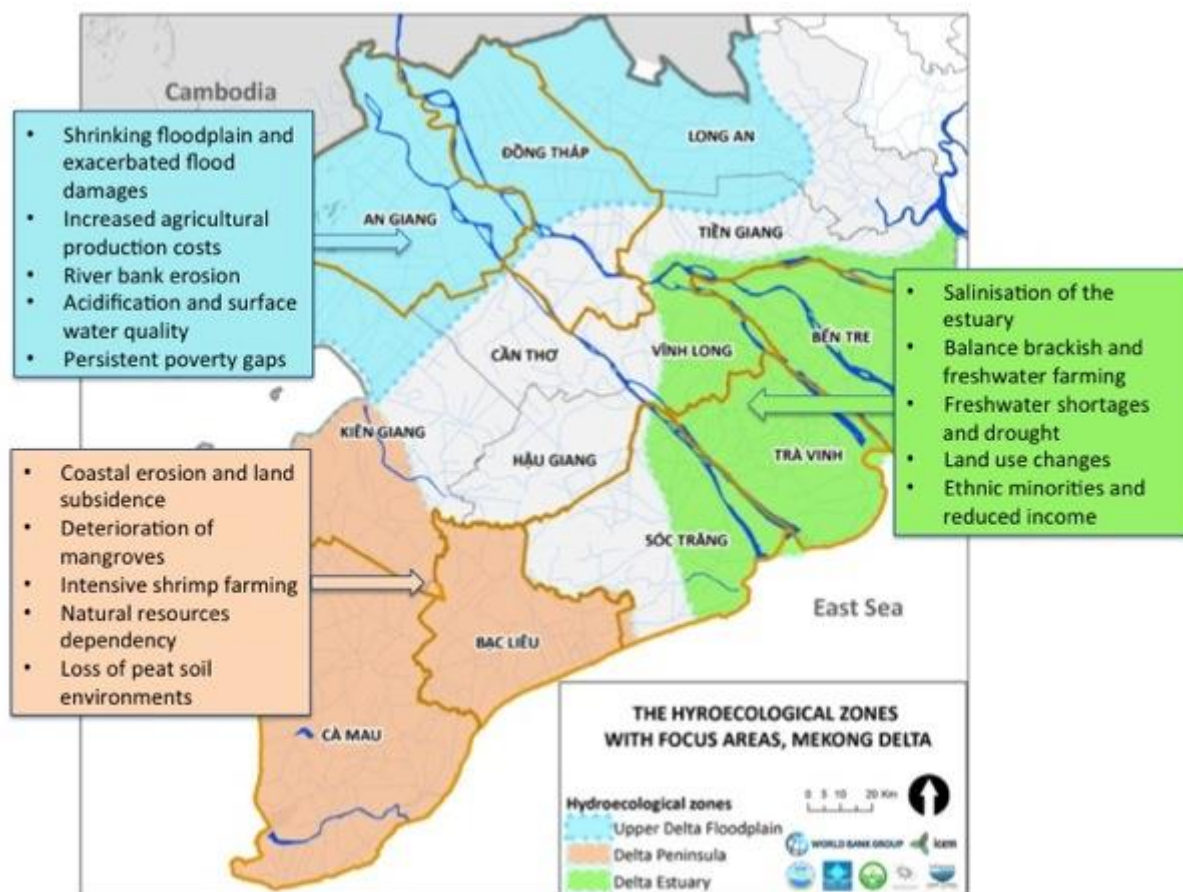


Figure 105: Summary of trends and challenges in the hydro-ecological zones

The regional changes in the Mekong Delta and the three hydrological zones were assessed further in Section 3 based on the following four key basin-wide drivers of change (Figure 106):

1. **Rainfall and Temperature Changes:** Climate change will increase the variability in seasonal rainfall, making the wet seasons wetter and the dry season drier and polarizing the seasonal conditions of the Basin with more severe and frequent flood and drought incidence;
2. **Hydropower development in the Mekong Basin:** Rapid expansion of hydropower in the Mekong Basin will alter timing of downstream hydrology during regular operations and could lead to large emergency releases during storm events. Hydropower reservoirs will also sever sediment transport processes, trapping sediments and reducing rates of natural fertilization in the floodplain and offshore environments as well;
3. **Land use change:** Rapid trends of deforestation, urbanization and agricultural expansion will continue to alter the hydrological balance between surface run off and infiltration; and
4. **Sea level rise (SLR):** Rising sea levels will alter the delicate balance between freshwater and estuarine conditions in the delta, pumping salinization issues further into the delta interior affecting groundwater and permanently inundating large areas of the Mekong Delta.

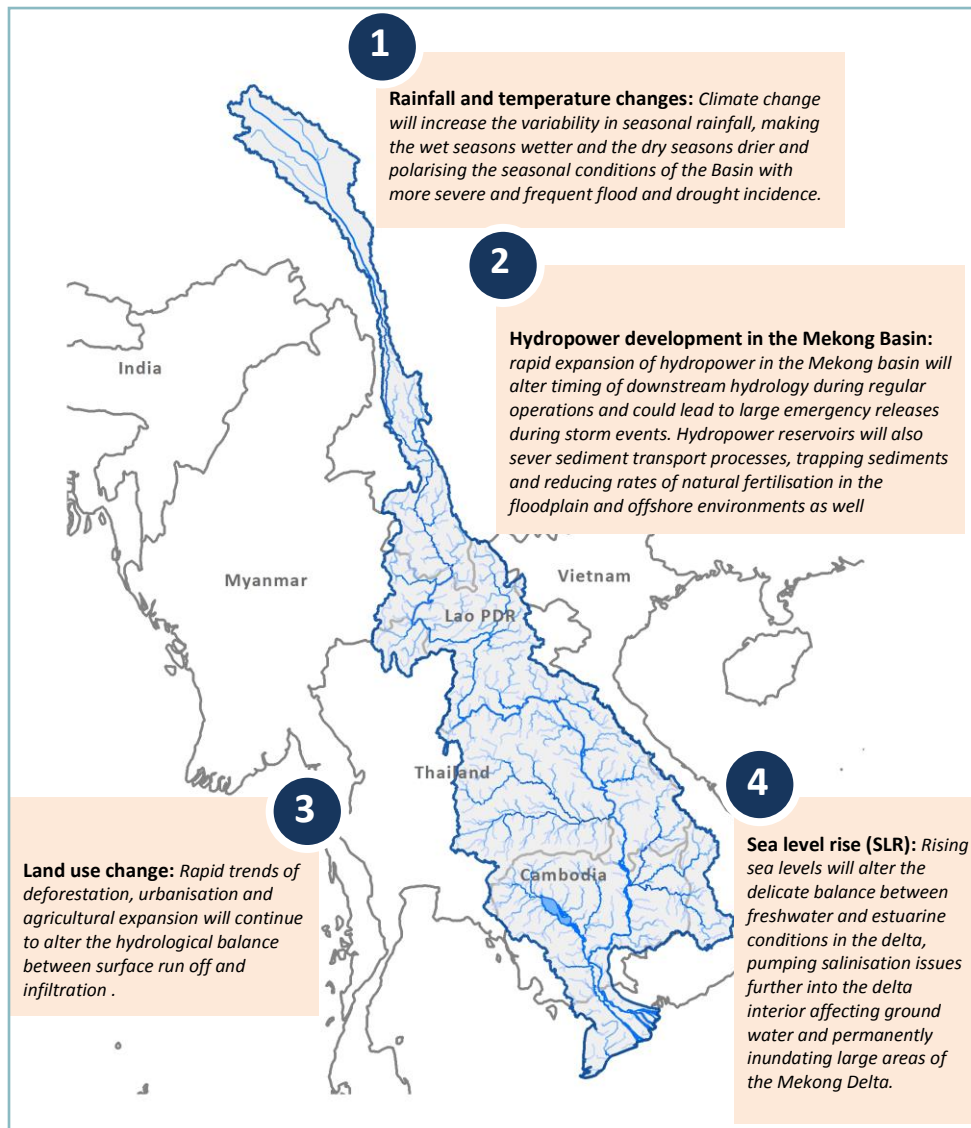


Figure 106: External drives of change in the Mekong Delta

These external drivers of change were used to determine the regional changes of 1) Temperature and rainfall, 2) flooding 3) Saline intrusion 4) coastal erosion and land subsidence on the Mekong Delta and the three hydro-ecological zones. The regional changes to the Mekong Delta and three hydrological zones are shown below in Figure 107.

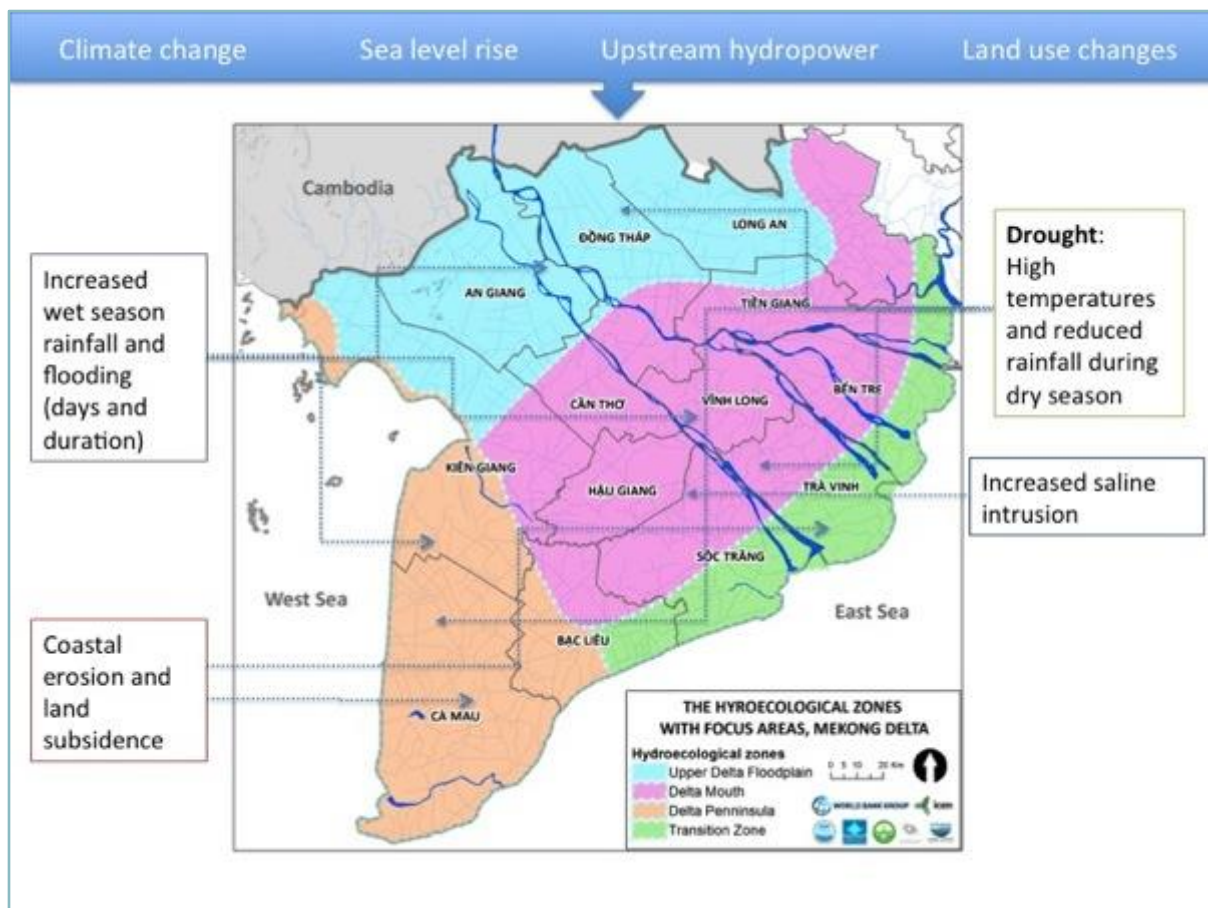


Figure 107: External drives and regional changes in the Mekong Delta

The MDP predicted that flood management in the upper delta, managing saline intrusion in the delta estuary and coastal protection will become more critical under future changes. The existing trends and challenges, external and internal drivers of change and regional changes have been carefully considered in this REA. The MDP priority and “no-regret” measures for the Delta form the basis of the strategies developed for the three hydro-ecological zones, these include:

- **Upper delta floodplain:** Flood management is required to deal with the issues of increasing flood damage and riverbank erosion;
- **Delta estuary:** Adapting to salinity intrusion requires saline tolerant farming systems to be adopted i.e. embracing brackish aquaculture; and
- **Delta peninsula:** Coastal zone protection should consist of a combination of sea dykes, mangroves and sustainable shrimp farming practices.

5.2 Component 2: Upper delta floodplain

The MDP recommended flood management in the upper delta floodplain as critical to protect and/or reclaim the benefits of flood retention and flood diversion measures while increasing rural incomes and protecting high value assets. Over the last decades, the region has seen substantial changes to the landscape through the intensification of agriculture and aquaculture. High dykes have been constructed around rice fields to control flooding and enable a third rice crop to be grown per year. The key strategy for building resilience is embracing flood-based agriculture and flood management. Achieving the balance between flood control, adaptive land

and water use and restoring flood retention and ecosystem connectivity are crucial to future investments in the upper delta floodplains. The key components to integrated into flood management strategies are shown below in Figure 108.

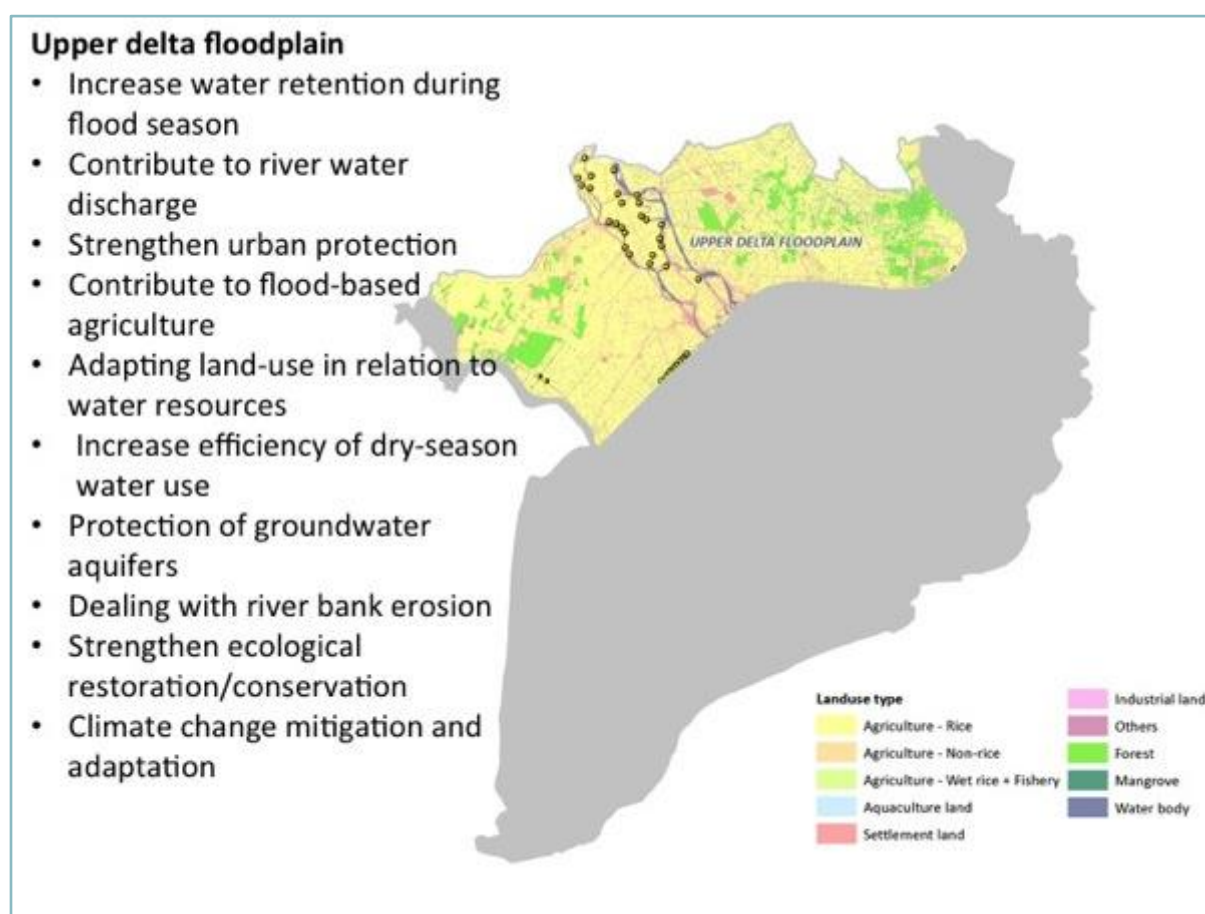


Figure 108: Key components for building resilience in the upper delta floodplain

The key strategy for the upper delta floodplain is to increase (or as a minimum maintain the existing) water retention capacity by moving away from the advocated system of high dykes that facilitates triple crop rice production towards a more climate resilient flood based production system that adapts to and optimizes wet and dry-season water conditions. The MDP indicated that seasonal flood-based agriculture in the upper delta floodplain could reduce the flood and erosion risks for the delta estuary. The flood management strategy requires agriculture to adapt by moving from triple rice cropping to a combination of double rice and high value aquaculture and horticulture (i.e. floating vegetable crops), as shown in Figure 108 and 110 respectively.



Figure 109: Inundated rice paddies in the wet season offer controlled retention of river floods after two crops Source: MDP 2013



Figure 110: Controlled flooding in the upper delta floodplain, using the inundate paddies for fish farming in wet season of "floating vegetables" offering an attractive economic proposition Source: MDP 2013

Discussion in the Mekong Delta has centered on the need to consider current rice intensification policies in the upper delta and a more sustainable pathway for land and water resources development that considers potential cross-provincial impacts. Strategies that adopt (semi-controlled) flooding of upstream provinces that addresses the issues of water retention within the floodplains adjacent to the Hau and Tien rivers related to increasing risks of flood damage resulting from existing rice production policies and infrastructure planning and urbanization. The challenges, solutions and key trade-offs are summarized below in Table 11.

Table 11: Challenges, solution and key trade-offs for upper delta floodplain

Challenges	Solutions	Key trade-offs
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Within existing agriculture policies there is a strong pressure to create full flood-controlled areas that enable the production of a 3rd annual crop during the August flood season. This increased the risks of flood damage in urbanized downstream areas. • Livelihoods improvement. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reinstate water retention areas in LXQ and POR (reduce full flood-controlled areas) • Transition from triple crop irrigated rice to double crop or floating vegetables combined with up scaling or other cash crops with fish breeding • Develop vertical product value chain/farmer cooperatives. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Upstream yield losses resulting from a policy shift towards semi-controlled flooding and initial costs of transition to a mixed production system versus benefits in downstream areas (Can Tho, Hau Giang, Vinh Long, Tien Giang provinces) due to reduce flood damages and costs for flood prevention measures.

Flood management strategies in the upper delta floodplain will protect provinces in the delta estuary from flooding. The LXQ represents a 500,000ha component of the Mekong Delta natural floodplain connecting the Hau River channel with the coastal zone of the West Sea. Historically, during the flood season the Mekong's distributaries would overtop its banks sending floodwaters into the LXQ. These floodwaters would remain in the quadrangle keeping the area inundated for up to 6-8 months a year and supporting a vast wetland ecosystem, as well as reducing the magnitude of downstream flood flows. Rapid development of the delta and intensification of multiple crop rice farming over the past 20 years has reduced the flood relief capacity of upstream areas while urbanization of Long Xuyen, Can Tho and the connecting riverbanks has simultaneously increased downstream flood risk.

5.3 Component 3: Delta estuary

Adapting to salinity intrusion is required to address the challenges related to salinity intrusion, flooding through transitions to sustainable aquaculture and improved livelihoods for communities living in the coastal areas. The key strategies for the delta estuary and other coastal areas, as outlined in the MDP, are to strengthen coastal protection through a mix of 'building with nature' type (where possible) and infrastructural measures

(where needed) and to facilitate a gradual transition from existing fresh water based rice production towards a brackish and diversified aquaculture system that adapts to increasingly saline conditions. An additional priority is the protection of groundwater aquifers, due to increasing evidence that excessive groundwater extraction accelerates land subsidence (Figure 111).

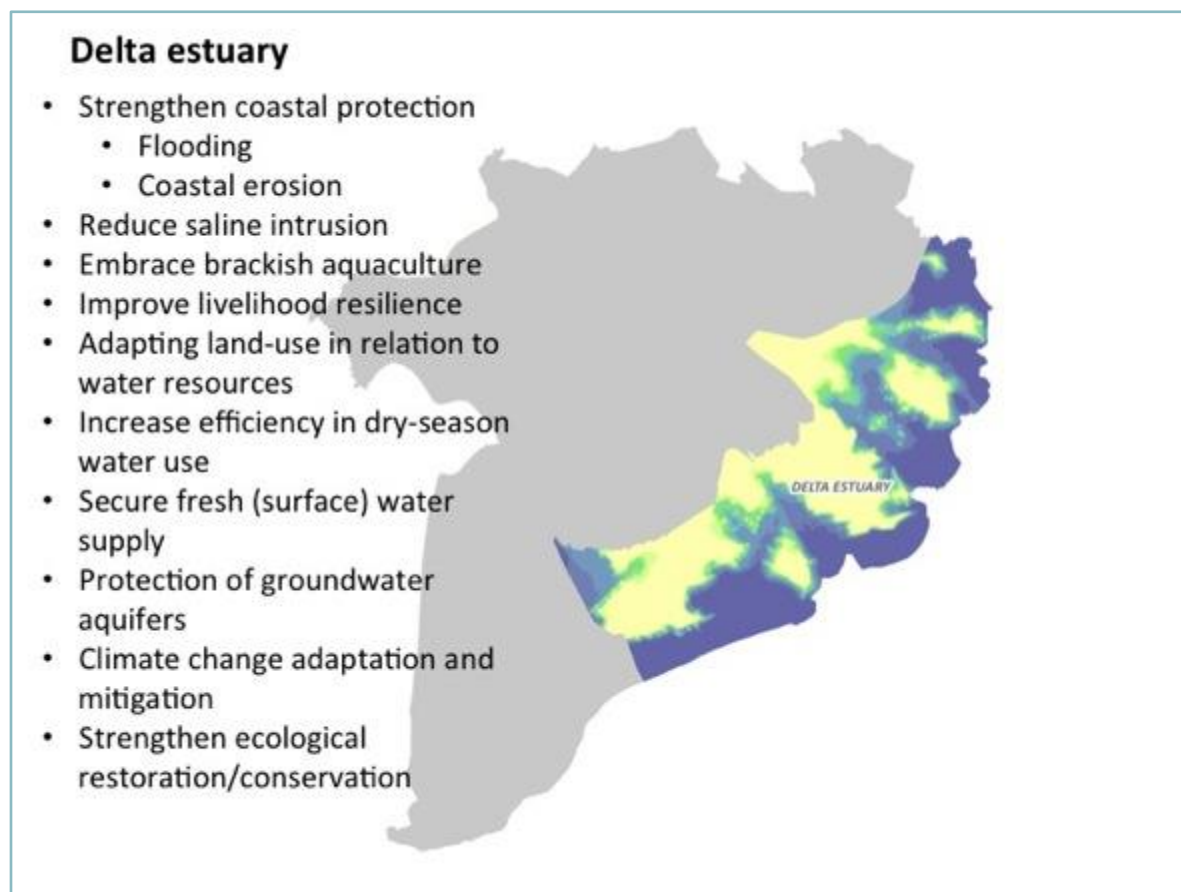


Figure 111: Key components for building resilience in the delta estuary

The strategy for the delta estuary, based on the priority and “non-regret” measures from the MDP, focus on flood protection and freshwater supply for the horticultural/agricultural areas of Ben Tre and Tra Vinh, more sustainable use of groundwater livelihoods improvements. The challenges, solutions and key trade-offs are summarized in Table 12.

Table 12: Challenges, solutions and key-trade-offs for the delta estuary

Challenges	Solutions (ideas)	Key trade-offs
Increasing salt intrusion (km) in dry years affecting agricultural productivity	Sluice gate systems (completion)	Maintaining the existing agricultural strategies with focus on fresh water based production systems (rice) versus transition towards brackish and saline systems with diversified production (rice, coconut, fish, shrimp)
Coastal protection (flooding and coastal erosion)	Crop variety (saline tolerant)	
Fresh water supply (including water quality) for domestic and commercial use	Mangrove restoration	
Depletion of groundwater aquifers	Embankments	
Livelihoods improvement	Upstream intake of fresh water (combined with wastewater treatment plant)	
	Local water storage	
	Water saving technologies	Provincial (local) freshwater supply versus upstream water
	Aquifers as reserves	

	Strengthening of integrated sectoral planning	supply and inter-provincial cooperation
--	---	---

The key issues to consider are the trade-offs between saline and fresh water management strategies and their economic use across the coastal provinces. The coastal provinces of the Vietnamese Mekong Delta face critical challenges in the sustainability of their agricultural systems due to increasing fresh water supply shortages, increasing salinity intrusion and deteriorating water quality.

The provinces of the delta estuary suffer from several climate and human-induced negative trends like increased salinity intrusion, decreasing availability of high quality fresh water, and depletion of aquifers. Sea-level rise and dry-season salinity intrusion limit the possibilities for fresh water agriculture and horticulture. Water quality problems put strain on (saline) aquaculture. There is a conflict in water use and availability between brackish areas and fresh areas, calling for an assessment of the effectiveness and practicality of horticulture, fresh agriculture and brackish aquaculture, both now and in view of long-term trends. Transition from rice towards brackish aquaculture (fish and shrimp) and salt tolerant systems (coconut, cocoa and fruit trees) is required to build the resilience of local communities.

5.4 Component 4: Delta peninsula

Developing coastal protection measures and sustainable livelihoods and reducing groundwater abstraction is critical for the delta peninsula. The key components of the strategy for the delta peninsula developed in the MDP is to address the increasing vulnerability of the brackish economy resulting from sea level rise (flood risk and salinization), coastal erosion, fresh water supply for agriculture and shrimp farming systems and livelihoods improvement (Figure 112).

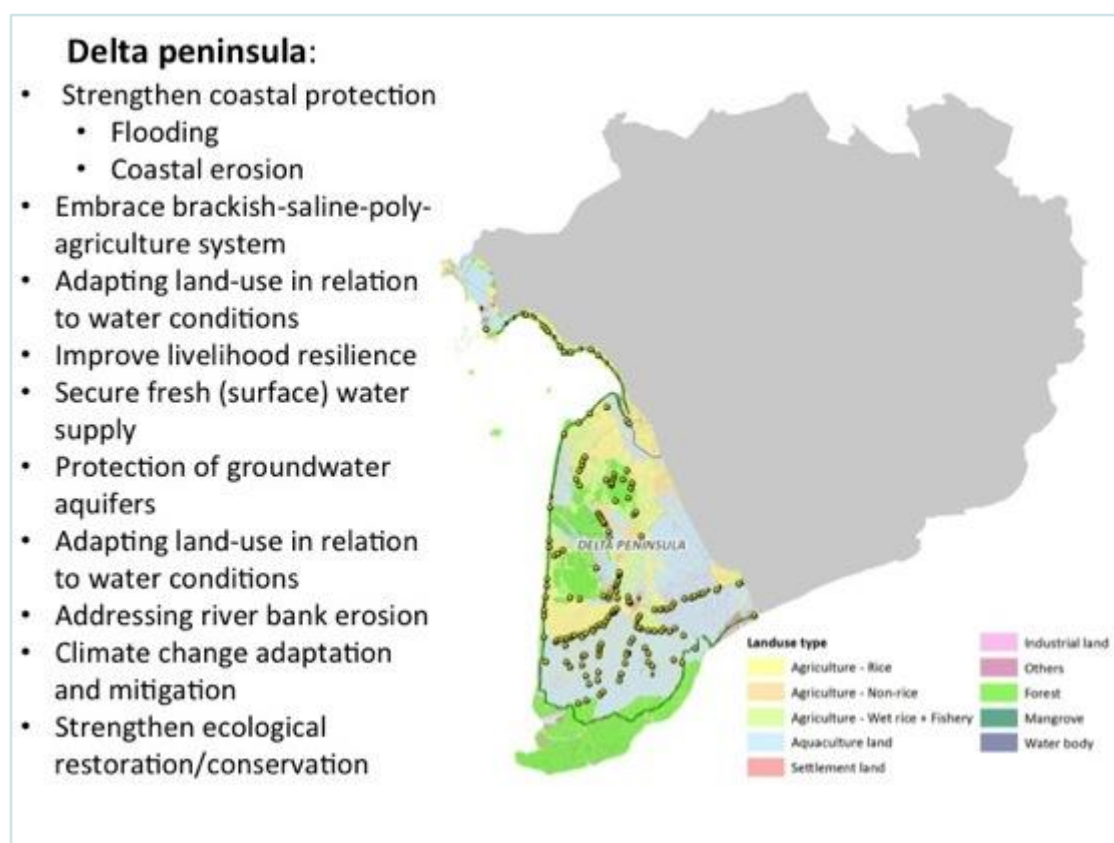


Figure 112: Key components for building resilience in the delta peninsula

The MDP priority and “no-regret” measures for the delta peninsula aim to strengthen coastal protection through a mix of 'building with nature' type (where possible) and infrastructural measures (where needed) and facilitate a gradual transition from existing fresh water based rice production towards a brackish and diversified aquaculture system that adapts to increasingly saline conditions. An additional priority is the protection of the fresh water aquifers, due to increasing evidence that excessive groundwater extraction accelerates land subsidence. The challenges, solutions and key-trade offs are summarized below in Table 13.

Table 13: Challenges, solutions and key trade-offs for the delta peninsula

Challenges	Solutions	Key trade-offs
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increasing salt intrusion (km) in dry years • Coastal erosion leading to a loss of agricultural production areas • Mangrove losses (human induced) • Fresh water supply (including water quality) for domestic and commercial use • Depletion of groundwater aquifers • Livelihood improvement 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combination of hard and soft protection measures: • Concrete sea-dyke system • Mangrove rehabilitation • Foreshore stabilization • Adoption of a poly-aquaculture system (shrimp and fish farming) • Local (rain) water storage • Develop vertical product value chain/farmer cooperatives 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maintaining the existing agricultural strategies with partial focus on fresh water based rice production versus dedicated development of brackish and saline systems with diversified production (fish, shrimp, mangrove forest products) • Provincial (local) fresh water supply versus upstream water supply and inter-provincial cooperation

Integrated coastal management requires a combination of sea dykes, mangrove restoration and sustainable shrimp farming to protect the peninsula from coastal erosion and sea level rise. The MDP promoted embracing brackish aquaculture reduces the need for infrastructural coastal defense measures by creating an integrated aquaculture-mangrove coastal estuary, which also serves to protect the agriculture and horticulture in the delta estuary from increasing salinity. Currently, sea dykes have been constructed too close to the actual shoreline and large areas of mangroves have deteriorated.

Intensive shrimp farming practices in the delta peninsula are prone to water quality problems, disease and yield failure, which undermine the sustainability as well as the export viability of the shrimp sector. The mono-based shrimp cultivation needs to transform into a modern poly-aquaculture system of multiple fish and shrimp species. A concept for sustainable three step shrimp farming and mangrove restoration is shown below in Figure 113. The first step is brackish water intake for seabass, second is tilapia to prepare the brackish water for shrimp farming in the third step.



Figure 113: Mangrove restoration and three step shrimp farming Source: MDP 2013

6 ASSESSING PROJECT-FINANCED REGIONAL IMPACTS

6.1 Environmental assessment

The MD-ICRSL project is proposed as Category A for Environmental Assessment due to its regional impacts, spatial extent, its focus on adaptive delta management, and civil works largely carried out under Components 2, 3 and 4. The following World Bank (WB) safeguard policies have been triggered: (a) Environmental Assessment (OP 4.01); (b) Natural Habitat (OP 4.04); (c) Pest Management (OP 4.09); (d) Physical Cultural Resources (OP 4.11); (e) Forests (OP 4.36); (f) Safety of Dams (OP 4.37); and (g) Projects on International Waters (OP 7.50). The four first phase subprojects have been screened and categorized as category B projects.

The subprojects involves medium/large infrastructure schemes, while overall environmental impacts are expected to positive, potential adverse regional impacts may arise from:

- construction related impacts;
- increased pollution load in soil and water from the potential expansion of shrimp farming,
- possible increase in the use of pesticides and fertilizer from more diversified cropping options; and
- changes in the ecological flow of the Mekong River as a result of the installation of potential water/ flood/salinity control infrastructure and similar measures.

This section will assess the potential regional impacts (positive and negative) of the activities proposed under the subprojects in the upper delta, delta estuary and peninsula.

6.1.1 Sub projects under Component 2, 3 and 4

The full list of the 11 proposed subprojects for components 2, 3 and 4 is provided in Annex 1, a summary of the first year subprojects are provided in the following sections.

6.1.1.1 Component 2 (Upper Delta)

Sub-projects selected for Component 2 include those aimed at increasing water retention, irrigation and upgrading of reservoirs, livelihoods improvement (support for transition from triple rice to alternative cropping), and ecosystem restoration. The sub-projects in the upper delta sub-region amount to \$99 million. The first year sub-project is the following:

- *Improving Flood Retention Capacity in An Phu District, An Giang province:* This sub-project aims to improve the ability of communities to take advantage of the natural condition (flood season), and improve incomes through an appropriate alternative. This includes a combination of reinforced low embankments; sluice gates to provide suitable water environment for a double rice crop plus an third season option (floating vegetables or fish).

Under Component 2, sub-projects selected for subsequent years will be implemented in Long Xuyen Quadrangle (An Giang/Kien Giang) and Dong Thap that follow the same approach of the sub-project in An Phu, An Giang.

6.1.1.2 Subprojects in Component 3 (Delta Estuary)

Sub-projects in Ben Tre, Tra Vinh, Vinh Long and Soc Trang provinces cover financing for river and coastal embankments, sluice gates, dredging and mangrove restoration, with accompanying adjustments to land-use plans. These proposed sub-projects in the delta estuary sub-region amount to \$149 million. The first year sub-projects are the following:

- *Enabling Sustainable Coastal Livelihoods In The Face Of Salinity Intrusion in Ba Tri, Ben Tre Province:* This sub-project aims to improve the ability to adapt to salinity intrusion, protect and enhance the livelihoods of people living in the 14,153 ha area of Ben Tre – using a combination of structural (sluice gates, culverts) and non-structural measures (land-use changes, mangrove-shrimp pilot models etc.).

Under Component 3, sub-projects selected for subsequent years will be implemented in Thanh Phu, Ben Tre, Tra Vinh, and Cu Lao Dung, Soc Trang.

6.1.1.3 Subprojects in Component 4 (Delta Peninsula)

Sub-projects in the Ca Mau, Kien Giang and Bac Lieu provinces include eco-forest and mangrove-shrimp innovations, expansions of rice-aquaculture, mangrove restoration, and infrastructure relating to aquaculture, with accompany adjustments to land-use plans. These proposed sub-projects amount to about \$95 million. The first year sub-project is the following:

- *Sustainable Infrastructure for Coastal Protection and Protecting Livelihoods Against Climate Change Impacts In An Minh-An Bien District, Kien Giang province.* The primary objective of this sub-project is to improve the ability to adapt to coastal erosion, protect and enhance the livelihoods of people living in the area of An Minh and An Bien in Kien Giang. This will include sluice gates to be operated to maintain a suitable saline environment for rice-shrimp cropping; dredging of select canals to increase rainwater storage; mangrove rehabilitation to serve as a coastal buffer etc. *See Attachment on Subprojects for details*

Under Component 4, sub-projects selected for subsequent years will be implemented in Ca Mau and Bac Lieu.

6.2 Assessing the regional impacts

Section 3 and Section 4 of this REA identified the existing trends and challenges and the projected impacts of hydropower development, land use changes climate change and sea level rise on the upper delta (Component 2), delta estuary (Component 3) and delta peninsula (Component 4). The following strategies will be adopted under the MD-ICRSL project:

- **Component 2:** Managing Floods in the Upper Delta;
- **Component 3:** Adapting to Salinity Transitions in the Delta Estuary; and
- **Component 4:** Protecting Coastal Areas in the Delta Peninsula.

This section of the REA will assess the regional impacts of the proposed subprojects in Components 2, 3 and 4 to:

- a) Determine the regional impacts (positive and negative) of subprojects under components 2, 3 and 4 of the MD-ICRSL; and
- b) Provide general guidance for subproject ESIA's to appropriately mitigate regional impacts.

6.3 Regional impact evaluation methodology

Positive and negative impact evaluations will be summarized for components 2, 3 and 4 based on 1) intensity 2) spatial extent, and 3) duration. Using this three-pronged format as a basis, the impact will be rated as having major, moderate, or minor significance.

Impact intensity is evaluated as high (H), medium (M), or weak (W):

- **High intensity.** *Negative impact*—a component of the environment is destroyed or so altered as to eliminate the ecological functions it performs or to cause a major shift in abundance or distribution in the Mekong Delta. *Positive impact*—there is a definite improvement in condition, function, abundance, or general distribution in the Mekong Delta.
- **Medium intensity.** *Negative impact*—a component is altered so it results in a reduction of ecological function or a limited shift of abundance or distribution in the Mekong Delta, but the integrity of the component is not altogether damaged. *Positive impact*—there is a moderate improvement in condition, function, abundance or distribution.
- **Weak intensity.** *Negative impact*—there is very little impact on the component in terms of ecological functions, or abundance or distribution is only slightly modified. *Positive impact*—there is a small improvement in condition, function, abundance, or distribution

Spatial extent is evaluated as regional (R), sub-regional (Sr), or local (Lo):

- **Regional extent** is defined as affecting the entire Mekong Delta or a significant part of it. If the impact extends beyond the Mekong Delta—is global or national, for instance—that will be separately noted.
- **Sub-regional extent** signifies that the impact is felt in one zone (upper delta, estuary or peninsula) is broader than that immediately affected by the activity in question.
- **Local extent** implies that the impact does not extend beyond the area directly affected by the activity.

Duration is evaluated as long-term (Lt), medium term (Mt), or short term (St):

- **Long-term** indicates that the impact is essentially permanent or is felt continuously or sporadically over period of more than 10 years. When an impact is irreversible, that will be separately noted.
- **Medium-term** applies to an impact that is continuous or sporadic over a period of from 1 to 10 years, hence not in any sense permanent or irreversible.
- **Short-term** means an impact that is felt over a period of less than 1 year.

The evaluation criteria are provided below in Table 14.

Table 14: Regional impact evaluation criteria

Regional impact evaluation rules				
Criteria of analysis			Significance of impact	
Intensity	Extent	Duration	Negative	Positive

High	Regional	Long-term	Major	Major
		Medium-term		
	Sub-regional	Short-term		
		Long-term	Moderate	Moderate
	Local	Medium-term	Major	Major
		Short-term	Moderate	Moderate
Medium	Regional	Long-term	Major	Major
		Medium-term		
	Sub-regional	Short-term		
		Long-term	Moderate	Moderate
	Local	Medium-term		
		Short-term	Minor	Minor
Weak	Regional	Long-term	Moderate	Moderate
		Medium-term		
	Sub-regional	Short-term	Minor	Minor
		Long-term	Moderate	Moderate
	Local	Medium-term		
		Short-term	Minor	Minor

6.3.1 Regional impacts of Components 2, 3 and 4

The regional impacts related to the following activities will be considered:

- Upgrading and constructing new infrastructure;
- Dredging;
- Installing water/flood control structures in the upper delta;
- New livelihood models in the upper delta;
- Installing water/salinity control structures in the estuary and peninsula;
- New livelihood models in the estuary and peninsula;
- Expanding aquaculture and shrimp farming;
- Protecting mangrove forests in coastal area; and
- Below ground reservoir in the delta peninsula.

The following text describes the regional impacts (positive and negative) of the subprojects under components 2, 3 and 4, a summary is provided in Table 15.

6.3.1.1 Impacts of upgrading and constructing new infrastructure

The civil works carried out in the process of implementing the subprojects under the project would generally increase the level of air, noise, vibration, and water pollution and traffic

congestion they would also raise the potential for accidents and risks to public safety as well as disturbances to local residents. However, these impacts would be localized and temporary and could be mitigated by (a) ensuring that contractors apply good construction practices and initiate/maintain close consultation with local authorities and communities throughout the construction period and (b) close supervision of field engineers and/or environmental officer. Environmental Code of Practices (ECOP) will be prepared with the following: (a) general provisions, (b) managing construction, (c) dredging, and (d) construction of small civil works. ECOP is part of the subproject EMPs, and appropriate parts of the ECOP will be included in the bidding and contract documents and be closely monitored by supervision engineers.

Changes in the ecological flow of the Mekong River as a result of the installation of potential water/ flood/salinity control infrastructure and similar measures for the investments in the upper delta, delta estuary and peninsula will be assessed in the following sections.

6.3.1.2 Impacts of dredging

The main possible impacts on the local environment during maintenance dredging and/or construction of secondary and/or tertiary sluices would be: (a) contamination of the lands and water resulting from the disposal of dredged materials; (b) contamination of the roads and lands resulting from the transportation of the dredged materials; and (c) an increase in suspended solids in water due to disturbances of bottom sediment. A sampling survey suggested that dredged materials are mainly silt and clay with high organic content with the content of the heavy metals and residual pesticides being below the national thresholds. Therefore, the risk of contamination to the disposal land and ground water is small.

In the Mekong Delta, it is customary that dredged materials be stored on the land next to the canal for drying for one or two years and then used as a basis for roads or dykes. However, it should be noted that the dredging would take place over extensive areas and over the whole project implementation period. Important information such as estimated quantity and likely quality of the sediments, availability of lands for disposal is at the detailed design stage. In this context, it is appropriate to develop a detailed plan for the disposal of the dredged materials at the detailed design stage.

6.3.1.3 Impacts of installing water/flood control structures in the upper delta

Flooding in the delta is a natural process that maintains productivity and drives the dynamic evolution of the Mekong Delta. The annual flood event is responsible for replenishing the fertile sediments that is vital to agricultural productivity. Climate change is expected to bring higher and more pronounced season flood regimes, the key challenges are to retain the natural flood based agriculture and protect downstream provinces from flooding.

The subprojects in the upper delta involve the upgrading of existing low embankments/dykes and the construction of culverts and sluices to expand flood retention capacity in the wet season. The culverts and sluices will allow annual floodwaters to pass through embankments and dykes, expanding the floodplain agriculture of the POR and LXQ in Dong Thap, An Giang and Kien Giang provinces. This infrastructure will support the conversion of triple rice to double cropping plus floating vegetables or aquaculture (i.e. freshwater fish or shrimp farming). The new embankments will reduce impacts to cropping associated with failure of existing embankments during the flood season. Upgrading low embankments (August dykes) from earthen to concrete material will also reduce yearly maintenance costs and facilitate waterway transportation. The project will protect high value agriculture (i.e. fruit trees) and downstream provinces from flood damage.

The construction of the sluices under the subproject would provide water for farming during the wet season. Currently, the high dykes constructed for flood control and rice intensification prevent water from entering the floodplains to allow for planting of the third crop. The operation of the sluice gates will control the water levels in the project areas and promote floating vegetables, aquaculture and freshwater shrimp farming. Conflicts over water use could occur between farmers of different crops, and areas where increased flood retention does not provide benefits. Some of the positive impacts will be that the increased flood retention will replenish the floodplains with sediments and nutrients from the Mekong River and may reduce the amount of fertilizers and pesticides used in agricultural activities. Climate smart farming and sustainable agricultural practices should be included to support the transition to new agriculture and aquaculture.

The subprojects may change the hydrological flow from the upper delta affecting natural resources and habitats of aquatic species (OP 4.04). However, improving flood retention is likely to increase biodiversity in the floodplain ecosystems. The existing August dykes fragmented the floodplains and reduced ecosystem connectivity leading to a decline in capture fisheries and aquatic species in the upper delta floodplains.

6.3.1.4 Impacts of new livelihood models in the upper delta

The development of livelihood models in the upper delta will support farmers to transition from triple rice cropping. Providing support measures to farmers so they have alternatives to the wet season rice crop is an important measure to transition from triple rice cropping to double rice plus floating vegetables, flowers, aquaculture and freshwater shrimp farming. Triple cropping in the upper delta has lower total yield and higher rice production costs. Rice intensification has also driven farmers to apply more pesticides and fertilizers, reducing the cost benefits of the winter-autumn crop and increasing surface water pollution. Farmers have also reported that their rice fields are less fertile from reduced alluvial deposition from the high dykes and flood control structures.

Appropriate livelihood support during flooding season in retention areas including diversifying agriculture and aquaculture models with strengthening of the value chains and linking farmers to business and markets. The transition to high value agriculture will provide many positive social benefits to local communities and households involved in the livelihood models. To ensure sustainability the project must also consult with communities in the surrounding areas to enable all farmers to transition to alternative farming mechanisms.

Restoring flood retention will provide more nutrients and sediments during the flood season, however the impacts of the possible increase in the use of pesticides and fertilisers from more diversified cropping needs to be considered. The livelihood models for high-value agriculture (i.e. fruit trees, flowers, vegetables, mushrooms, watermelons) may require higher inputs of fertilisers and pesticides. The potential environmental impacts of aquaculture (i.e. catfish) and freshwater shrimp farming including the release of organic wastes, agro-chemicals, antibiotics, the transmission of diseases and the ecological impact on endemic fish species in the Mekong Delta and floodplains will also need to be considered. In order to mitigate these environmental impacts, an integrated pest management plan (IPM) program will be implemented for each applicable subproject as a part of the EMP.

6.3.1.5 Impacts of installing water/salinity control structures in the estuary and peninsula

The subprojects in Component 3 and 4 involve the construction/ rehabilitation of coastal dykes in erosion areas and the modification of water control infrastructure along the coastal zone to adapt to changing salinity levels. Ca Mau, Bac Lieu and Soc Trang high historic rates of coastal erosion, which are projected to continue increasing, indicate that the business-as-usual approach to coastal protection is not working and a new approach is needed to protect coastlines, ecosystems and valuable agriculture and aquaculture areas.

The traditional approach to protecting the coastline in Vietnam consists of constructing sea dykes, many of them armed with rocks and/or concrete. Previously, water control infrastructure was constructed in coastal provinces to control salinity intrusion into the estuaries. Saline water is prevented to enter the canals by the construction of sluices that can be closed when the seawater rises with the tide above river water levels. Where sluices exist, this creates conflicts between the freshwater needs of agriculture and the brackish water needs for aquaculture. To manage conflicting water uses zones will need to be established for saline, brackish and freshwater farming areas. The operation of sluices and farming zones would need to be flexible to consider salinity intrusion in wet, average, dry years and future sea level rise.

Recently, the function of salinity-control structures has been modified from a control oriented to adaption-oriented approach. For instance, shrimp culture relying on saline water in the dry season is followed by rice culture depending on rainwater in the wet season through proper adjustments in the design and operation of existing water structures and additional investments in small-scale infrastructure. The MD-ICRSL project builds on this approach and the infrastructure will support the transition to more sustainable brackish water activities such as mangrove-shrimp, rice shrimp and other aquaculture activities, adapting to further challenges of salinity intrusion.

The proposed project would only include construction of secondary and tertiary sluices, and the environmental impacts would be mainly local, and mitigation measures can be implemented at the subproject level. The operation of sluices also needs to consider the impacts to local waterway transportation for fishers and farmers. The operating rules of sluice gates should be developed in consultation with all stakeholders, including local waterway users. Changes in the ecological flow of the Mekong River may result due to the installation of flood/salinity control measures; leading to a reduction in the diversity and quantity of fish populations (OP 4.04). Overfishing and loss of habitat and spawning sites due to changes in the river threaten fish species in the Mekong Delta.

6.3.1.6 Impacts of new livelihood models in the estuary and peninsula

The livelihood models in the delta estuary and peninsula will support to farmers to transition (where suitable) to more sustainable brackish water activities such as mangrove-shrimp, rice-shrimp, and other aquaculture activities and to implement climate smart agriculture by facilitating water use efficiency in the dry season. Livelihood programs are very important in the delta estuary and coastal provinces as households in the transition between fresh and brackish water had lower income than those in other zones. Livelihoods of people in this zone are more vulnerable to freshwater availability from the upstream, to salinity intrusion from estuaries and/or adjacent shrimp farming areas and to extreme dry season freshwater shortages.

Providing livelihoods support measures to farmers to adapt to salinity intrusion and transition to brackish aquaculture is an important initiative. Salinity issues in the estuary areas have caused production losses to rice and high value agriculture. The transition to high value

agriculture will provide many social benefits to local communities and households involved in the livelihood models. Construction of salinity control infrastructure in the past has been inflexible and locked farmers into development pathways. A high number of Khmer people are living in Soc Trang and Tra Vinh, the Khmer are some of the poorest households in the Mekong Delta. It is important that support and livelihood programs are provided to Khmer and other ethnic groups. The transition to aquaculture in the estuary areas will be complex as currently high value crops provide more farm-based income than aquaculture and supports employment opportunities for local people.

The mangrove-shrimp and rice-shrimp are more sustainable options for aquaculture. The development of livelihood models will need to consider the potential environmental impacts of aquaculture and shrimp farming including the release of organic wastes, agro-chemicals, antibiotics, the transmission of diseases and the ecological impact on freshwater and coastal fisheries in the Mekong Delta. In order to mitigate these environmental impacts, an integrated pest management plan (IPM) program will be implemented for each applicable subproject as a part of the EMP. In order to mitigate these environmental impacts, an integrated pest management plan (IPM) program will be implemented for each applicable subproject as a part of the EMP. The PMF stipulates: prohibition of the use of very toxic chemicals, and provides directions and approach for Integrated Pest Management (IPM).

6.3.1.7 Expanding aquaculture and shrimp farming

The large areas of land required for intensive and semi-intensive shrimp farming have led to significant natural habitat loss through conversion of mangroves and wetlands into shrimp ponds. The investment in large water control infrastructure has led to conflicting interests and inflexible water management when local rice farmers sought to benefit their income through the conversion of their farms from rice to shrimp.

The project will promote integrated rice-shrimp and mangrove-shrimp farming that are considered to be more environmentally sustainable aquaculture because it is extensive and uses less agro-chemicals (i.e. fertilizers, antibiotics) and can lead to restoration of mangrove areas. Environmental concerns such as effluents from the shrimp farms, disposal of the sediments in the shrimp ponds into canals and rivers need to be managed. Applying sustainable rice-shrimp model using VietGap standard to develop operational guidelines for water management systems in the project area will lead to more sustainable shrimp farming in the estuary and peninsula.

Nevertheless, there are some environmental concerns relating to the current rice-shrimp farming systems. First, the current shrimp farming method is based on high water exchange, which would result in high accumulation of sediment in the rice farms in the long-term. Many farmers reportedly dispose of accumulated sediment back into the canals or nearby river, which would induce negative environmental impacts. Furthermore, recent introduction of exotic species and introduction of more intensive shrimp aquaculture may also lead to more pollution in the effluent of the wastewater from the shrimp farming.

The project will contribute to the improving current water management practices for shrimp aquaculture, covering the following aspects: (a) developing a categorized inventory of the current farms; (b) analyzing the current use of fertilizers and antibiotics; (c) identifying areas with acute environmental issues; and (d) establishing and disseminating best practices. Wastewater treatment systems are required for aquaculture and shrimp farming to reduce surface water pollution. Increasingly, groundwater is being used as an additional source of fresh water to control salinity levels in shrimp farming and enable the diversification of production

into vegetables (both in rice and shrimp areas). The transition to sustainable shrimp farming will reduce groundwater abstraction.

6.3.1.8 Impacts of protecting mangrove forests in coastal areas

To adapt to saline intrusion and prevent coastal erosion in Ca Mau and Bac Lieu, measures will include ecosystem-based aquaculture, resilient infrastructure for aquaculture and mangrove reforestation. Mangroves play a critical role in biodiversity and ecosystem productivity in the coastal areas of the Mekong Delta. In some areas of the delta, dykes are already being strengthened or heightened and mangroves are being planted to improve protection from storm surges and coastal erosion. The GIZ Integrated Coastal and Mangrove Protection (ICMP) programme is supporting Vietnam to manage its coastal ecosystems in order to strengthen resilience to climate change. To manage environmental impacts, a forest Management Plans (OP 4.36) will be prepared for all mangrove reforestation work undertaken as part of the project.

Integrated coastal management requires a combination of sea dykes, mangrove restoration and sustainable shrimp farming to protect the peninsula from coastal erosion and sea level rise. Increasing the mangrove area will protect against coastal erosion, storm surges and may increase biodiversity. This activity should be supported by biodiversity conservation and monitoring to protect saline and estuarine species in the mangrove areas. The sustainable management of coastal (near-shore) fisheries and other aquatic animals is important to support livelihoods of landless and protect biodiversity.

6.3.1.9 Impacts of building reservoir for freshwater storage

Surface water serves as one of the main water sources in the freshwater zone while groundwater is still the main supply source in the coastal zone, especially during the dry season. Coastal provinces suffer from several negative trends, like increased salinity intrusion, decreasing availability of fresh water of sufficient quality, depletion of aquifers. Coping with dry season fresh water shortages and droughts and securing fresh water supply is a critical challenge for the Peninsula. Water supply in many areas, such as Ca Mau, Bac Lieu and Soc Trang water is used without treatment, so water quality is below the required standards. This activity will have positive impacts for 11,000 households in the Ca Mau peninsula.

The investments in Cau Mau will also support the construction of a below ground reservoir to store freshwater from the wet season and release during the dry season for domestic and agricultural uses. The reservoir responds to the challenges of dry season freshwater shortages in the dry season and if implemented in combination with climate smart agriculture will reduce groundwater dependence. Reviewing the operational rules, multipurpose uses (i.e. irrigation, flood control) and dam safety aspects will be important to consider in the subproject safeguard instruments. A combination of hydrological and hydraulic modelling should be used to predict the irrigation area (ha), total storage (ML) and operating rules for the reservoir. The reservoir will be constructed in a flat area and will be below ground, thus there is no need to construct a high dam wall (i.e. above 10 m).

Dam safety issues based on flood retention structures (OP 4.37). Given that the dam wall and flood retention structures will not be higher than 10 meters, the team will agree on appropriate safety measures with the Borrower to ensure the involvement of qualified engineers, and will confirm that the ESIs for relevant subprojects have determined that there would be no or negligible risk of significant adverse impacts due to potential failure of the structure to local communities and assets, including assets to be financed as part of the proposed project.

The development of freshwater supplies for domestic use will have important positive impacts in preventing further groundwater depletion and land subsidence. These investments should be supported by climate smart agriculture and groundwater studies to determine the existing agricultural, industrial and domestic use and to identify hotspot areas for groundwater extraction. There are links between groundwater abstraction, land subsidence and coastal/riverbank erosion so increasing freshwater storage is an important subproject under the MD-ICRSL.

Potential increase in wastewater resulting from increased services of rural water supply has been identified, but the impacts would not be significant. The water is available through canals and rivers in the Mekong Delta, and incremental use of the domestic water consumption would not be significant.

6.3.1.10 Utilizing enhanced information systems to monitor regional impacts

The investments to enhance monitoring systems under Component 1 of the project can be used to monitor the regional impacts (positive and negative) of the investments in the upper delta floodplains, delta estuary and peninsula and from future environmental challenges. The investments include remote sensing, land use studies, water quantity/quality and groundwater monitoring, coastal and river morphology and coastal zone protection. The MARD Operation System for Hydraulic Infrastructure will provide real-time information on salinity, floods, and droughts to allow for better operation of infrastructure, this may reduce the impacts of installing and operating water/salinity control structures.

Table 15: Summary of regional impacts for Components 2, 3 & 4

Summary of regional impacts for Components 2, 3 & 4				
Activity	Demand on natural resources	Significant impacts Intensity/Extent/Duration	Impact Rating	Management measures
Upgrading and constructing new infrastructure	Physical conversion of land for embankments, dykes, sluices and associated infrastructure.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Change in landform <i>M/Lo/Lt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subproject safeguards instruments and EMP, national and district MARD/MONRE to monitor.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loss of grasslands, agricultural land and habitat <i>W/Lo/Lt</i> 	Minor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subproject safeguards instruments and EMMP, national and district MARD/MONRE to monitor.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased dust, noise, vibration, wastes, and possible social issues such as graveyard relocation <i>M/Lo/Lt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subproject safeguards instruments and EMMP, national and district MARD/MONRE to monitor.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Local traffic disturbed during construction <i>W/Lo/Lt</i> 	Minor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subproject safeguards instruments and EMMP, national and district MARD/MONRE to monitor.
Dredging	Dredging of land for canals and construction of embankments and dykes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loss of grasslands, agricultural land and habitat <i>W/Lo/Lt</i> 	Minor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subproject safeguards instruments and EMP, national and district MARD/MONRE to monitor.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increase in suspended solids in water due to disturbances of bottom sediment <i>W/Lo/St</i> 	Minor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subproject safeguards instruments and EMP, national and district MARD/MONRE to monitor.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Contamination of land and water from disposal of dredged material (volume) <i>M/Lo/St</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subproject safeguards instruments and EMP, national and district MARD/MONRE to monitor.
Installing water/flood control structures in the upper delta	Increased flood retention in project area. Changes in hydrological flow and land use.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Surface water quality issues from conversion to aquaculture and freshwater shrimp <i>M/Sr/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Climate smart farming and sustainable agricultural practices implemented Component 1 of MD-ICRSL
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased flood retention in the upper Delta <i>H/R/Mt</i> 	Major	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Modelling and flood forecasting to determine areas flooded and non-flooded in wet, average and dry years.

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased nutrients and sediments during flood season <i>M/Lo/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Climate smart farming to reduce fertilizer and pesticide use
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduced flood risk to downstream provinces <i>H/R/MT</i> 	Major	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hydraulic modelling to determine extent of flooding in wet, average and dry years Component 1 of MD-ICRSL
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Protection of high value agriculture (fruit trees) <i>M/Lo/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Modelling to determine impacts of flooding in wet, average and dry years
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Conflict over water use <i>M/Lo/St</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Livelihood programs to support transition and management of operations
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Improved ecosystem connectivity from changes in hydrological flow <i>M/Sr/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Monitoring of freshwater fish and aquatic species Component 1 of MD-ICRSL
New livelihood models in the upper delta	Pilot areas of land (ha) for alternative farming.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased income from converting from triple rice to rice + aquaculture <i>M/Lo/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ensure livelihood programs included access to market and agricultural extension for new crops
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased surface water pollution from freshwater shrimp and aquaculture <i>M/Sr/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Integrated Pest Management (IPM) and sustainable agricultural practices
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased fertilizer and pesticide use for new vegetable crops <i>M/Sr/St</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Climate smart farming and sustainable agricultural practices implemented
Installing water/salinity control structures in the delta estuary and peninsula	Changes hydrological flow and land use.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Salinity intrusion affects existing freshwater agriculture areas <i>M/Sr/Lt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transition supported by livelihood programs. Determine zones for freshwater and brackish farming.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Barrier to fish migration and ecosystem connectivity <i>M/Sr/Mt</i> 	Minor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fish and bio-monitoring at the regional-level.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Conflict between freshwater and aquaculture water uses <i>M/Sr/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transition supported by livelihood programs. Determine zones for freshwater, brackish and saline farming.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Surface water quality impacts when opening sluice gates <i>M/Lo/St</i> 	Minor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Climate smart farming and sustainable agricultural practices implemented
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Groundwater aquifers impacted by salinity intrusion <i>M/Sr/Lt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ensure groundwater monitoring and groundwater use studies are conducted in project areas. Component 1 of MD-ICRSL

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduced coastal erosion <i>H/R/Lt</i> 	Major	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remote sensing technology to monitor changes in coastal erosion. Component 1 of MD-ICRSL
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduced damage from storm surges and sea level rise <i>M/Sr/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Monitor sea dykes and embankments following storm surges and flooding.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Improved resilience of farmers <i>H/Lo/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transition supported by livelihood programs. Monitoring to determine boundaries for freshwater and brackish farming.
Development of livelihood models in delta estuary and peninsula	Pilot areas of land (ha) for brackish aquaculture.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased income from high value aquaculture <i>M/Lo/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ensure livelihood programs included access to market, agricultural extension and capacity building for new crops
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Livelihood programs not provided to Khmer, other ethnic minorities and women <i>M/Lo/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ensure livelihood models are communicated to all communities in pilot and surrounding areas
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Surface water quality issues of aquaculture and shrimp farming <i>M/Sr/St</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Integrated Pest Management (IPM) and sustainable agricultural practices
Expanding aquaculture and shrimp farming	Conversion of land for sustainable shrimp farming.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduced income for intensive shrimp farmers <i>M/Lo/St</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transition supported by livelihood programs.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Conflict between fresh and brackish water uses <i>M/Lo/St</i> 	Minor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transition supported by livelihood programs. Monitoring to determine land use changes in the project area.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Improved surface water quality from reduced intensive shrimp <i>M/Sr/Lt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> VietGap standard to develop operational guidelines for water management systems
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduced use of groundwater <i>M/Sr/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Groundwater use studies and monitoring implemented in project areas. Component 1 of MD-ICRSL
Protecting mangrove forests in coastal areas	Increased area of mangroves in coastal areas.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased mangrove forest areas and biodiversity <i>H/Sr/Mt</i> 	Major	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Implement coastal fisheries management and Forest Management Plan
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased protection from coastal erosion and sea level <i>H/Sr/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> MARD/MONRE to monitor sites of mangrove restoration zone and establish area for protection.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Establish mangrove-clam farming systems <i>M/Lo/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduces need for intensive shrimp farming, and promotes sustainable use of resources.

Reservoir for freshwater storage	Physical conversion of land for freshwater storage (ML) and flood control.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Surface water pollution during collecting of wastewater <i>M/Lo/St</i> 	Minor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Water quality monitoring programs during construction and operation. Component 1 of MD-ICRSL
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Improved access to water and sanitation <i>M/Lo/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Infrastructure development supported by water and sanitation livelihood programs.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased freshwater for agricultural and domestic use in dry season <i>M/Sr/Lt</i> 	Major	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Implemented with climate smart agriculture and water conservation measures
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduced groundwater abstraction in dry season <i>M/Sr/Mt</i> 	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Groundwater use studies and monitoring implemented in project areas. Component 1 of MD-ICRSL
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dam safety risks to surrounding communities <i>W/Lo/Mt</i> 	Minor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> EA and dam safety assessment for subproject

6.4 Summary of regional impacts

The impacts of upgrading and constructing new infrastructure and dredging are likely to only have local or sub-regional impacts and can be managed through subproject safeguard instruments and environmental management plan (EMP). Further information will be provided in the ESMF and the subproject ESIAAs, where required.

Installing water/flood control structures in the upper delta will change the hydrological flow and is likely to have major positive regional impacts by increasing flood retention and restoring floodplain ecosystems and agriculture. Hydrological and hydraulic modelling is needed to determine the extent of flood protection in wet and average years. Flooding will provide nutrients and sediment in the wet season reducing the use of fertilizers and pesticides. Under the new livelihood models farmers will be transitioning from triple rice cropping to double rice plus crops and aquaculture. This will be a step-by-step process that includes agricultural extension, access to markets and sustainable agricultural practices. Surface water monitoring will be important to detect whether the use of agro-chemicals, fertilizers and pesticides has increased or reduced in the project areas.

Installing water/salinity control structures in the estuary and peninsula will have major positive impacts by increasing protection from coastal erosion, and major negative regional impacts by blocking the movement and migration of coastal and estuarine fisheries in the Delta. The loss in capture fisheries may be offset by increasing the area of mangrove forests, that in combination with improved coastal management are likely to increase biodiversity. The combination of mangroves and sea dykes will also provide positive benefits by reducing the damages caused by storm surges and sea level rise.

The operation of the sluice gates will need to be flexible, and incorporate hydrological modelling and surface water monitoring of salinity to determine zones for freshwater, brackish and saline farming. The operations and zones may need to be altered depending on wet, average or dry years. For example, the provinces of Vinh Long are impacted by salinity in dry years only. The MARD Operation System for Hydraulic Infrastructure to be developed under Component 1 will inform more sustainable operation of existing and proposed water control structures.

The development of livelihood programs in the delta estuary should help farmers to transition to adapt to salinity intrusion and improve climate resilience. A step-by-step process is needed as some high value aquaculture (i.e. sugar cane) in the estuary earns higher income and provides more employment opportunities than aquaculture and shrimp farming. The livelihood models will need to provide support to Khmer and other ethnic groups. Promoting sustainable aquaculture, extensive shrimp and mangrove-shrimp should lead to reduced groundwater abstraction and surface water pollution associated with intensive shrimp farming. The groundwater and surface water monitoring developed under Component 1 can monitor any regional impacts or changes.

Constructing the reservoir in Ca Mau to increase freshwater storage in the delta peninsula is likely to have major positive regional impacts. Dry season freshwater shortages and access to water and sanitation are critical challenges in coastal areas. The reservoir, if operated effectively, and complemented by climate smart agriculture should decrease the exploitation of groundwater. Dam safety measures and further hydraulic modelling is required to enhance the benefits and reduce any negative impacts during construction and operation of the reservoir.

Overall the subprojects are designed to have positive environmental and social impacts and monitoring changes during construction and operation of water control infrastructure and

livelihood models is required. The additional surface and groundwater monitoring and assessing changes in coastal and riverbank erosion under Component 1 will be important for measuring and managing the regional impacts of the subprojects 2, 3 and 4. The investments under Component 1 are outlined in Chapter 7 of the REA.

The implementation of subprojects in Phase I will provide important insights into the design and safeguard instruments for the Phase II subprojects. The World Bank is also investing in a number of climate resilience, sustainable agriculture, sustainable coastal management and IWRM projects that provide important linkages to the MD-ICRSL. These investments and the relevance to the MD-ICRSL are described in the next section.

6.5 Public consultation on REA

The key findings of the REA were presented at a Public Consultation in Can Tho on Friday 29th January. The provincial and district representatives provided the following comments in relation to environmental and social issues

6.5.1 Upper Delta

The operation of low embankments will replenish coastal ecosystems with freshwater during August and also flush salinity, the potential negative hydrological impacts of embankments to surrounding areas should also be considered. Surface water pollution from upstream intensive aquaculture (catfish) is affecting rice, horticulture and shrimp farming downstream and improving wastewater treatment and water management at the farm-level is required. Aquaculture is capital intensive and not all areas have access to electricity, support is required to transition from triple rice to double rice + shrimp/aquaculture.

6.5.2 Delta Estuary

Need to establish zones for areas with freshwater and brackish farming, these should be flexible to adapt to wet, average and dry years. For example, Vinh Long is impacted by saline intrusion in dry years, so land use would need to be adapted. Adaptive management of sluices for both flood control and salinity control is required to deal with both wet and dry years. Sluices and dykes may impact on local waterway transportation, for farmers to transport goods and fishers to access estuary and coastal areas. Embracing saline conditions should also consider impacts on water uses for poultry, pigs and domestic water supply. Erosion is still happening near the operation of the sluices in the South Mang Thit and required further investigation.

Currently, the 'Ba Lai' provides freshwater for triple/double rice, a step-by-step approach for transitioning to brackish aquaculture needs to be considered. For example, there may be reduced income in moving from sugar cane to shrimp (Soc Trang). Local farmers agree with more sustainable mangrove-shrimp farming, but also acknowledged that there is reduced income for farmers when transitioning to new crops.

6.5.3 Peninsula

The proposed sea dykes/embankments need to consider waterway transportation and applying new technology to combine ship locks and salinity control. The operation of sluices for salinity will be important for dry years, especially during El Nino. Coastal erosion is still occurring in West Sea Dykes (Ca Mau) and more investment is needed to address this issue. Further mangrove restoration will protect farming areas inside the dike areas to maintain livelihoods. The livelihood models in Ben Tre could also be applied to the Kien Giang province.

6.6 Linkages with other World Bank projects in the Mekong Delta

The investments in the MD-ICRSL align with other World Bank projects implemented in the Mekong Delta in water resources, flood protection, coastal management, flood protection and climate change adaptation (Table 16).

Table 16: Ongoing World Bank projects relevant to the MD-ICRSL project

Project name	Project development objective (PDO)	Total project cost (In USD million)
Vietnam Sustainable Agriculture Transformation (VNSAT) Project (P145055)	Improve farming practices and value chains in the targeted project areas, and promote institutional strengthening of relevant public agencies in effective support to implementation of the Agricultural Restructuring Plan.	351.00
Coastal Resources for Sustainable Development Project (CRDSP) (P11879)	Improve the sustainable management of coastal fisheries in the Project Provinces.	126.90
Mekong Delta Water Management for Rural Development (Mekong Water) (P113949)	Protect and enhance the utilization of water resources in the project provinces of the Mekong Delta region in order to sustain gains in agricultural productivity, raise living standards, and contribute to climate change adaptation.	160.0
Mekong Integrated Water Resources Management (Mekong IWRM) - Phase II (P124942)	Establish key examples of integrated water resources management practices in the LMB at the regional, national, and sub-national levels, thus contributing to more sustainable river basin development in the Lower Mekong.	25.0
Mekong Delta Region Urban Upgrading Project (UUP) (P113904)	Improve infrastructure services in Low Income Areas in the Project Cities in the Mekong Delta Region.	100.0
Mekong Transport Infrastructure Development Project	Improve access to markets by businesses, farmers and the poor with lower logistics costs resulting from the alleviation of key physical and institutional bottlenecks of the main transport corridors in the Mekong Delta region.	99.0

The VNSAT project aims to support rice and coffee farmers to adopt improved farming practices to promote reduction in the use of chemical fertilizers, agro-chemicals, water and GHG emissions from rice and coffee farming. The sustainable rice-based systems component will be implemented in eight Mekong Delta provinces of Kien Giang, An Giang, Hau Giang, Tien Giang, Can Tho, Soc Trang, Dong Thap, and Long An. This project will provide important insights to the development of livelihood models in the Upper Delta and Estuary in the MD-ICRSL project.

The Mekong IWRM project has important links to Component 1 of the MD-ICRSL project as the project is supporting Vietnam to improve trans-boundary water resources monitoring through the development of water resources monitoring networks in the Central Highlands and the Mekong Delta provinces; Long An, Dong Thap, Kien Giang, Tay Ninh, and An Giang. This project also includes improving hydro-meteorological information network, flood forecasting and early warning systems.

The CRDSP is being implemented in the Ca Mau and Soc Trang provinces (Mekong Delta Cluster) and promotes good practices for sustainable aquaculture and coastal management, including near-shore capture fisheries. The MD-ICRSL also supports the increased area of mangroves, biodiversity conservation and sustainable coastal management to increase livelihoods and protect natural resources in coastal areas.

The UUP included investments in improving water and sanitation, flood protection and drainage systems in low-income areas of six cities in the Mekong Delta, including Ca Mau and Tra Vinh. Improving flood retention in the Upper Delta under the MD-ICRSL project will reduce flood risks to cities in the middle delta.

The Mekong Delta Water Management for Rural Development project includes similar civil works to the MD-ICRSL, including

- Major maintenance of existing under-performing infrastructure (e.g., canal dredging, re-sectioning and lining repairs, and rehabilitation of dykes);
- Completion and/or minor upgrading of existing infrastructure (construction of secondary and tertiary sluices gates, construction of small canal bridges, upgrading canal dykes); and
- Rehabilitation of the tertiary and quaternary irrigation facilities.

The lessons learned during the construction and operation of this infrastructure will inform the ESMF and subproject safeguards. The following TA packages and studies provide important inputs to the MD-ICRSL

- **Building resilience in the Mekong Delta (TA)(P149017):** Provided inputs for the design of the proposed project through the development of the DSF, and accompanying interactive tools, GIS tools and maps. This TA contributed to the trend, challenges and future scenarios described in this REA based on the scenarios and land-use classes developed under the MDP 2013;
- **Review of the Study on the Impacts of Mainstream Hydropower on the Mekong River (TA):** Knowledge generated from the impacts of upstream development in the Mekong Delta was used to inform the design of the DSF and ‘low regret’ investment screening; and

6.7 Recommendations:

Following this REA, a number of environmental safeguard instruments and assessment will be conducted for this project, including ESMF, three EMPs and four ESIAs. These documents will primarily focus on the 11 subprojects to be implemented. The MD-ICRSL project will implement measures to monitor and manage the potential regional impacts by:

- Enhancing monitoring of surface water, groundwater and fisheries in project areas during construction and operation of water control infrastructure, supported by groundwater use studies;

- Using remote sensing tools to monitor riverbank and coastal changes to determine the effectiveness of investments in coastal protection;
- Establishing zones and flexible management for freshwater and brackish aquaculture and consider participatory approaches for determining operating schedules of water control infrastructure;
- Ensuring the step-by-step implementation of livelihood models including agricultural extension and market services;
- Incorporating lessons learned from ongoing WB projects in the Mekong Delta, including:
 - CRDSP- improve coastal management to protect biodiversity in mangrove areas
 - VNSAT- climate smart agriculture and integrated pest management (IPM)
 - UUP- flood retention, drainage and water and sanitation facilities
 - Mekong Delta Water Management for Rural Development- constructing and operating water control infrastructure
 - Mekong IWRM- improve hydro-met and water monitoring to inform future investments and to strengthen Component 1.
- Involve the VNMC, MONRE and other agencies to use the modelling developed for the MDS for coastal erosion, salinity intrusion and the transport of sediments and nutrients to the delta;
- Apply the lessons from the implementation of the three first-year subprojects into the design and operation of subprojects in Phase II, activities could involve:
 - Project area environmental and social surveys;
 - GIS mapping of any problem areas or hotspots;
 - Hydrological modelling to determine changes in flow in the upper delta, estuary and peninsula;
 - Hydraulic modelling to determine effectiveness of sluices, canals and water control infrastructure;
 - Reviewing yield (t/ha), price and farm-based income for alternative cropping.
- Enhance flood and drought early warning systems in relation to agriculture and aquaculture in the three hydro-ecological zones.

Investing in monitoring systems for surface water, groundwater and coastal and riverbank erosion and establishing integrated information systems will enhance decision making in the Mekong Delta. Significant investments to enhance monitoring, analytics, and information systems are included in Component 1 of the MD-ICRSL and are outlined in Chapter 7.

7 BUILDING ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT CAPACITY IN THE MEKONG DELTA

7.1 Introduction

Components 2, 3, and 4 of the project help to build resiliency at the local level by investing in water resource infrastructure and supporting livelihood transitions that are tailored to the specific hydro-ecological strategies in the upper delta, delta estuary and the delta peninsula. As shown in Chapter 6 (*Assessing Project-Financed Regional Impacts*), however, the physical footprint of the project-financed investments is relatively small when considered on a regional basis. Besides the local benefits generated by these investments, their potentially more significant impacts stem from demonstrating at scale new approaches to managing climate change and building resiliency.

Component 1 of the project takes a much more comprehensive and regional approach to building resiliency in the Delta by investing in improved monitoring, analytics, and information systems to help guide planning and policy making. Putting the Mekong Delta on a more sustainable and resilient trajectory in the face of climate change, upstream Mekong basin development, and environmentally unsustainable practices within the Delta itself, will require investments in both infrastructure and the enhanced capacity to monitor, plan, and manage the Delta's land and water resources. Component 1 provides the framework for ensuring that Vietnam has the capacity to undertake "smart investments" and cope with anticipated wide-scale environmental changes in the future. The proposed activities/investments under Component 1 are shown below in Table 17 and described in more detail in the following sections. This chapter ends with a qualitative assessment of the impacts financed under Component 1.

Table 17: New institutions, planning and analytics and enhanced monitoring in the Mekong Delta

New Institutions	Planning and Analytics	Enhanced Monitoring
Mekong Delta Center for Climate Resiliency	Mekong Delta Climate Resiliency Assessment Report	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Surface water - Groundwater - Remote Sensing - Sea dykes and mangrove belts - Real-time hydraulic operations

7.2 Sub-component 1.1. Upgrading Monitoring Infrastructure to Enhance Mekong Delta Knowledge Base (US\$ 33.7 Million)

Investments in monitoring systems for remote sensing, surface water, groundwater, and other environmental assets are critical for the Delta. Remote sensing and image analysis is a key tool for tracking a rapidly changing environment, including coastal and river morphology, land use, flooding, etc. Monitoring surface water quantity and quality is becoming more urgent as upstream developments impact flows into the Delta, while long-term climate change and sea-level rise will have impacts on freshwater availability in the dry season, the salinity regime in the estuary, and flooding. Groundwater is an important source of water for domestic, industrial, and agriculture users in the Delta, but is still poorly understood and appears to be over-exploited and inducing ground subsidence along the coast. This component upgrades MONRE and MARD's monitoring systems to produce better tools and information for both planning and management purposes.

7.2.1 Upgrading MONRE's Surface Water Quality Monitoring Network (US\$ 9.5 million)

MONRE's Department of Water Resources Management will be responsible for overseeing this sub-component. The project will finance civil works and equipment for: i) upgrading six existing hydrological stations; ii) six new hydrological stations; and iii) eight new salinity intrusion monitoring stations. The stations will monitor both flow and water quality. The proposed stations will complement the existing hydrological monitoring system in the Delta, which is composed of 39 hydrological stations (managed by the Department of Water Resources), and 35 salinity intrusion stations (managed by National Center for Hydro-Meteorological Forecasting). Under an on-going MONRE hydro-met modernization program, data from all sources will be standardized and transmitted to central receiving station.

7.2.2 Upgrading MONRE's Groundwater Monitoring Network (US\$ 10.0 million)

MONRE's National Center for Water Resources Planning Investigation (NAWAPI) will be responsible for implementing this sub-component. Seven distinct aquifers exist in the Delta, ranging in depth from roughly 25 meters to 500 meters. The project will finance the development of 171 monitoring wells, including: i) rehabilitation of 34 existing wells; and ii) 137 new wells. For each monitoring site, there are typically multiple wells to monitor distinct aquifers; in total the project will construct/upgrade around 34 monitoring sites (16 upgrades, and 18 new). The wells will include equipment for monitoring levels and water quality, as well as transmission equipment to send the data to the centralized MONRE center. Since NAWAPI is the only organization in Vietnam licensed to construct groundwater monitoring wells, this activity will be undertaken by NAWAPI on a Force Account basis.

This sub-component will also finance a "Groundwater Survey" which undertake a survey of groundwater users in selected groundwater "hot-spots" and further develop groundwater models in order to better understand issues such as falling groundwater levels, land subsidence, and groundwater saline intrusion. After the Study is completed, an assessment will be undertaken to determine if additional groundwater monitoring wells need to be developed.

7.2.3 Upgrading of MONRE's Remote Sensing Infrastructure and Associated Studies (US\$ 11.0 million)

This activity will be led by MONRE's National Remote Sensing Department. The Department's existing satellite receiving station in Hanoi will be upgraded to allow it to receive the latest data from SPOT 6 and Spot 7 satellites. SPOT (*Satellite Pour l'Observation de la Terre*) is a commercial high-resolution optical imaging Earth observation satellite system operating from space. The MONRE remote sensing laboratory in Hanoi will also be upgraded with new equipment and analytical tools. The project will also finance the purchase of SPOT images during the period when the receiving station is out-of-operation during the upgrading period.

The sub-component includes specific studies the use the new remote sensing imagery to monitor environmental conditions in the Delta. The first identified study is for monitoring and evaluation of river and coastal morphology; historical images of river and coastal changes will be combined with new more precise imagery to track shoreline and river changes. Depending on available resources, the project may also finance other studies related to land use, cropping patterns, flooding, etc., in the Delta.

7.2.4 Upgrading MARD's Water Resource Monitoring Systems (US\$ 3.2 million)

MARD has assigned the Southern Institute of Water Resources Research (SIWRR) to carry out the annual prediction of salinity intrusion and flood forecasting in the Mekong Delta. The sub-

component will finance the development of a “Real-Time Operation System for Hydraulic Infrastructure in the Mekong Delta” (US\$ 2.5 million). This consists of: i) updating the hydraulic, agricultural, and monitoring databases; ii) upgrading existing Delta water resource models; iii) simulate different flood and drought scenarios to develop operational protocols; and iv) enhanced sharing of information, communication, and warning systems.

This component will also finance the development of a “Database on Mekong Delta Sea Dykes and Mangrove Forests” (US\$ 0.7 million) which will be overseen by the Southern Institute of Water Resources Planning (SIWRP). The sea dyke system and mangrove belt in the Delta is over 700km long, yet there is insufficient information with respect to the condition of neither the sea dykes nor a systematic assessment and monitoring of mangrove belts. This study will create a database on both sea dykes and mangroves, which will allow for better monitoring, maintenance, and investments for these critical coastal assets.

7.3 Subcomponent 1.2. Infrastructure and Information Systems for Enhanced Decisions (US\$ 13.8 million)

Monitoring networks and remote sensing systems are critical in gathering the evidence base (data, information, trends) relating to land-use, surface and groundwater (quality and quantity), flooding, cropping, and infrastructure impacts. These results need to feed into decision support systems (comprising of modelling, tools, scenario analysis etc.) to contribute to evidence-based decision-making. This sub-component will finance infrastructure and enhance integrated information systems to improve the ability of government and other stakeholders to access, and analyze information related to the challenges and risks facing the livelihoods and assets in the Mekong Delta. It will also significantly enhance policy and planning for greater climate resilient development in the Mekong Delta.

7.3.1 Mekong Delta Center for Climate Resilience (US\$ 12.0 million)

Several research institutes and departments are involved in gathering and analyzing data and information on the Delta; however, there are no current mandates for data sharing, which would contribute to the integrated and multi-sectoral solutions that are often needed. The Center is envisioned to serve as a hub for Delta-wide information, including water, land use, environmental and climate change information, education and outreach, and provide support to specialized studies and research projects that inform decisions and investments in the Mekong Delta.

7.3.2 Constructing and Equipping the Mekong Delta Center (US\$ 5 million)

This subcomponent will finance the construction of a state-of-the-art modern building (located in Can Tho) including associated equipment and software. The Center shall be under the auspices of MONRE but serve multiple stakeholders as a one-stop shop for accessing data on the Mekong Delta. It will also serve as the repository for all real-time monitoring information related to water flows, water quality, salinity, etc. collected from the monitoring networks and other sources. A Mekong Center business plan will be developed during the project and will examine options for sustainable funding and possible expansion, including: commercial services such as selling of data or analytical products, government budget, donor support, and corporate and individual donations.

7.3.3 Formulation of Mekong Delta Climate Resiliency Assessment (US\$ 3.5 million)

The foundation of the Center will be a “knowledge management platform” (KMP) which will be a state-of-art computer system providing MONRE and other stakeholders with the capability to investigate the environmental and socio-economic impacts of climate change and basin developments on the Mekong Delta. A consulting firm will be contracted to design the KMP

which, drawing upon the existing Mekong River Commission (MRC) experience, is envisioned to consist of: i) Knowledge Base: databases containing time series data sets, GIS data sets, models, and other miscellaneous data (e.g. reports), etc.; ii) GIS Viewer capable of showing a wide range of standard GIS formats plus the capability to search data by location; and iii) Toolbox Manager that holds a list of available tools (e.g. models) with a description of each tool that allows the user to select and utilize these tools.

The consulting firm will also work with MONRE in the formulation of a *Mekong Delta Climate Resiliency Assessment*. The Assessment should be completed by 2019 and will help to inform planning exercises in the Vietnam government, including the MPI's "Socio-Economic Development Plan for the Mekong Delta", provincial socio-economic development and land use plans, and sector master plans for the next planning cycle (2021-2025). The Assessment will develop a set of key environmental and socio-economic indicators related to Mekong Delta sustainability, and then assess the status, trends, and driving factors related to those indicators. The Assessment will also identify any data or knowledge gaps, which need to be addressed for the next Assessment process, which ideally should take place every five years. Finally, the Assessment will provide a set of recommendations related to the next planning cycle in order promote adaptive management of the Delta. Much of the information for the Assessment is expected to flow through the Mekong Delta Center's KMP and thus there is one consultancy for system integration design and development of the Mekong Delta Climate Resiliency Assessment Report.

7.3.4 Development of Databases and Models for the Mekong Delta Center (US\$ 3.5 million)

As described in Subcomponent 1.1 above, there will be significant expansion of the monitoring systems producing data related to remote sensing, water quality, groundwater, modelling, etc. which will be generated by a wide variety of MONRE and MARD entities as well as other stakeholder. This information will be fed into the Mekong Delta Centre's KMP. Although a consultancy firm is expected to design the KMP, the actual work of constructing the KMP and feeding in standardized data and information will be undertaken by specialized institutes and national consultant companies.

7.3.5 Vietnam National Mekong Committee (VNMC) Mekong Basin Databases and Models (US\$ 1.8 million)

Approximately 95% of the water that flows through the Vietnam Mekong Delta is generated outside of the Vietnamese part of the Delta within the Mekong River Basin, which includes land in China, Myanmar, Lao PDR, Thailand, Cambodia, and Vietnam. In 1995 the four lower basin countries signed the Mekong Agreement, which established the MRC; China and Myanmar are dialogue partners with the MRC. The VNMC is the government's official representative for interacting with the MRC. The VNMC recently completed a large-scale exercise to develop Vietnam's own Mekong basin wide modelling system, which complements the MRC's modelling tools, as well as a model of the Delta's coastal zone. This sub-component will upgrade the VNMC's Mekong basin modelling package, help address data gaps, and include the integration of the VNMC's databases/models into the Mekong Delta Center's KMP. The summary of Component 1 is provided in Table 18 below.

Table 18: Summary of costs and activities for Component 1

IDA Allocation by Component	US\$ M
<i>Sub Component 1: Investments in Monitoring Systems</i>	33.7
MONRE Surface Water Monitoring	9.5
MONRE Ground Water Monitoring	10.0
Phase 1 Investments	4.2
Ground Water Study	1.8
Phase 2 Investment	4.0
MONRE Remote Sensing/Studies	11.0
Remote Sensing Upgrade	7.5
Associated Studies	3.5
MARD Delta Monitoring	3.2
Real Time Hydraulic Operations System	2.5
Management of Sea Dykes/Mangroves	0.7
<i>Sub Component 1.2: Infrastructure and Integrated Information Systems</i>	13.8
MONRE Mekong Delta Center	12.0
Building and Equipment	5.0
System Integration and Delta Assessment	3.5
Database and Analysis	3.5
VNMC Mekong Basin Assessment	1.8
Total	47.5

7.4 Alternatives Considered under Component 1

Three alternatives were considered in the design of Component 1:

- **Alternative 1: No component:** This would entail only including Components 2,3, and 4 in the project and focusing on localized water resource infrastructure and livelihood transitions. This alternative was rejected because the relatively small sub-project investments would be insufficient by themselves to ensure that the Mekong Delta was put on a more sustainable trajectory.
- **Alternative 2: Expand component 1 to support new inter-sectoral institutional arrangements and planning mechanisms:** This alternative was rejected as the Government of Vietnam prefers to work within existing institutional structures and planning mechanisms at the regional, provincial, and sectoral levels. Moreover, such sweeping changes are inherently political in nature and may occur over time, and are not well suited to addressing within a specific project.
- **Alternative 3: Provide the tools and knowledge to support adaptive management:** This alternative was selected as the best more feasible approach to igniting a more comprehensive understanding of Delta dynamics and promoting changes in policies, planning, and practices that are more climate resilient.

7.5 Assessing Environmental Impacts of Component 1

Component 1 will generate the information and planning tools necessary for the Vietnamese government to adaptively and sustainably manage the Mekong Delta in the future. The extent to which this happens will of course ultimately depend on the ability of the government to coordinate across different institutions at the regional, local, and provincial levels. Table 19

below summarizes the predicated and potential environmental impacts of the general interventions.

Table 19: Summary of potential environmental impacts of general interventions under Component 1.

Component Interventions	Positive Impacts	Negative Impacts
Mekong Delta Center for Climate Resiliency	<i>Potentially</i> serve as a Center for knowledge, education, and advocacy for building resiliency in the Mekong Delta; help promote inter-sectoral cooperation and facilitate the exchange of data and information.	Minor and mitigated impacts associated with the construction of the Center
Mekong Delta Climate Resiliency Assessment Report	<i>Potentially</i> have a significant impact by promoting the consideration of climate resiliency and sustainability in Vietnamese government planning processes at the regional, provincial, and sector level. <i>Potentially</i> identifying knowledge gaps and guiding new research efforts.	None
Enhanced Monitoring: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Surface water - Groundwater - Remote sensing - Sea Dykes/mangrove belts - Hydraulic operations 	Providing new information and knowledge for planning and management decision-making.	Minor and mitigated impacts associated with the construction of monitoring stations.

7.6 Mekong Delta Climate Resiliency Assessment

Under Component 1, the project will also finance the “*Mekong Delta Climate Resiliency Assessment*,” which will extend this current REA. The assessment is expected to be completed by 2020, and will develop a set of key environmental and socio-economic indicators related to Mekong Delta sustainability, and then assess the status, trends, and driving factors related to those indicators. The assessment will also identify any data or knowledge gaps, and provide a set of recommendations related to the next planning cycle in order to promote adaptive management of the Delta. This assessment would help mainstream climate issues into next round of planning (2021-2025): i) MPI’s Mekong Delta Socio-Economic Plan; ii) sectoral master plans and iii) provincial land use plans.

8 REFERENCES

- Albers, T., Cong San, D., & Schmitt, K. (2013). *Coastal Protection in the Lower Mekong Delta*. GIZ, Soc Trang.
- Anderson, Henry R (1969). *Hydrogeological reconnaissance of the Mekong Delta in South Vietnam and Cambodia*, Contributions to the hydrology of Asia and Oceania. (Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1608-R).
- Anthony, E. Brunier, G. Manon, B. Goichot, M. Dussouillez, P. Nguyen, VL. (2015). *Linking rapid erosion of the Mekong River delta to human activities*, Nature Publishing Group DOI: 10.1038/srep14745
- An Giang's Statistical Office (2014). *Statistical Yearbook of An Giang province*, An Giang Publishing House, Long Xuyen city.
- AusAid (2004). *Mekong Delta poverty analysis*, A final report.
- Baird, I. (2009). *The Don Sahong Dam: Potential Impacts on Regional Fish Migrations, Livelihoods and Human Health*, POLIS Project on Ecological Governance, University of Victoria.
- Baran, E. (2010). *Mekong fisheries and mainstream dams*. Fisheries sections in: ICEM 2010. Mekong River Commission Strategic Environmental Assessment of hydropower on the Mekong mainstream, International Centre for Environmental Management. Hanoi, Vietnam.
- Baran, E., & Guerin, E. (2012). Fish bioecology in relation to sediments in the Mekong and in tropical rivers. Report for the Project "A Climate Resilient Mekong: Maintaining the Flows that Nourish Life" led by the Natural Heritage Institute, World Fish Centre, Phnom Penh, Cambodia.
- Bravard, J.-P., Goichot, M., & Gaillot, S. (2013). *Geography of Sand and Gravel Mining in the Lower Mekong River*. EchoGeo , 26.
- Buckton, S. T., Nguyen Cu, Ha Quy Quynh and Nguyen Duc Tu (1999). *Conservation of Key Wetland Sites in the Mekong Delta*, BirdLife International Vietnam Programme Conservation Report No. 12. BirdLife International Vietnam Programme, Hanoi, Vietnam
- Buschmann, J., Berg, M., Stengel, C., Winkel, L., Sampson, M.L., Trang, P.T.K., Viet, P.H. (2008). Contamination of drinking water resources in the Mekong delta floodplains: Arsenic and other trace metals pose serious health risks to population. *Environment International* 34, 756 – 764.
- Campbell, IC (2012). *Biodiversity of the Mekong Delta, The Mekong Delta System*, Springer Environmental Science and Engineering 2012, pp 293-313.
- Dan, TY. (2015). *A Cost-Benefit Analysis of Dike Heightening in the Mekong Delta*, Economy and Environment Program for Southeast Asia (EEPSEA), May 2015
- Day, J. W. (2007). *Restoration of the Mississippi Dela: Lessons from Hurricanes Katrina and Rita*. Science , 315, 1679-1684.
- Day, J. W., Hall, C., Kemp, W. M., & Yanez-Arancibia, A. (1989). *Estuarine Ecology*. John Wiley and Sons Inc.
- Dung, L.C, Tuan, V.V., Ha, V.V., Nhan, D.K. (2014), *Livelihoods of rice farmers in the Mekong Delta*. An internal technical report of CLUES project.
- Environment Monitoring Center (2012). *National Environment Report 2012*, Chapter 3 Surface Water Quality.
- Erban, L. E., Gorelick, S. M., & Zebker, H. A. (2014). Groundwater extraction, land subsidence, and sea-level rise in the Mekong Delta, Vietnam. *Environmental Research Letters*

- FAO (2006). *Coastal protection in the aftermath of the Indian Ocean tsunami: What role for forests and trees?*, Proceedings of the regional technical workshop, Khao Lak, Thailand, 28–31 August 2006.
- FAO (2011). Aquastat: Mekong River Basin:
<http://www.fao.org/nr/water/aquastat/basins/mekong/index.stm>
- GSO (2007, 2011, 2013, 2014, 2015) Statistical Yearbook of Vietnam. Statistical Publishing House, Hanoi.
- GSO (2009) Population census in Vietnam. GSO, Hanoi
- GSO (2014) Labor and employment census in Vietnam. GSO, Hanoi.
- Hashimoto, Takehiko 'Riko' (2001). *Environmental Issues and Recent Infrastructure Development in the Mekong Delta: Review, Analysis and Recommendations with Particular Reference to Large-scale Water Control Projects and the Development of Coastal Areas* ISBN 1 86487 180 6.
- Herbst, S., Benedikter, S., Koester, U., Phan, N., Berger, C., Rechenburg, A., Kistemann, T. (2009). *Perceptions of water, sanitation and health: a case study from the Mekong Delta, Vietnam*. Science & Technology 60 (3), 699-707.
- Hoa, L.T.V., Shigeko, H., Nhan, N.H., Cong, T.T., (2008). *Infrastructure effects on floods in the Mekong River Delta in Vietnam, Hydrological Processes* 22, 1359–1372.
- Hoang, Q.H., Kubo, E.N., Hoang, N.G., Tanji, H. (2009). *Operation of the Ba Lai irrigation system in the Mekong Delta, Vietnam*. Paddy Water Environ 7, 123–133.
- Hortle, K. G. (2007). *Consumption and the yield of fish and other aquatic animals from the Lower Mekong Basin*. MRC Technical Paper No. 16, Mekong River Commission, Vientiane.
- Hung D.T., Bang N.H., Giang P.V., Ghassemi F. (2000). *An evaluation of the sustainability of farming systems in the brackish water region of the Mekong Delta: availability and quality of groundwater resources*, Department of Geology and Minerals, Division of Hydrogeology and Engineering Geology for the South, Ho Chi Minh City & ACIAR, ANU, Canberra.
- Hung, N. N., Delgado, J. M., Guntner, A., Merz, B., Bardossy, A., & Apel, H. (2014). *Sedimentation in the floodplains of the Mekong Delta, Vietnam Part II: deposition and erosion*. Hydrological Processes, 28, 3145-3160.
- ICEM. (2010). *MRC Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) of hydropower on the Mekong mainstream: summary of the final report*. Hanoi.
- IUCN (2011). *Mekong Water Dialogues Project. Groundwater in the Mekong Delta*, Discussion Paper.
- Kawahigashi, W., Do, M.N., Nguyen, N.B., Sumida, H. (2008). *Effects of drying on the release of solutes from acid sulfate soils distributed in the Mekong Delta, Vietnam*, Soil Science and Plant Nutrition 54, 495-506.
- Koehnken, L. Discharge and sediment monitoring program review, recommendations and data Analysis: Part 2—Data analysis of preliminary results. Information and Knowledge Management Programme (IKMP), Mekong River Commission, Phnom Penh, 53 pp (2012). 42.
- Koponen, J., Lamberts, D., Sarkkula, J., & Inkala, A. (2010). *Productivity Modelling Report. DMS - Detailed Modelling Support Project*. Vientiane, Laos: Mekong River Commission.
- Kummu M. and Sarkkula J. (2008). *Impact of the Mekong River Flow Alteration on the Tonle Sap Flood Pulse*, Ambio Vol. 37, No. 3, May 2008. Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences 2008.
- Lan, N. (2013). *Social and ecological challenges of market-oriented shrimp farming in Vietnam*, SpringerPlus 2013, 2:675 <http://www.springerplus.com/content/2/1/675> a
- Lenhart, H. J., Radach, G., & Ruurdij, P. (1997). *The effects of river input on the ecosystem dynamics in the continental coastal zone of the North Sea using ERSEM*. Journal of Sea Research, 38, 249-274.

- Lu XX, Siew RY. 2006. *Water discharge and sediment flux changes over the past decades in the Lower Mekong River: possible impacts of the Chinese dams*, Hydrology Earth System Science 10: 181–195.
- Le Cong Kiet (1994). Native freshwater vegetation communities in the Mekong Delta. *International Journal of Ecology and Environment Sciences*. 20: 55-71.
- Luong Quang Xo (2013). *Water Resources Planning of the Mekong Delta under the context of climate change and sea level rise*, An internal technical report. Southern Institute for Water Resources Planning (in Vietnamese).
- Mai Trong Thong, Hoang Luu Thu Thuy, Vo Trong Hoang (2013). *Ecosystem Assessment of Cuu Long River Delta Wetland*, Vietnam, *Journal of Environmental Science and Management* 16(2): 36-45 (December 2013). ISSN 0119-1144
- Manh, N. V. Dung, N. N. Hung, B. Merz, and H. Apel (2014). *Large-scale suspended sediment transport and sediment deposition in the Mekong Delta*, *Hydrol. Earth Syst. Sci.*, 18, 3033–3053, 2014
- MARD (2005). Mekong Delta suffers drought damages of US\$42 million. Press release by the Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Development, Viet Nam, 18 May 2005
- Milliman JD, Meade RH. (1983). *World-wide delivery of river sediment to the oceans*, *Journal of Geology* 91: 1–21
- MDP (2011). *Towards a Mekong Delta Plan*, Vietnam-Netherlands Co-operation, Water Sector Synthesis, Hanoi, Vietnam
- MDP (2013). *Mekong Delta Plan*, Vietnam-Netherlands Co-operation, Water Sector Synthesis, Hanoi, Vietnam, February 2013
- MRC (2005). *Overview of the Hydrology of the Mekong Basin*, Mekong River Commission, Vientiane, November, 2005. 73pp.
- MRC (2009). *MRC Management Information booklet series No. 2*, Mekong River Commission, Vientiane, April 2005
- MRC. (2010). *State of the Basin Report*. Vientiane, Laos: Mekong River Commission.
- MRC. (2011). *Basin Development Plan Programme Phase 2*, Vientiane, Laos: Mekong River Commission
- Nguyen, H. McApline, C. Pullar, D. Johansen, K. Duke, NC. (2013). *The relationship of spatial-temporal changes in fringe mangrove extent and adjacent landuse: Case study of Kien Giang coast, Vietnam*, *Ocean & Coastal Management* 76, pp 12-22.
- Nguyen, TK. Fisher, T. (2014). *Efficiency analysis and the effect of pollution on the shrimp farms in the Mekong River Delta*, *Aquaculture Economics and Management*, November 2014
- Nguyen, V.L., Ta, T.K.O. and Tateishi, M., (1997). *Late Holocene depositional environments and coastal evolution of the Mekong River Delta, southern Vietnam*, In: Yonekura, N. and Kayanne, H. (Eds), Program and abstracts, International symposium on Quaternary environmental change in the Asia and Western Pacific Region, October 14-17, Univ of Tokyo, Japan. 68.
- Nguyen, V. L., Ta, T. K., & Tateishi, M. (2000). *Late Holocene depositional environments and coastal evolution of the Mekong River Delta*, Southern Vietnam. *Journal of Asian Earth Science* , 427-439.
- Nhan, D.K. (2015). *Farming system and socio-economic analysis for the Mekong Delta*, An internal technical report of CLUES project.
- Nhan, D.K., Be, N.V., Trung, N.H., (2007). *Water use and competition in the Mekong Delta*, In: Be, T.T., Sinh, B.T., Miller, F. (eds), Challenges to sustainable development in the Mekong delta: regional and national policy issues and research needs. Summernet, 143-188.
- Nhan, D.K., Binh, N.T., Tri, V.P.D. (2012). *Water competition and conflicts in the Mekong Delta of Vietnam*, Technical report submitted to the World Bank in Vietnam.

- Phuc, D. D. (2008). *General on Groundwater Resources*, Department of Water Resources Management. Hanoi: Water Sector Review Project
- Saito, Y., Chaimanee, N., Jarupongsakul, T., & Syvitski, J. (2007). *Shrinking megadeltas in Asia: Sea-level rise and sediment reduction impacts from case study of the Chao Phraya Delta*. LOICZ.
- Syvitski, J. P., Kettner, A. J., Overeem, I., Hutton, E. W., Hannon, M. T., Brakenridge, R., et al. (2009). Sinking deltas due to human activities. *Nature Geoscience* , 2, 681-686.
- Szczucinski, W., Jagodzinski, R., Hanebuth, T. J., Stattegger, K., Wetzel, A., Mitrega, M., et al. (2013). *Modern sedimentation and sediment dispersal pattern on the continental shelf off the Mekong River delta, South China Sea*. *Global and Planetary Change* , 110, 195-213.
- Ta, T. K., Nguyen, V. L., Tateishi, M., Kobayashi, I., & Saito, Y. (2001). *Sedimentary facies, diatom and foraminifer assemblages in a late Pleistocene–Holocene incised-valley sequence from the Mekong River Delta, Bentre Province, Southern Vietnam: the BT2 core*. *Journal of Asian Earth Sciences* , 20, 83-94.
- Ta, T. K., Nguyen, V. L., Tateishi, M., Kobayashi, I., Saito, Y., & Nakamura, T. (2002). *Sediment facies and Late Holocene progradation of the Mekong River Delta in Bentre Province, southern Vietnam: an example of evolution from a tide-dominated to a tide- and wave-dominated delta*. *Sedimentary Geology* , 152, 313-325.
- Thinh P.T (2003). *Findings from wetlands classification and inventory wetlands/aquatic ecosystem in the Mekong Basin in Vietnam*. Environment Programme: Mekong River Commission.
- Toan, P.V. , Sebesvari, Z., Bläsing, M., Rosendahl, I., Renaud, F.G. (2013). *Pesticide management and their residues in sediments and surface and drinking water in the Mekong Delta, Vietnam*. *Science of the Total Environment* 452-453, 28 –39.
- Tri, V.P.D., Trung, N.H., Tuu, N.T. (2011). *Flow dynamics in the Long Xuyen Quadrangle under the impacts of full-dyke systems and sea level rise*, *VNU Journal of Science, Earth Sciences* 28, 205-214.
- Tuyet L. Cosslett, Patrick D. Cosslett (2014). *Water Resources and Food Security in the Vietnam Mekong Delta*. ISBN 978-3-319-02197-3. ISBN 978-3-319-02190-0 (eBook).
- Ut, T.T. (2004). *Land and Water Resource Management in Coastal Areas: Assessing the Socio-Economic Impact of Government Intervention, Bac Lieu province, Mekong Delta, Vietnam*, Working Paper Series No.1. Regional Center for Social Science and Sustainable Development (RCSD) Faculty of Social Sciences, Chiang Mai University, Thailand
- Viet Nam Environment Protection Agency (2005). *Overview of Wetlands Status in Viet Nam Following 15 Years of Ramsar Convention Implementation*, Hanoi, Viet Nam. 72 pp.
- Viet Nam - Netherlands Strategic Partnership Arrangement. (2013). Mekong Delta Plan.
- Vo, K.T., Pham, D.N. (2005). *Study on the management and operation of large-scale surface irrigation systems in the Mekong Delta, Vietnam (the case study in Go Cong Irrigation System)*, In: Proceedings of the 1st international symposium on sustainable development in the Mekong River Basin, 143–151
- Voss, M. D., Bomar, N., Loick, N., & Dippner, J. (2006). Riverine influence on nitrogen fixation in the upwelling region off Vietnam, South China Sea. *Geophysical Research Letters* , 33.
- Wagner, F., Tran, V. B., & Renaudk, F. B. (2012). *Groundwater resources in the Mekong Delta: availability, utilization and risks*. In F. G. Renaud, & C. Kuenzer (Eds.). Springer.
- Walling D.E., 2005. *Evaluation and analysis of sediment data from the Lower Mekong River*, Unpublished report for the Mekong River Commission, 61 p.
- Wyatt, A. B., Phuong, N. T., & Gian, T. P. (2012). *Vietnam Situation Analysis*. Hanoi, Vietnam: IUCN.
- Xue Z., iu J.P, DeMaster D, Lap N.V, Oanh T.T.K, (2009). *Late Holocene Evolution of the Mekong Subaqueous Delta, Southern Vietnam*. *Marine Geology* 269 (2010) 46–60. Elsevier.

ANNEX 1- PROPOSED SUBPROJECTS FOR COMPONENTS 2, 3 & 4

No.	Label	Name of subproject	Location (province)	Budget (10 ⁶ USD)
	Component 2 (Upper delta)			105.128
1	TDA 1	Enhancing the ability of flood drainage and climate change adaptation for the Long Xuyen Quadrangle	An Giang, Kien Giang	46.444
2	TDA 2	Enhancing the ability of adaptation and water management for the upper part of Bassac River in An Phu district An Giang province	An Giang	28.334
3	TDA 3	Improving the ability of flood drainage and developing sustainable livelihoods, climate change adaptation in the Plain of Reed (the northern districts of Dong Thap province)	Dong Thap	30.350
	Component 3 (Delta Estuary)			145.88
4	TDA 4	Infrastructure to develop sustainable livelihoods for people in the coastal area in ba Tri, Ben Tre to adapt to climate change	Ben Tre	43.120
5	TDA 5	Infrastructure to improve livelihoods for people and to adapt to climate change in the North Thanh Phu district, Ben Tre province	Ben Tre	30.550
6	TDA 6	Infrastructure to control spring tide and salinity to support agricultural activities and adapting to climate change in district of Cau Ke (Tra Vinh province), Tra On and Vung Liem (Vinh Long province)	Tra Vinh, Vinh Long	34.866
7	TDA 7	Infrastructure for production transition in accordance with ecological conditions, improving livelihoods, adaptation to climate change in Dung island	37.344	32.0
	Component 4 (Peninsula)			106.129
8	TDA 8	Infrastructure to prevent coastal erosion, supply fresh water and for production of shrimp - forest model to improve livelihoods and adapting to climate change in the coastal area of Ca Mau Province	Ca Mau	35.154
9	TDA 9	Infrastructure to prevent coastal erosion and to support for aquaculture production in An Minh and An Bien districts	Kien Giang	32.650
10	TDA 10	Infrastructure for ecological forest protection and development, livelihood improvement, and climate change adaptation in Hoa Binh, Dong Hai, Phuoc Long and Hong Dan districts	Bac Lieu	38.325
		Total		387.137

ANNEX 2- VIETNAMESE ENVIRONMENTAL STANDARDS

Vietnamese Environment Standards:

- National technical regulations on quality of drinking water QCVN01:2009/BYT;
- National technical regulations on quality of domestic water QCVN02:2009/BYT;
- National technical regulations on quality of surface water QCVN08:2008/BTNMT;
- National technical regulations on quality of groundwater QCVN09:2008/BTNMT;
- National technical regulations on quality of coastal water QCVN10:2008/BTNMT;
- Air quality – Standards for ambient air quality QCVN05:2009/BTNMT;
- Air quality – Maximum allowable concentration of hazardous substances in the ambient air QCVN06:2009/BTNMT.

Besides, the following laws and regulations are based to prepare the environmental assessment report, including:

- Law on Forest Development and Protection No. 29/2004/QH11;
- Law on Labor 2002;
- Law on People's Health Protection;
- Law on Cultural Heritage No. 28/2001/QH10;
- Law on Water Resources

MONRE and Ministry of Public Health are responsible for developing environmental standards for Vietnam national engineering regulations. Environmental assessments shall be carried out in strict adherence to the following Vietnam environmental standards:

Water

- QCVN 01:2008/BYT: National technical regulations on quality of drinking water
- QCVN 02:2008/BYT: National technical regulations on quality of domestic water
- QCVN 08:2008/BTNMT: National technical regulations on quality of surface water
- QCVN 09:2008/BTNMT: National technical regulations on quality of groundwater
- QCVN 10:2008/BTNMT: National technical regulations on quality of about coastal water
- QCVN 11:2008/BTNMT: National technical regulation on Industrial wastewater quality.
- QCVN 14:2008/BTNMT: National technical regulations on quality of domestic wastewater
- QCVN 24:2008/BTNMT: Industrial wastewater – Discharge standards
- TCVN 5502:2003: Supplied water – Requirements for quality
- TCVN 6773:2000: Water quality – Water quality for irrigational purposes
- TCVN 6774:2000: Water quality – Water quality for aquaculture protection
- TCVN 7222:2002: Water quality – Water quality for concentrated domestic water

Soil

- QCVN 03:2008/BTNMT – National technical regulation on the allowable limits of heavy metals in the soils;
- QCVN 15:2008/BTNMT: National technical regulation on pesticide existence in soil.
- Decision No.27/2004/QĐ - BXD dated on 09-11-2004 by the Minister of Ministry of Construction on the promulgation of TCXDVN 320:2004 "Landfill for hazardous waste – Design standards"

Atmosphere

- QCVN 05:2008: Air quality – Standards for ambient air quality
- QCVN 06:2008: Air quality – Maximum allowable concentration of hazardous substances in the ambient air.
- QCVN 07:2008: Air quality – Thresholds of hazardous substances in the air.
- TCVN 6438:2001: Road vehicles – Maximum permitted emission limits of exhausted gases
- Solid waste management
- TCVN 6438:2001 - Road vehicles - Maximum permitted emission limits of exhaust.
- TCVN 6696:2009: Solid waste - Sanitary landfill. General requirements for environmental protection.
- QCVN 07:2009: National technical regulations for classification of hazardous wastes
- QCVN 25:2009: National technical regulations for wastewater of solid waste sites

Vibration and Noise

- QCVN 27:2010/BTNMT – National technical regulation on Vibration (replace TCVN 6962:2001 - Vibration emitted by construction works and factories - Maximum permitted levels in the environment of public and residential areas;
- QCVN 26:2010/BTNMT – National technical regulation on Noise (replace TCVN 5948:1999 Acoustics - Noise caused by transportation means when speeding - Allowable level)
- TCVN 5949:1998 Acoustics - Noise in public and residential areas - Allowable level

Labor Health and Safety

- Decision No.3733/2002/QĐ-BYT dated 10/10/2002 by Ministry of Healthcare on the application of 21 Labor health and safety standards concerning microclimate, noise, vibration, Chemicals – Permitted level in the working environment.